

# BIOLOGY

By A Group Of Supervisors



Main Book



**AL TALABA BOOKSTORE**

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

E-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

www.elmoasserbooks.com



**2<sup>nd</sup>**  
SEC.  
2023  
FIRST TERM

## جميع حقوق الطبع والنشر محفوظة

لا يجوز، بأي صورة من الصور، التوزيع (النقل) المباشر أو غير المباشر لأي مما ورد في هذا الكتاب أو نسخه أو تصويره أو ترجمته أو تحويله أو الاقتباس منه أو تحويله رقميًا أو إتاحتها عبر شبكة الإنترنت إلا بإذن كتابي مسبق من الناشر. كما لا يجوز بأي صورة من الصور استخدام العلامة التجارية (EL-MOASSER) المسجلة باسم الناشر. ومن يخالف ذلك يتعرض للمساءلة القانونية طبقاً لأحكام القانون ٢٨ لسنة ٢٠٠٢ الخاص بحماية الملكية الفكرية.

# CONTENTS

## Structure and Function in Living Organisms

### Chapter 1

#### Nutrition and Digestion in Living Organisms

- Lesson One** | Autotrophic Nutrition (Absorption of Water and Salts).
- Lesson Two** | Continue : Autotrophic Nutrition (Photosynthesis in Green Plants).
- Lesson Three** | Heterotrophic Nutrition.

► Test on Chapter 1

► Exercise from the Questions of the Previous Year Exams on Chapter One.



### Chapter 2

#### Transport in Living Organisms

- Lesson One** | Transport in Plant.
- Lesson Two** | Human Transport System (Circulatory System).
- Lesson Three** | Continue : Human Transport System (Blood Circulation and Lymphatic System).

► Test on Chapter 2

► Exercise from the Questions of the Previous Year Exams on Chapter Two.



### Chapter 3

#### Respiration in Living Organisms

- Lesson One** | Cellular Respiration.
- Lesson Two** | Respiration in Living Organisms..

► Test on Chapter 3

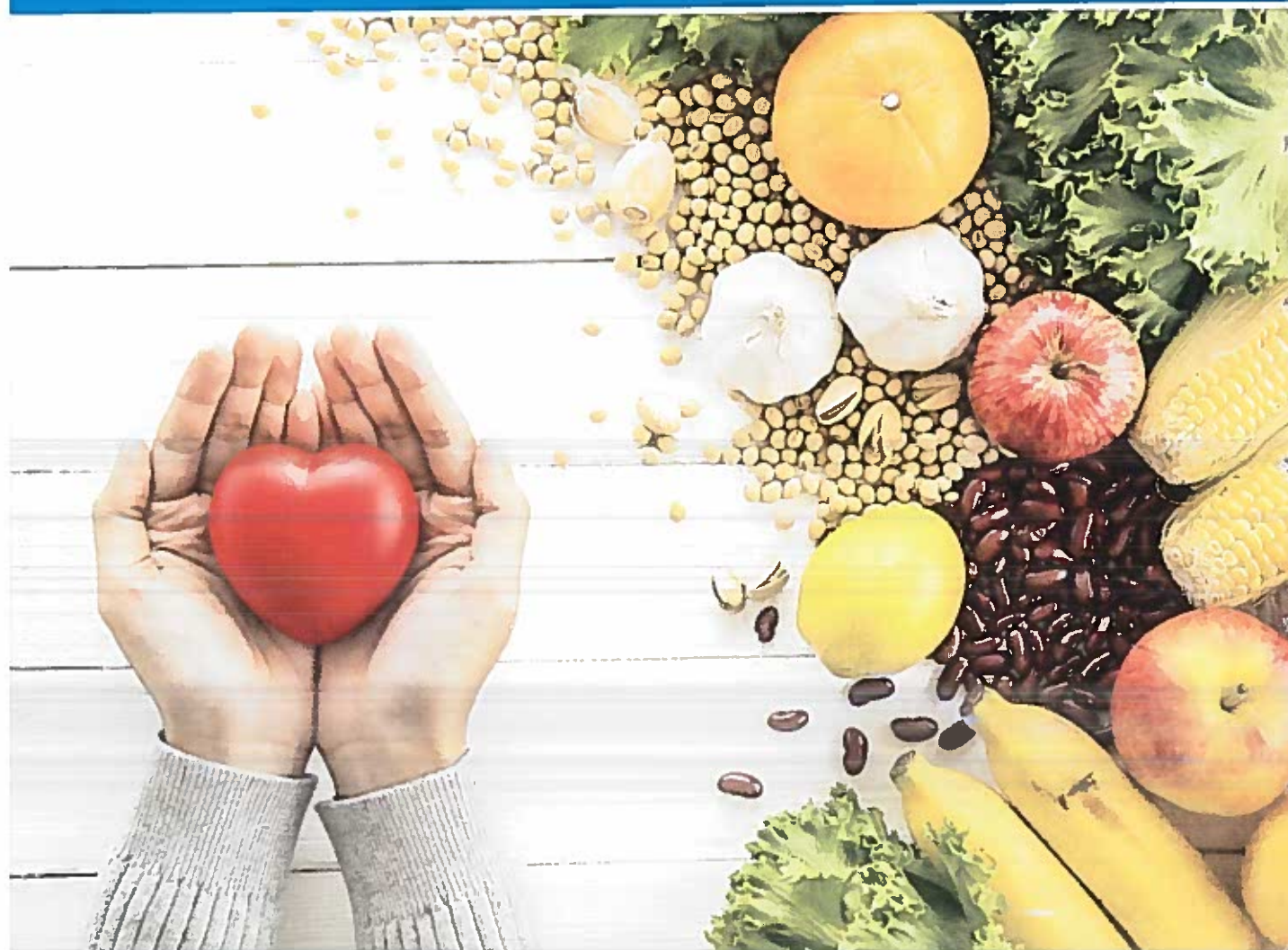
► Exercise from the Questions of the Previous Year Exams on Chapter Three.



## 10 General Exams



# Nutrition and Digestion in Living Organisms



Lesson **1** **Autotrophic Nutrition (Absorption of Water and Salts).**

Lesson **2** **Continue : Autotrophic Nutrition (Photosynthesis in Green Plants).**

Lesson **3** **Heterotrophic Nutrition.**

► Test on Chapter 1

► Exercise from the Questions of the Previous Year Exams on Chapter One.

## Objectives of the chapter

By the end of this chapter, the student should be able to :

- Identify the concept of nutrition in living organisms.
- Differentiate between the heterotrophic and autotrophic nutritions.
- Mention the adaptation of root hair to perform its function.
- Explain the steps of photosynthesis.
- Identify the concept of nutrition in man.
- Illustrate the processes of digestion inside the organs of digestive system.
- Explain the process of absorption in small intestine.
- Explain the role of enzymes in the different digestion processes.
- Deduce the importance of food for human.





**Why** do you think  
tissues are used  
for drying ?

Chapter

1

## Lesson One

# Autotrophic Nutrition (Absorption of Water and Salts)

### Nutrition

- Nutrition is one of the most important life characteristics that are varied in the living organisms.

### Nutrition

It is the scientific study of food and various modes by which the living organisms feed.

#### The importance of food for the living organism

- ① It is the source of energy required to accomplish all the vital processes in the body of living organism.
- ② It constitutes the raw material needed for the growth and repair of the worn-out tissues.

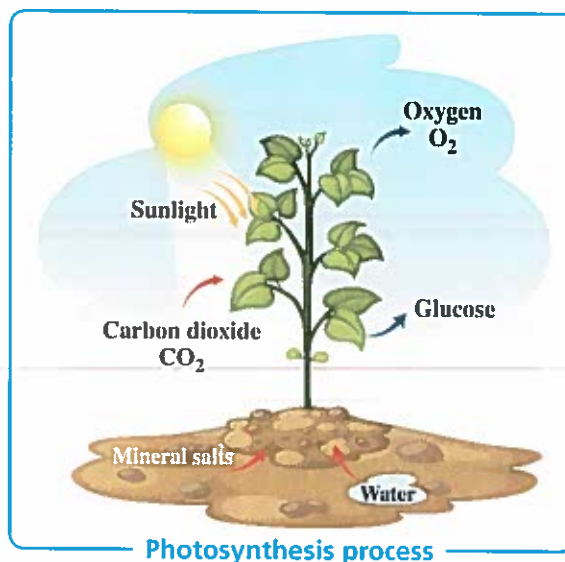
### Types of nutrition

- There are two types of nutrition, which are :

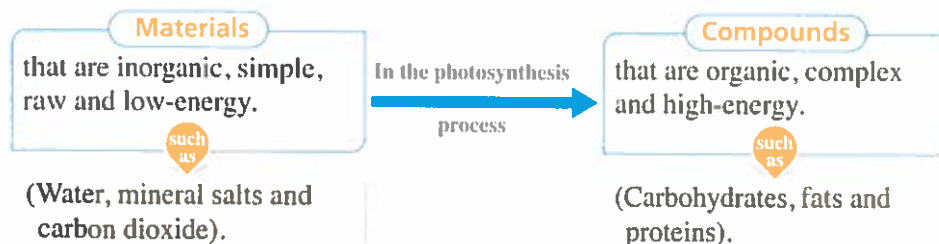


## First Autotrophic nutrition

- **Autotrophs** are organisms which manufacture their food by themselves through chemical reactions that occur inside their cells to synthesize the **high-energy complex organic food** compounds which are needed for their body building, such as : carbohydrates (sugar and starch), fats and proteins from **simple, raw and low-energy inorganic materials** such as : carbon dioxide, water and mineral salts from the surrounding environment by utilizing the light energy of the Sun to accomplish these chemical reactions which are called "**photosynthesis**"

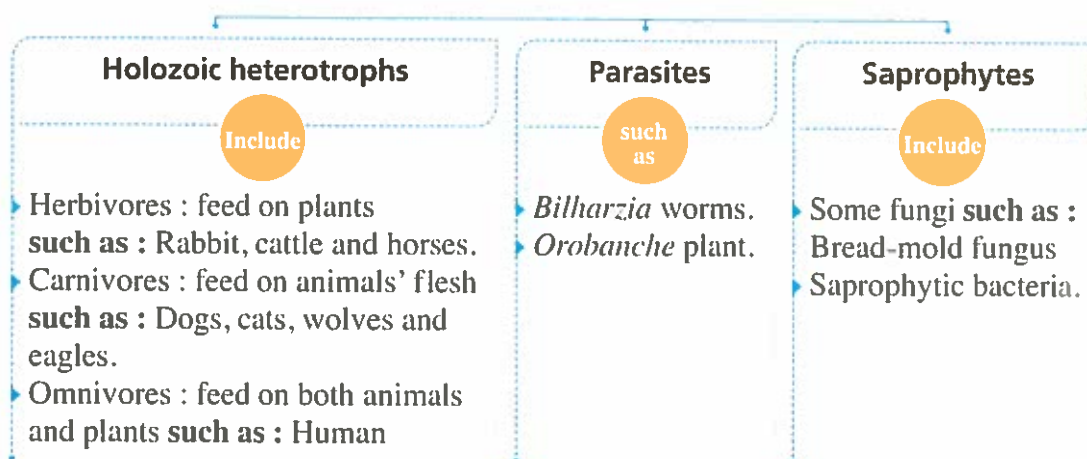


- **Examples** : Green plants – some types of bacteria.



## Second Heterotrophic nutrition

- **Heterotrophs** are organisms that obtain their food from the bodies of other living organisms (green plants or from the animals that have previously fed on plants) in the form of **high-energy complex ready organic substances**, such as : proteins, carbohydrates and lipids.
- **Heterotrophs are classified into :**



## Remember that

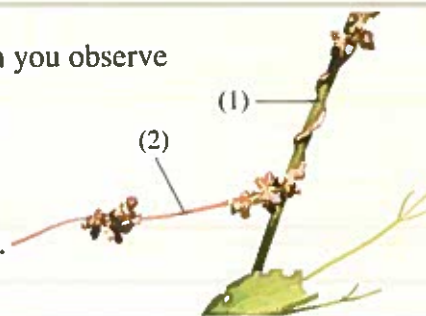
- **Saprophytism** : the ability of some living organisms to decompose the organic remains or the dead bodies of living organisms.
- **Parasitism** : a relation between two organisms, as one of them (parasite) depends on the other (host) in building its body and continuing its life by getting its food completely or partially from the host, causing different harms to the host.

## 1 Test yourself

## Choose the correct answer :

The opposite figure shows two plants (1) & (2), what can you observe from the figure ?

- (a) Plant (1) is the host for plant (2).
- (b) Plant (2) is the host for plant (1).
- (c) There is a mutualism between both plants (1) and (2).
- (d) Both plants (1) and (2) are autotrophs.



Answered

## Autotrophic nutrition in green plants

- The autotrophic nutrition which is carried out by the green plants is occurred through two important processes, which are :



## First Absorption of water and salts process

- The higher green plants absorb water and mineral salts from the soil through the root hairs that are present in the plant root system, then this soil solution is transported from one cell to another towards the transport vessels.

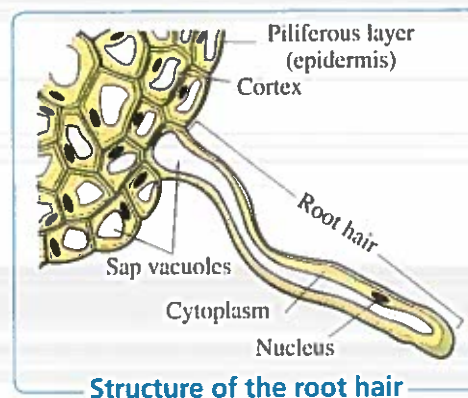
## Root hair

## • Its structure :

- It is considered an extension of a single cell of the piliferous layer (epidermis).
- It is lined internally with a thin layer of cytoplasm, and contains a nucleus and a large sap vacuole.

## • Its length : it is about 4 mm.

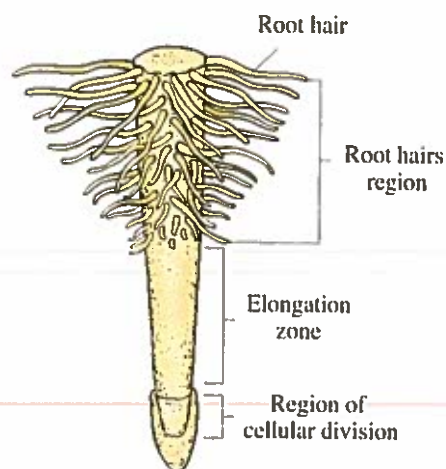
- Its age : it doesn't exceed a few days or weeks, because the epidermal cells are teared (lost) from time to time, but they are regenerated continuously from the elongation zone of root.





## Do you know... ?

- On examining a longitudinal section in the root, we find that it consists of several important regions, **which are** :
  - Cellular division region.
  - Elongation zone that compensates the teared root hairs from time to time.
  - Root hairs region in which the root hairs appear as extensions of the piliferous layer cells.



### Suitability of the root hair to its function :

- Being large in number and protruding outside** : to increase the surface area of water and salts absorption.
- Having a thin wall** : to permit the passage of water and salts through it.
- Secreting a viscous substance** : to help these hairs to find their way easily among the soil particles and stick to them. So, they can fix the plant into the soil.
- The solution inside its sap vacuole is more concentrated than the soil solution** : to help the water passage from the soil to the root hair (by osmosis).

### Integration with Chemistry



Solution is a homogenous mixture between two substances, as one of them (solute) dissolves in the other (solvent).

## 2 Test yourself

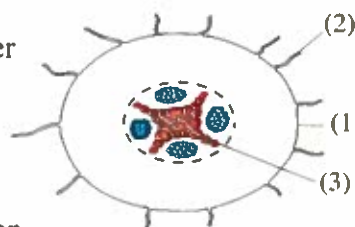
Choose the correct answer :

- 1** The opposite figure shows a transverse section in a plant root, which of the following part(s) mainly absorb(s) water and salt ions ?

- (a) (1).                                      (b) (2).  
(c) (1) and (2).                            (d) (1) and (3).

- 2** What happens if the water concentration in the soil solution is less than that in the sap vacuole of the root hair ?

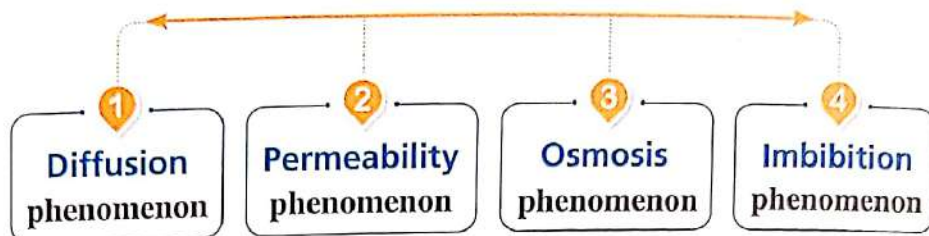
- (a) It gains water.  
(b) It loses water.  
(c) The solution concentration decreases inside it.  
(d) It will not be affected.



Answered

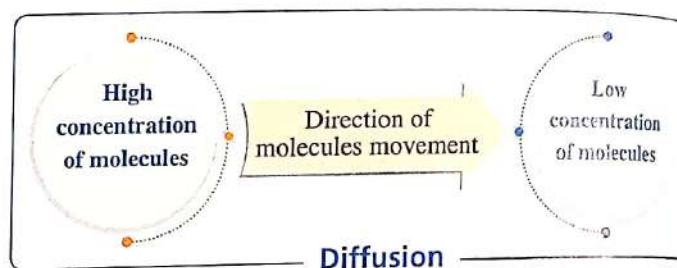
## Mechanism of water absorption

- This mechanism depends on the following physical phenomena :



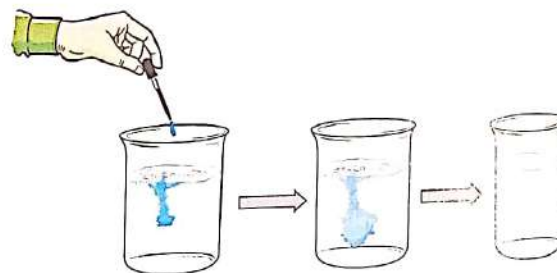
### 1 Diffusion phenomenon

- It is the movement of molecules or ions from a highly-concentrated medium to a low-concentrated medium, due to the continuous self motion of the molecules of the diffused substance.



#### Example :

The diffusion of a drop of ink, when it falls into a beaker containing water.



### 2 Permeability phenomenon

- The cell walls and membranes are different according to their permeability, as follows :

Walls and membranes	Ability of permeability	Examples
1 Permeable :	Allow water and mineral salts to pass.	Cellulose walls.
2 Impermeable :	Don't allow water and mineral salts to pass.	Walls covered by lignin or cutin or suberin.
3 Semi-permeable (Selectively permeable) :	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Allow the passage of water,</li> <li>- Control the permeability of many salts.</li> <li>- Prevent the permeability of sugar and amino acids, as they are large-sized molecules.</li> </ul>	Plasma membranes (thin semi-permeable membranes with very tiny pores).





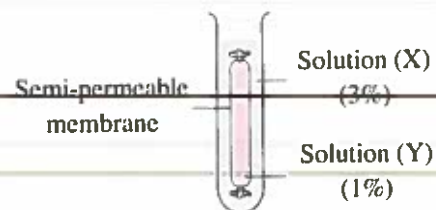
### 3 Test yourself

Answered

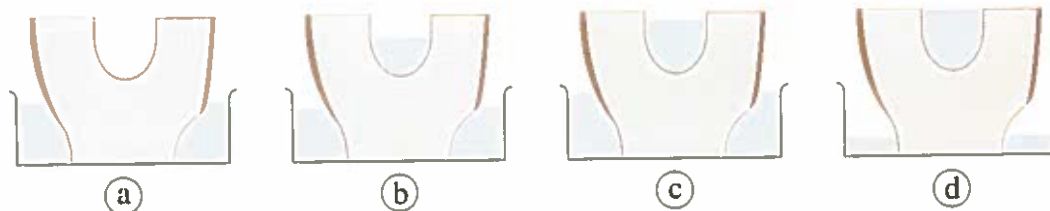
Choose the correct answer :

- 1 From the opposite figure, what is the direction of water transfer ?

- (a) From (X) to (Y) by osmosis.
- (b) From (Y) to (X) by osmosis.
- (c) From (X) to (Y) by diffusion.
- (d) From (Y) to (X) by diffusion.



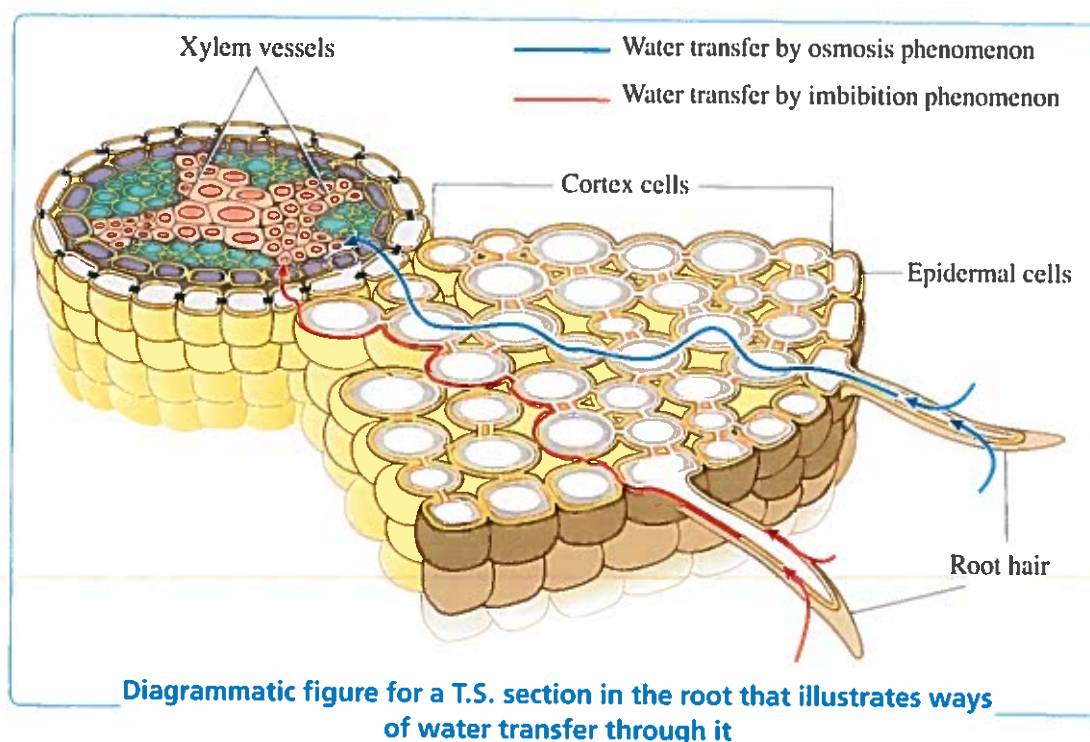
- 2 The opposite figure shows a piece of fresh potato containing a concentrated sugar solution that was put in a beaker containing distilled water, which of the following figures shows the result of this experiment after 24 hours ?



- 3 The root hairs in the plants of salty and desert soils are characterized by osmotic pressures that are .....
- (a) high in both of them.
  - (b) low in both of them.
  - (c) high in salty plants and low in desert plants.
  - (d) high in desert plants and low in salty plants.

## Explanation of water absorption by the root

- 1 The root hairs are covered by a **thin colloidal** layer to which the soil particles containing water and solutes adhere, so that the cellulose and plasma walls will absorb water by **imbibition phenomenon**.
- 2 Water moves from the soil to the epidermal cells by **osmosis phenomenon**, where the cellular sap of root hair is more concentrated than the soil solution, due to the presence of dissolved sugar in the cellular sap, (**i.e.** the water molecules concentration in the soil solution is **higher** than that in the sap vacuole).
- 3 Water moves by the same method to the cortex cells, until it reaches the xylem vessels in the centre of the root.



## Absorption of mineral salts

- The scientists had proved that the plant needs other certain essential elements, besides **carbon (C)**, **hydrogen (H<sub>2</sub>)** and **oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>)**, and it can absorb these elements through roots, and their shortage leads to :
  - A disturbance in the plant vegetative growth or its stop completely.
  - The non-formation of flowers or fruits.



- The essential food elements for green plants are divided into two groups, as follows :

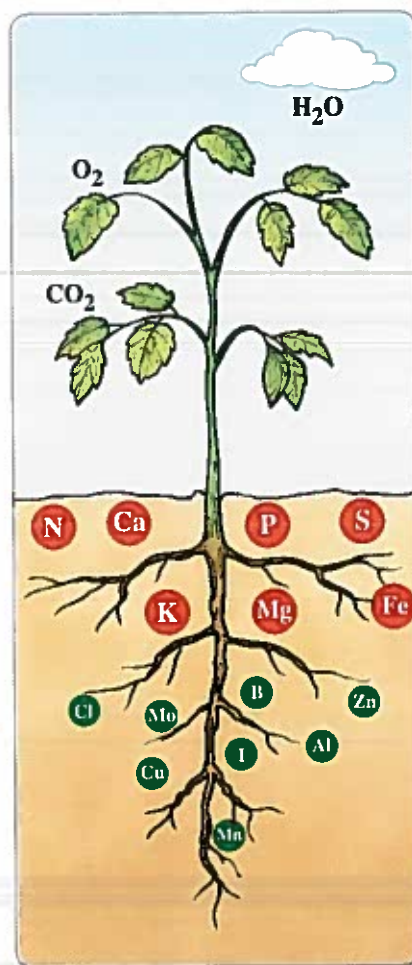
▶ The plant needs these elements in a considerable quantities.

▶ **Their number :** they are seven elements, which are :

- |             |           |              |           |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|-----------|
| - Nitrogen  | <b>N</b>  | - Phosphorus | <b>P</b>  |
| - Potassium | <b>K</b>  | - Calcium    | <b>Ca</b> |
| - Magnesium | <b>Mg</b> | - Sulphur    | <b>S</b>  |
| - Iron      | <b>Fe</b> |              |           |

▶ **Their importance :**

- The nitrate ( $\text{NO}_3^-$ ), phosphate ( $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ ) and sulphate ( $\text{SO}_4^{2-}$ ) salts work on converting the carbohydrates into proteins.
- Phosphorus enters in the formation of the energy carrier compounds (ATP).
- Iron is important for the building-up of some co-enzymes which are required for the accomplishment of photosynthesis process.
- Magnesium is required for the synthesis of chlorophyll.



### 1 Macro-nutrients

▶ The plant needs these elements in very small quantities that don't exceed a few milligrams per liter (So, they are also called trace elements).

▶ **Their number :** they are eight elements, which are :

- manganese **Mn**, zinc **Zn**, boron **B**, aluminum **Al**, chlorine **Cl**, copper **Cu**, molybdenum **Mo** and iodine **I**

▶ **Their importance :**

Some of these elements work as activators for enzymes.

### 2 Micro-nutrients



## Integration with Agriculture



The elements which the plant needs from the soil are arisen from the dissolved elements, the decomposed plants or the organic substances which are resulted from the dead organisms which might not be available in the soil, this requires the addition of fertilizers that contain mostly the unavailable elements which are nitrogen, phosphorus and potassium.

### 4 Test yourself

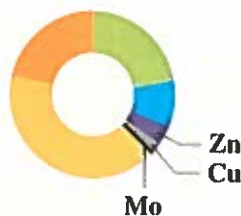
Choose the correct answer :

Answered

Which of the following figures expresses the probable percentages of some mineral nutrients that the plant needs ?



(a)



(b)



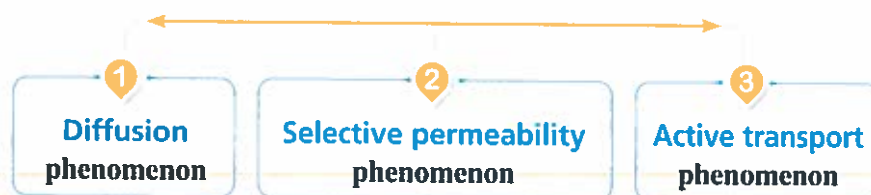
(c)



(d)

## Mechanism of mineral salts absorption

This mechanism depends on these physical phenomena :



### 1 Diffusion phenomenon

- Solute molecules (elements' ions) diffuse independently from each other and from water itself in the form of :
  - Positive ions** : called **cations**, such as  $K^+$  and  $Ca^{2+}$
  - Negative ions** : called **anions**, such as  $(SO_4)^{2-}$ ,  $(Cl)^-$ ,  $(NO_3)^-$  and  $(NO_2)^-$
- These solutes move by diffusion from the soil solution (high-concentrated medium) and pass through the wet cellulose walls (low-concentrated medium), due to the continuous movement of free ions.
- Under certain conditions, cations exchange may take place through the cell membrane, **for example** :  
Sodium ion ( $Na^+$ ) may get out of the cell and replaced by potassium ion ( $K^+$ ) .

### Life application :

To get rid of the effects of the agricultural pesticides, it is recommended to soak vegetables in diluted salt solution or in water, while fruits are soaked in diluted sugar solution for a time period doesn't exceed ten minutes.

## 2 Selective permeability phenomenon

- When the ions reach the semi-permeable plasma membrane, some of them are selected and **allowed** to pass through it, while other ions aren't allowed, according to the plant need, regardless of their **size, concentration or charge**.

## 3 Active transport phenomenon



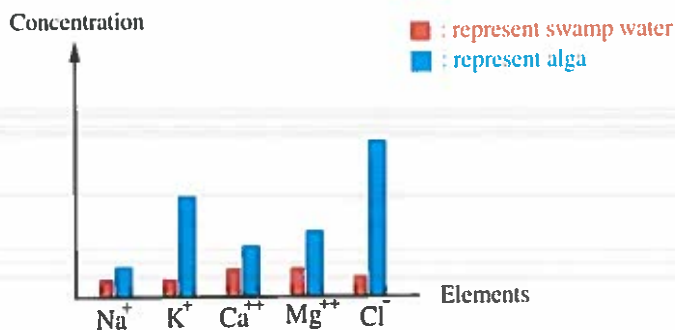
- Sometimes ions diffuse from the soil solution (where the concentration is low) to inside the cell (where the concentration is high).

Therefore, the presence of chemical energy is needed to force these ions to move against this concentration gradient (*i.e.* ions diffuse from the low concentration to the high concentration) and the passage of any substance through the cell membrane, when it needs chemical energy, is known as **active transport**.

- On carrying out an experiment on *Nitella* alga (that lives in swamps) to prove the occurrence of active transport process, the results were as follows :**

- The concentration of various ions that are accumulated in the cellular sap of this alga cells is relatively higher than their concentration in the swamp water. Such case necessitates that the cell must use up some energy to absorb these ions.

- The concentration of some ions that are accumulated in the cell is higher than the others, this proves that the ions are selectively absorbed according to the cell need.



**Graph illustrates the concentration of salts in the cells of *Nitella* alga and swamp water**

## Do you know... ?

- When the plant is immersed in water for a relatively long period of time:
  - The water molecules replace the oxygen of air that is present among the soil granules, therefore the plant can't absorb oxygen by the root hairs which consequently affects the absorption of some mineral salts from the soil by the active transport phenomenon. This is due to the insufficiency of the ATP molecules because of the absence of oxygen which is required for respiration process.

## 5 Test yourself

Answered

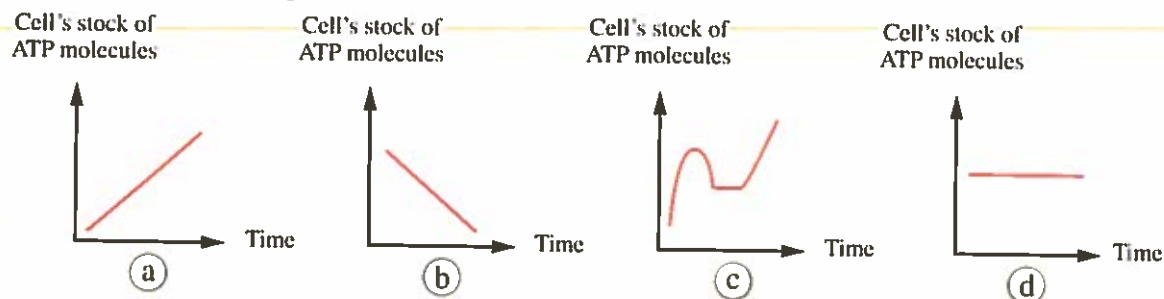
Choose the correct answer :

- 1 The following table illustrates the concentrations of some salt ions inside the root hair and the surrounding soil :

Ions	The concentration inside the root hair	The concentration in the soil
Magnesium	75	15
Nitrate	47	126

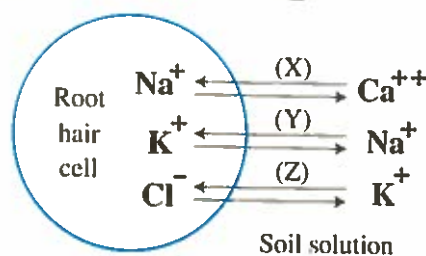
Which of the following physical phenomena does the plant depend on, in the absorption of magnesium and nitrate ?

- (a) Active transport only. (b) Diffusion only.  
 (c) Active transport and diffusion respectively.  
 (d) Diffusion and active transport respectively.
- 2 Which of the following graphs represents the relation between the cells' stock of ATP molecules for an aquatic plant with time when some ions enter into its cells against the concentration gradient ?



- 3 From the opposite figure, which of the following represents the ion exchange among the root hair cells and the soil solution ?

- (a) (X). (b) (Y).  
 (c) (X) and (Y). (d) (X) and (Z).





# Autotrophic Nutrition

## (Absorption of Water and Salts)

To watch videos of  
how to answer  
questions use the App



Interactive test

The questions signed by \* are answered in detail.

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

First

Multiple Choice Questions

### Types of nutrition and root hair

- 1 Which of the following characterizes the nutrients that are synthesized inside the cells of the green plant ?
  - a High-energy and simple-structured compounds.
  - b Low-energy and complex-structured compounds.
  - c High-energy and complex-structured compounds.
  - d Low-energy and simple-structured compounds.
- 2 Which of the following doesn't characterize the heterotrophs ?
  - a They obtain their food in the form of organic compounds.
  - b They obtain their food in the form of high-energy compounds.
  - c They obtain their food in the form of simple-structured compounds.
  - d They depend on other organisms to obtain their food.
- 3 If you know that *Bilharzia* worms live and feed inside the human hepatic portal vein. So, which of the following do these worms belong to ?
  - a Saprophytes.
  - b Autotrophs.
  - c Carnivores.
  - d Parasites.
- 4 Which of the following organisms is different in the mode of nutrition ?
  - a Human.
  - b Bread mould fungus.
  - c Lion.
  - d Deer.
- 5 The following table shows the way of three living organisms for obtaining their food :

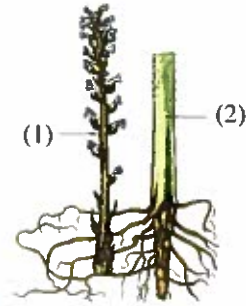
Organism (X)	Takes simple raw materials from the environment and converts them into complex organic substances.
Organism (Y)	Lives inside the alimentary canal of another organism and feeds on its digested food.
Organism (Z)	Lives growing in the places that are rich in organic substances.

Which of the following choices can represent the organisms (X), (Y) and (Z) respectively ?

- a *Ascaris* worm / Mushroom fungus / Corn plant.
- b *Ascaris* worm / Corn plant / Mushroom fungus.
- c Corn plant / *Ascaris* worm / Mushroom fungus.
- d Corn plant / Mushroom fungus / *Ascaris* worm.

6 Which of the following can be concluded from the opposite figure ?

- a The plant (1) parasitises on plant (2).
- b The plant (2) parasitises on plant (1).
- c The two plants (1) and (2) depend on mutualism principle.
- d The two plants (1) and (2) are autotrophs.



7 Which of the following characterizes the root hair cell from the other normal plant cells ?

- a Presence of cell membrane.
- b Presence of sap vacuole.
- c Presence of a layer of protoplasm.
- d Increase of its surface area.

8 Which of the following root hairs has/have the greatest ability to absorb water from the soil ?



- a (1).
- b (2).
- c (3).
- d (1) and (3).

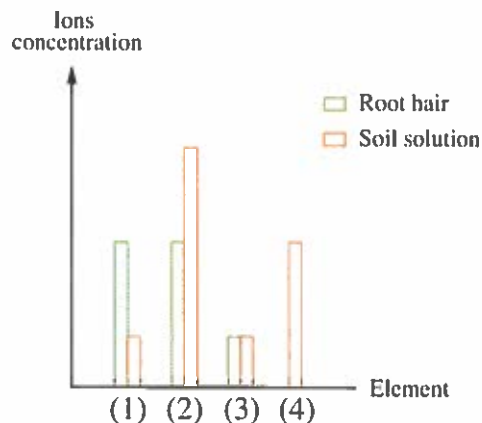
9 Which of the following has no relation with the fitting of root hair to its function in absorbing water from the soil ?

- a The absence of the cutin layer.
- b The presence of large numbers of mitochondria.
- c Its large number and its protrusion outside the root.
- d It has a thin cellulose wall.

### Water absorption mechanism

10 Study the opposite graph that represents the ions concentration of some elements in the soil and the root hair cells of a plant, then determine :  
Which element is absorbed mainly by diffusion ?

- a (1).
- b (2).
- c (3).
- d (4).



**11** Which of the following food substances have the ability to pass through the plasma membranes of the cells ?

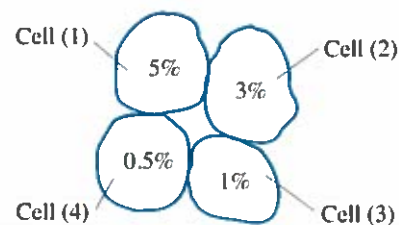
- (a) Starch molecules. (b) Calcium salts.  
 (c) Lipids. (d) Protein molecules.

**12** A plant cell was put in a solution where it gained water by osmosis phenomenon. Which of the following represents the concentration of the cellular sap in each of the cell and the solution respectively ?

- (a) 1% and 3% (b) 1% and 1% (c) 7% and 2% (d) 2% and 7%

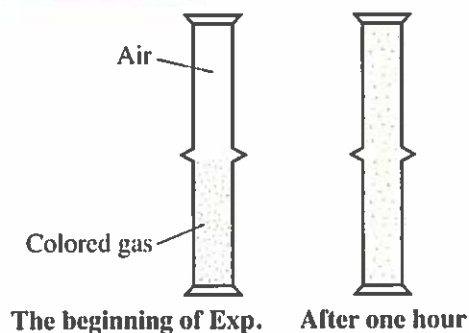
**13** The opposite figure represents 4 adjacent cells that have different concentrations of sugar, which of the following represents the water transfer movement by osmosis ?

- (a) From cell no. (1) to cell no. (2).  
 (b) From cell no. (2) to cell no. (3).  
 (c) From cell no. (3) to cell no. (4).  
 (d) From cell no. (4) to cell no. (1).



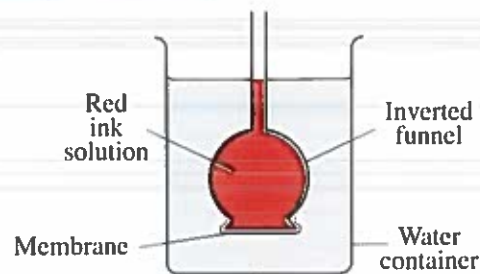
**14** The opposite figure represents a lab experiment, at which a cylinder full of air is put above another cylinder full of a colored gas, which of the following would interpret what happened ?

- (a) The occurrence of diffusion phenomenon upward and downward.  
 (b) The occurrence of the diffusion phenomenon downward only.  
 (c) The occurrence of the diffusion phenomenon upward only.  
 (d) The occurrence of both the diffusion and osmosis phenomena.



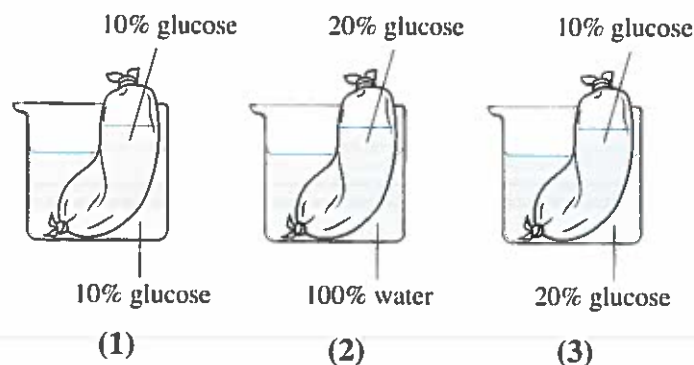
**15** By studying the opposite figure, what is the reason for the water colour change inside the beaker into red colour after an hour ?

- (a) The ink molecules move through the membrane by diffusion.  
 (b) The ink molecules move through the membrane by osmosis.  
 (c) The water molecules move through the membrane by diffusion.  
 (d) The water molecules move through the membrane by osmosis.





- 16 In the following figure, a cellulose sac was put as shown in the cases (1), (2) and (3) at the beginning of the experiment :



(1) What is the concentration of water approximately inside the cellulose sac in case (1) ?

- (a) 10% (b) 20% (c) 80% (d) 90%

(2) What is the concentration of water approximately inside the solution in the beaker of case (3) ?

- (a) 10% (b) 20% (c) 80% (d) 90%

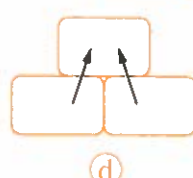
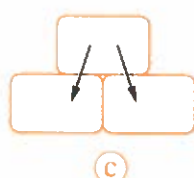
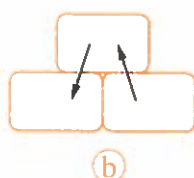
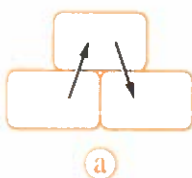
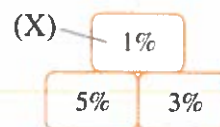
(3) What is the concentration of glucose approximately inside the solution in the beaker of case (2) ?

- (a) Zero. (b) 20% (c) 80% (d) 100%

- 17 What is the phenomenon which explains the reason why the vegetables gain the salty taste when being cooked ?

- (a) Imbibition. (b) Selective permeability.  
(c) Active transport. (d) Diffusion.

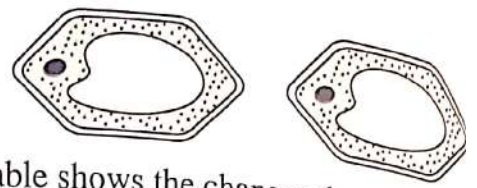
- 18 The opposite figure shows the concentration of the cellular sap inside three adjacent plant cells, which direction will be the movement of water by osmosis from or to cell (X) ?



- 19 What do you expect when the cell wall of a plant cell is removed by a certain way, then put in distilled water ?

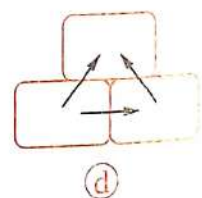
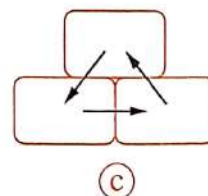
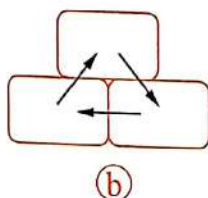
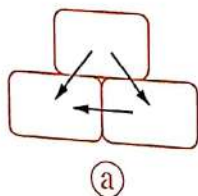
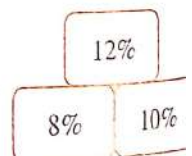
- (a) The cell takes a longer time to swell.  
(b) The proteins that are present in the cytoplasm exit through the cell membrane.  
(c) The cell shrinks.  
(d) The cell bursts.

- 20 The opposite figure represents two identical cells, one of them is put in a high-concentrated solution and the other is put in a low-concentrated solution with respect to the sap vacuole concentration inside each of them, which choice in the following table shows the changes that happened for the two cells after 30 minutes ?

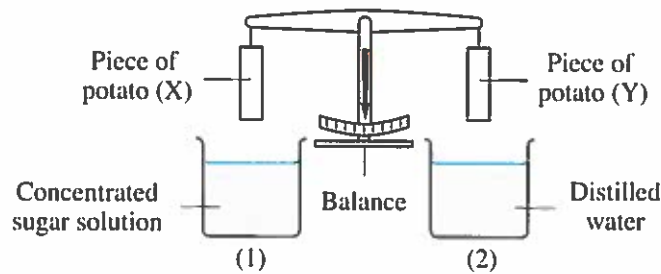


	High-concentrated solution	Low-concentrated solution
(a)		
(b)		
(c)		
(d)		

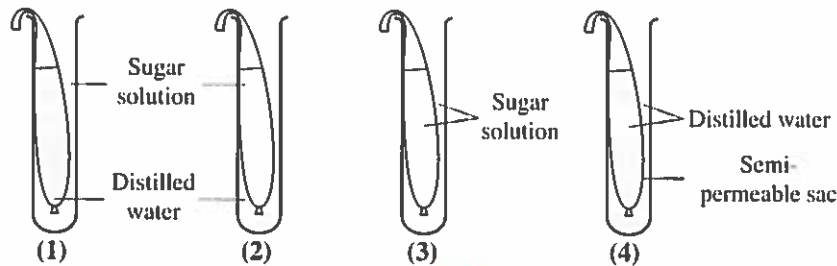
- 21 The opposite figure shows the concentration of the cellular sap inside three adjacent plant cells, which of the following choices shows the path of the water transport among these cells ?



- 22 In the following figure, two pieces of potatoes have the same weight at an equilibrium state on the shown balance, what will happen when both of them are immersed in the beakers (1) and (2) ?

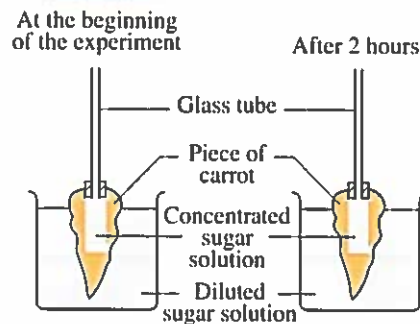


- (a) The weight of piece (X) increases and the weight of piece (Y) isn't affected.  
 (b) The weight of piece (X) decreases and the weight of piece (Y) isn't affected.  
 (c) The weight of piece (X) increases and the weight of piece (Y) decreases.  
 (d) The weight of piece (X) decreases and the weight of piece (Y) increases.
- 23 What happens when immersing a plant cell in a solution with low osmotic pressure 1% with respect to the cell concentration ?
- (a) It swells. (b) It shrinks. (c) It bursts. (d) It isn't affected.
- 24 In which of the following tubes will the water move through the semi-permeable sac by osmosis ?



- (a) The tube no. (1) and the tube no. (2). (b) The tube no. (2) and the tube no. (3).  
 (c) The tube no. (1) and the tube no. (4). (d) The tube no. (3) and the tube no. (4).

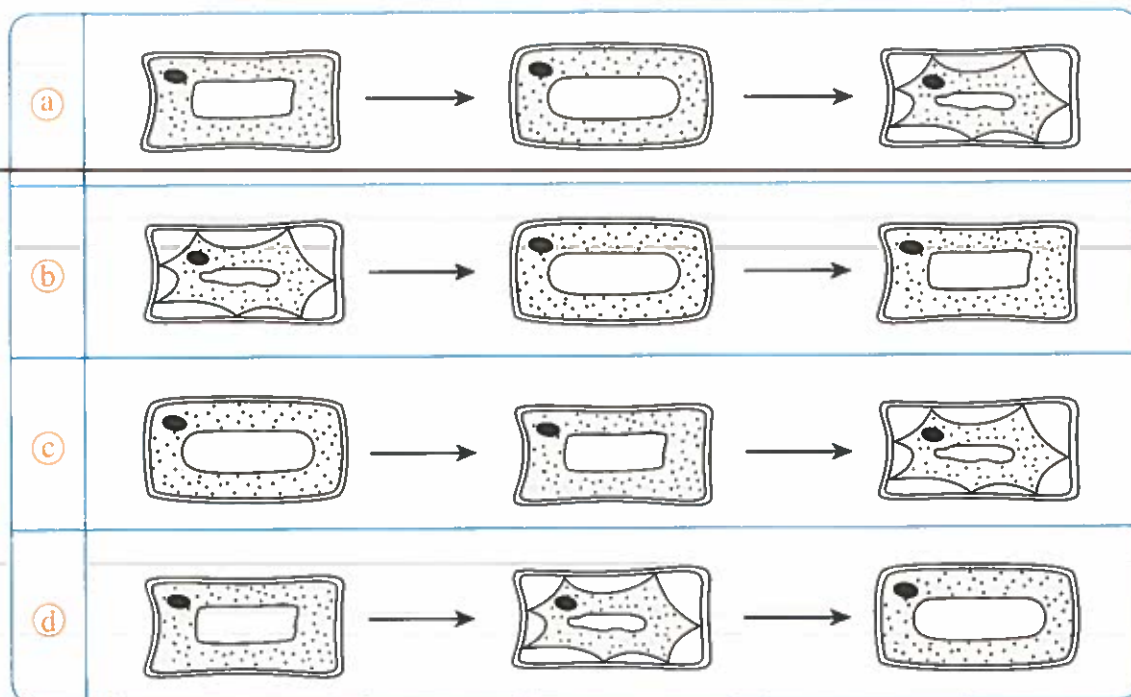
- 25 The opposite figure shows the rising of a concentrated sugar solution inside a glass tube connected firmly inside a hollow piece of carrot that is put in a diluted sugar solution, what is the reason for the rising of this solution inside this tube ?



- (a) The sugar molecules move through the carrot tissues to the glass tube.  
 (b) The sugar molecules move through the carrot tissues to the beaker.  
 (c) The water molecules move through the carrot tissues to the glass tube.  
 (d) The water molecules move through the carrot tissues to the beaker.



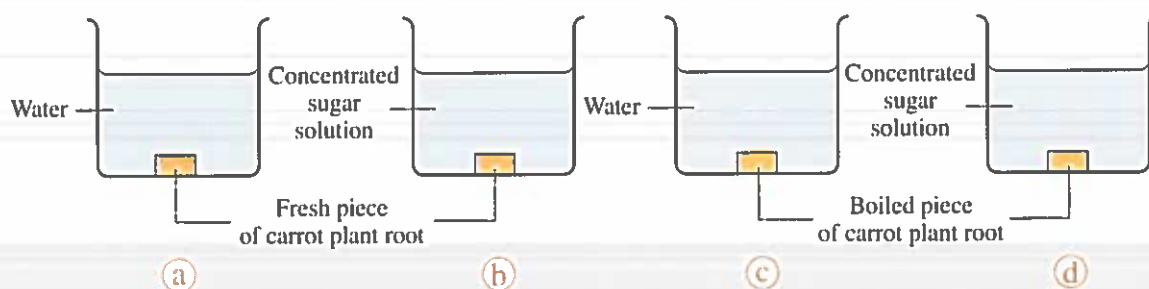
- 26 Which of the following choices shows the changes occurred in a plant cell which was put in a concentrated solution for 30 minutes ?



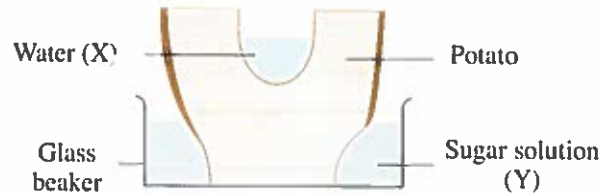
- 27 What happens when immersing an animal cell in a solution with low osmotic pressure 1% with respect to the cell concentration ?

- a It swells.
- b It shrinks.
- c It bursts.
- d It isn't affected.

- 28 A student brought four equal-sized pieces of carrot plant root, then they were treated as shown in the following figures for 4 hours, which piece will have the smallest size ?

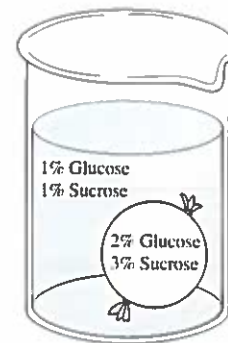


- 29 The opposite figure shows an experiment to detect the osmosis phenomenon in the living cells, if you know that the concentration of sugar solution in the beaker is 10% and the concentration of starch solution in sap vacuoles is 5%, what happens to the volume of water (X) and the volume sugar solution (Y) after 12 hours ?



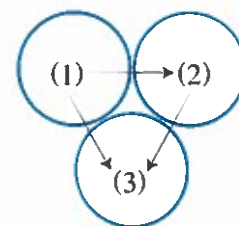
	Volume of water (X)	Volume of sugar solution (Y)
a	Decreases	Increases
b	Increases	Increases
c	Increases	Remains constant
d	Remains constant	Decreases

- 30 \* A 2% glucose solution and a 3% sucrose solution were added in a sac made of a permeable membrane for water and glucose only, then this sac is put in a beaker containing 1% glucose solution and 1% sucrose solution, which of the following would occur as time passes ?



- 31 \* You have two pieces of potato tuber, where the weight of each one of them is 5 g, the first piece is put in pure water and the second is put in a concentrated sugar solution. What is the expected weight for each one of them after one hour ?
- a The first is 6 g and the second is 4 g.      b The first is 4 g and the second is 6 g.  
 c The first and the second are 4 g.      d The first and the second are 6 g.

- 32 \* The opposite figure represents the direction of water transfer by osmosis phenomenon among three neighbouring plant cells, which of the following choices represents the correct arrangement for the ability of plant cells to receive water, in descending order ?



- a (2), (1) and (3).      b (2), (3) and (1).  
 c (1), (2) and (3).      d (3), (2) and (1).

- 33** \* (X) and (Y) represent two identical transverse sections in a plant leaf, (X) was put in sugar solution (Z) as shown in figure (1), while (Y) was put in sugar solution (L) as shown in figure (2), which of the following can be deduced from the two figures (1) and (2) ?



Figure (1)

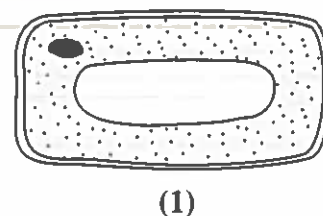


Figure (2)

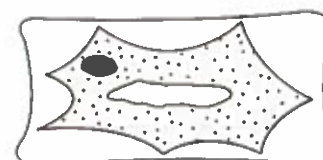
- (a) Concentration of solution (Z) equals that of solution (L).  
 (b) Concentration of solution (Z) is higher than that of solution (L).  
 (c) Concentration of solution (L) is lower than that of the solution inside the sap vacuoles of the cells in section (X).  
 (d) Concentration of solution (Z) equals to that of the solution inside the sap vacuoles of the cells in section (Y).

- 34** In the opposite figures, if you know that the osmotic pressure of plant cell no. (1) is equivalent to 5% sucrose solution :

- (1) \* The cell is converted from state no. (1) into state no. (2) when putting it in a sucrose solution with concentration equals .....  
 (a) zero. (b) 1%  
 (c) 5% (d) 10%  
 (2) Cell no. (2) can turn into state no. (1) again when putting it in a .....  
 (a) 10% sucrose solution. (b) 15% sucrose solution.  
 (c) 20% sucrose solution. (d) distilled water.



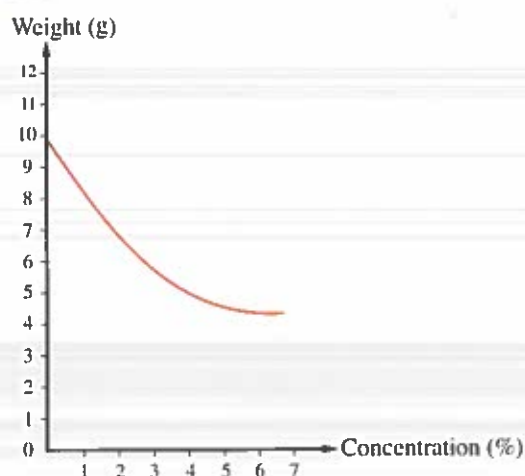
(1)



(2)

- 35** \* The opposite graph illustrates the results of an experiment that was carried out on pieces of potato with equal weights (7g), then some of them were put in water and the others were put in sucrose solutions with different concentrations, which one of the sucrose solutions has the same concentration of the cellular sap in the potato cells ?

- (a) Zero. (b) 2%  
 (c) 4% (d) 7%





- 36 \* In the opposite figure, which of the following will lead to converting the plant from state (1) to state (2), when using it continuously in irrigation ?

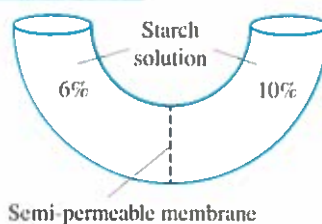
(a) Tap water. (b) Distilled water.  
(c) Low-concentrated sugar solution.  
(d) Highly-concentrated salt solution.



- 37 \* The green plant doesn't get benefit from the sugars resulted from the decomposition of the plant leaves which are present in the soil, this is because the root hairs contain .....

(a) cellulose walls.  
(b) plasma membranes.  
(c) sap vacuoles with high concentration of sugar.  
(d) sap vacuoles with low concentration of sugar.

- 38 \* In the opposite figure, an amount of starch solution (10%) is put in the right side and another equal amount of starch solution (6%) is put in the left side, what do you expect to happen after passing time ?

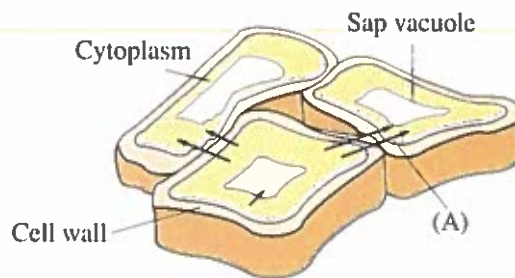


(a) Water will transfer from right to left. (b) Starch will transfer from right to left.  
(c) Water will transfer from left to right. (d) Starch will transfer from left to right.

### Absorption of mineral salts

- 39 From the opposite figure, what is the phenomenon by which the substance (A) transfers among the cells ?

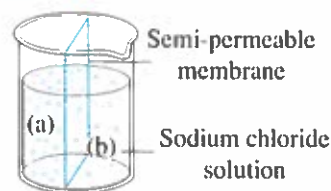
(a) Osmosis phenomenon.  
(b) Imbibition phenomenon.  
(c) Diffusion phenomenon.  
(d) Active transport phenomenon.



- 40 In the opposite figure :

(1) What is the phenomenon by which the sodium ions move from (a) to (b) ?

(a) Osmosis. (b) Diffusion.  
(c) Active transport. (d) Imbibition.



(2) What is the phenomenon by which the water molecules move from (b) to (a) ?

- (a) Osmosis. (b) Diffusion. (c) Active transport. (d) Imbibition.

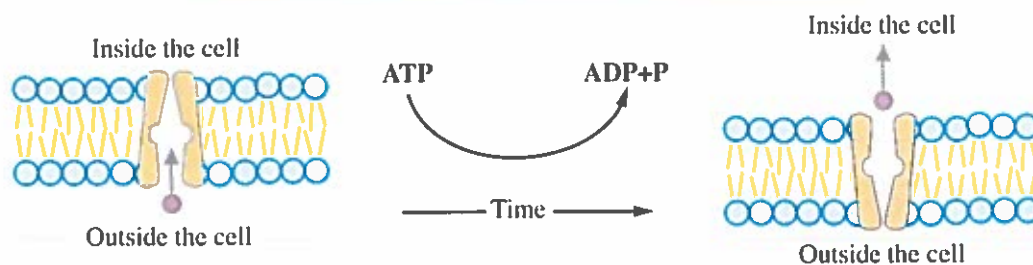
41 Which of the following elements is needed by the plant for protein synthesis ?

- (a) Aluminum. (b) Nitrogen. (c) Molybdenum. (d) Chlorine.

42 Which of the following elements is the least used by the plant ?

- (a) Phosphorus. (b) Nitrogen. (c) Iodine. (d) Sulphur.

43

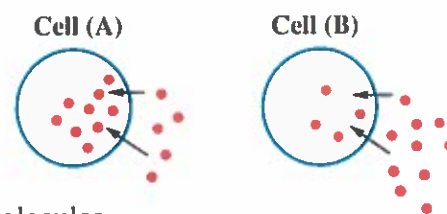


What does the previous process represent ?

- (a) Osmosis. (b) Active transport.  
(c) Imbibition. (d) Selective permeability.

44 From the opposite figure, which of the following cells need(s) ATP molecules to transfer the molecules to it ?

- (a) Cell (A) only. (b) Cell (B) only.  
(c) Cell (A) and cell (B). (d) None of them uses ATP molecules.



45 If the concentration of  $K^+$  ions in the pond water is  $1.2 \times 10^3$  ion/liter. What is the concentration of these ions in the cellular sap of *Nitella* alga ?

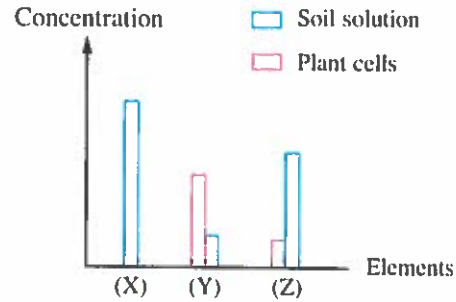
- (a)  $1.2 \times 10^3$  ion/liter. (b)  $0.8 \times 10^3$  ion/liter.  
(c)  $0.12 \times 10^3$  ion/liter. (d)  $2.1 \times 10^3$  ion/liter.

46 Which of the following mechanisms permit the transport process inside and outside the cell ?

- (1) Active transport. (2) Diffusion. (3) Selective permeability. (4) Osmosis.  
(a) (2) and (4) only. (b) (1), (2) and (3) only.  
(c) (1), (3) and (4) only. (d) (1), (2), (3) and (4).

47 In the opposite graph :

- (1) What is the reason for the non-absorption of element (X) ?
  - (a) Its size is big.
  - (b) Its concentration is very high in the soil.
  - (c) The plant doesn't need it.
  - (d) This element is from the micro-nutrients.
- (2) What is the phenomenon on which the plant depends for the absorption of element (Z) ?
  - (a) Osmosis.
  - (b) Diffusion.
  - (c) Active transport.
  - (d) Imbibition.
- (3) What is the phenomenon on which the plant depends for the absorption of element (Y) ?
  - (a) Osmosis.
  - (b) Diffusion.
  - (c) Active transport.
  - (d) Imbibition.
- (4) If you know that in case of the absence of element (Y), photosynthesis process wouldn't occur, which of the following may represent this element ?
  - (a) Iron.
  - (b) Sulphur.
  - (c) Chlorine.
  - (d) Calcium.
- (5) Which of the following interprets the reason for the presence of element (Y) in a higher concentration than that of element (Z) in the plant cells ?
  - (a) The plant needs element (Y) more than element (Z).
  - (b) The absorption of the two elements is occurred by diffusion.
  - (c) The first element is absorbed by diffusion and the second is absorbed by active transport.
  - (d) The first element is absorbed by active transport and the second is absorbed by diffusion.

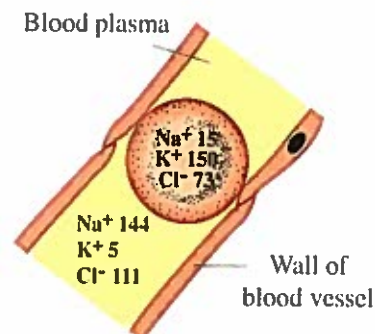


48 \* Which of the following elements is needed by the plant to absorb ions against the concentration gradient ?

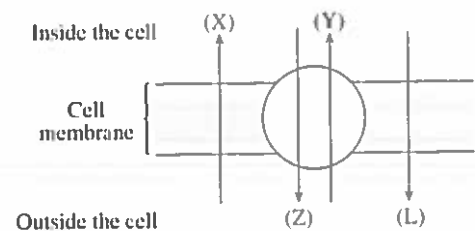
- (a) Chlorine.
- (b) Iron.
- (c) Phosphorus.
- (d) Sulphur.

49 \* The following figure shows the concentration of some ions inside a red blood corpuscle and inside the blood plasma, which choice in the following table represents the ions which transfer to and from the cell by active transport ?

	To inside the cell	To outside the cell
(a)	$\text{Cl}^-$	$\text{K}^+$
(b)	$\text{K}^+$	$\text{Na}^+$
(c)	$\text{Na}^+$	$\text{Cl}^-$
(d)	$\text{Na}^+$	$\text{K}^+$



- 50** \* The opposite diagram shows the transfer of ions through the cell membrane, if you know that the concentration of sodium ions inside the cell is lower than outside and the concentration of potassium ions inside the cell is higher than outside, which choice in the following table expresses the movement of ions through the arrows ?



	Active transport of potassium	Active transport of sodium	Diffusion of sodium	Diffusion of potassium
(a)	Y	Z	X	L
(b)	Y	Z	L	X
(c)	Z	Y	X	L
(d)	Z	Y	L	X

- 51** \* A piece of fresh potato is put into a diluted sucrose solution and after an hour, the weight of this piece increases. Which of the results shown in the opposite table represents the concentration of sucrose after the experiment ends and the process that occurs ?

- (a) (1).                      (b) (2).  
(c) (3).                      (d) (4).

	The concentration of sucrose	Process
(1)	Decreases	Active transport
(2)	Increases	Active transport
(3)	Decreases	Osmosis
(4)	Increases	Osmosis

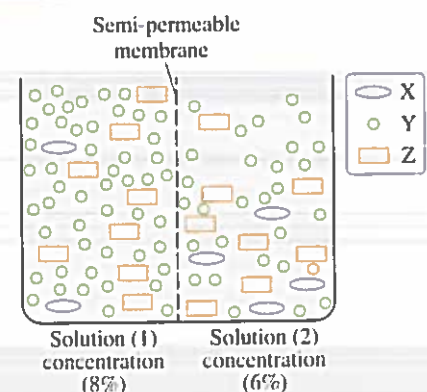
- 52** \* In the opposite figure :

- (1) Which of the following can transfer through the semi-permeable membrane ?

- (a) (X) and (Z) from solution (1) to solution (2).  
(b) (Y) from solution (1) to solution (2).  
(c) (X) and (Z) from solution (2) to solution (1).  
(d) (X) and (Y) from solution (2) to solution (1).

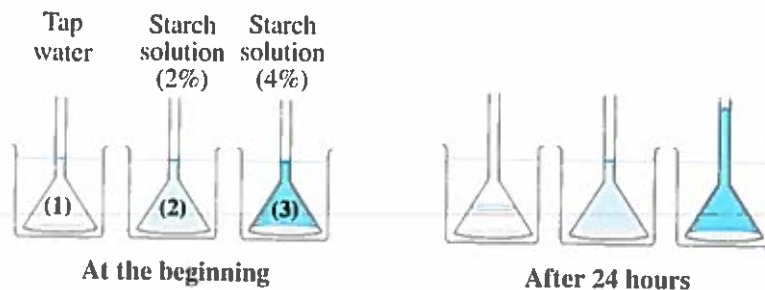
- (2) After 24 hours, the concentration of the ..... solution will be ..... %

- (a) first / 9                      (b) second / 8                      (c) first / 7                      (d) second / 5





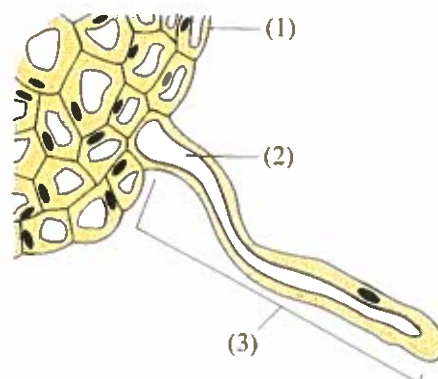
- 53 \* The following figure shows three funnels containing solutions with different concentrations, where each of them was put for 24 hours in a beaker containing starch solution with unknown concentration, and the end of each funnel is covered with a semi-permeable membrane :



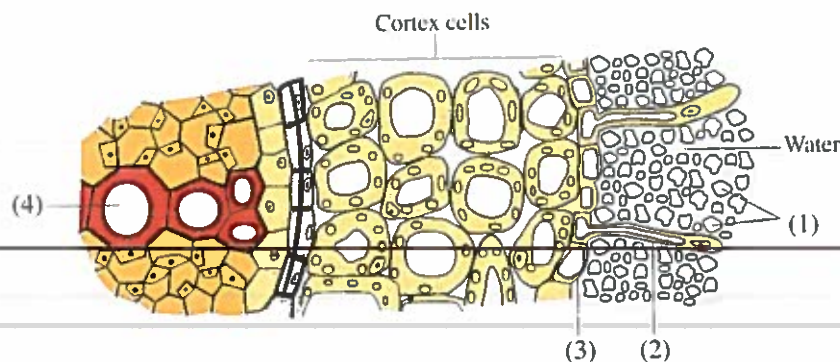
- (1) What is the concentration of solution inside the container ?
  - (a) 4%
  - (b) 2%
  - (c) 1%
  - (d) Zero.
- (2) What is the reason for the changes that occurred in funnels no. (1) and (3) ?
  - (a) Osmosis phenomenon.
  - (b) Diffusion phenomenon.
  - (c) Imbibition phenomenon.
  - (d) Active transport phenomenon.

## Second Miscellaneous Questions

- 1 "Cotton plant is autotrophic, while bread mould fungus is heterotrophic". **Explain.**
- 2 What is the difference between : bean plant and *Orobanch* plant according to the mode of nutrition?
- 3 "The root hair works as an osmotic instrument". **Explain.**
- 4 The following figure illustrates an important structure in the plant root :
  - (a) What is the change that may occur to structures no. (1) and (3) in case of the continuous root growth ?
  - (b) What happens to the ions concentration in structure no. (2), on increasing the time between irrigation periods ?
  - (c) Predict what happens in case of absence of structure no. (3) from the plant root.



**5** The following figure illustrates a T.S. in the root of a plant :



- (a) Deduce the labels from no. (1) : (4).
- (b) Illustrate by arrows on the figure the path of the water transfer from structure no. (1), till reaching structure no. (4) in the centre of the root by osmosis phenomenon.
- (c) Explain how the presence of structure no. (2) helps in :
  - 1. Penetrating structure no. (1).
  - 2. Increasing the efficiency of water and salts absorption from structure no. (1).
- (d) What happens if the nitrate, sulphate and phosphate salts disappeared from structure no. (1) ?
- (e) The production of ATP molecules needs the presence of oxygen, deduce what happens if structure no. (1) is immersed in water for a relatively long time.

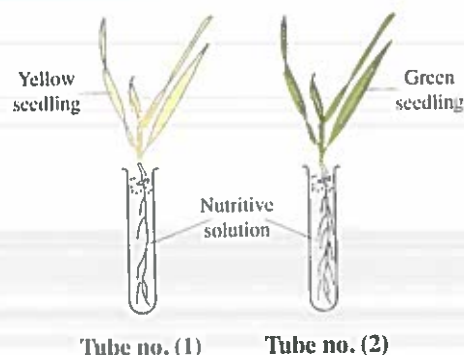
**6** "The cell walls are characterized by the selective permeability phenomenon".  
How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.

**7** What is the relation between : osmosis phenomenon and osmotic pressure ?

**8** "Active transport is arisen from the osmosis difference among the plant cells".  
How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.

**9** Give reason for : the cell consumes energy to absorb the ions against the concentration gradient.

**10** In the opposite figure, two seedlings are planted in two different nutritive solutions with exposing them to the same conditions. Explain the difference between the colour of the two seedlings in the two tubes no. (1) and (2).

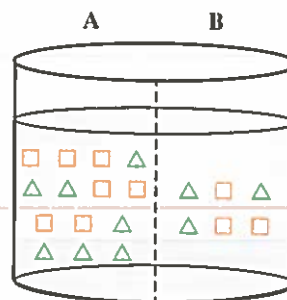


# New Types of questions ?

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

**Choose two correct answers for the following questions :**

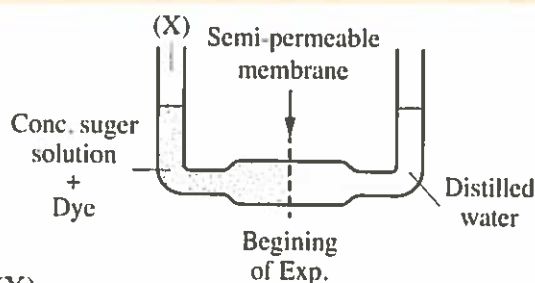
- 1 The opposite figure represents two solutions containing substances  $\square$  and  $\triangle$  which are dissolved in water and separated by a membrane, if the membrane is permeable to water only, which of the following will occur ?



- (a) Concentration of  $\square$  in the side (A) will increase.
  - (b) Volume of solution in the side (A) will increase.
  - (c) Concentration of  $\triangle$  in the side (B) will decrease.
  - (d) Volume of solution in the side (B) will increase.
  - (e) The concentration of the two solutions in two sides (A) and (B) will be equal at the end.
- 2 Which of the following is expected to happen as a result of the excess irrigation of the soil in a hot day ?
- (a) The increase in the plant absorption rate to water.
  - (b) The decrease in the soil salinity.
  - (c) The increase in soil salinity.
  - (d) The decrease in the plant absorption rate to salts.
  - (e) The increase in the plant absorption rate to salts.

**Choose from the list what suits the spaces :**

- 3 Study the opposite figure that represents a tube having two terminals separated by a semi-permeable membrane, after passing two hours from the beginning of the experiment :



- The concentration of solution of the terminal (X) will .....(1).....
- The water level inside the terminal (X) will .....(2).....

Increase
Decrease
Elevate
Drop down
Remain constant



## Chapter 1 Lesson Two

# Continue : Autotrophic Nutrition (Photosynthesis in Green Plants)

## Second Photosynthesis process

- Green leaves are considered the main centres for photosynthesis process in the higher plants, as they contain **chloroplasts**.
- The green herbaceous stems may contribute to some extent in photosynthesis process, as they contain chlorenchyma tissues which contain chloroplasts.

*Do you know... ?* —

- Chlorenchyma tissues are parenchyma tissues containing green chlorophyll.

### Chloroplast

#### Under the light microscope

The green plastids (chloroplasts) in higher plants appear as a homogeneous mass, having the shape of convex lens.

#### By the electron microscope

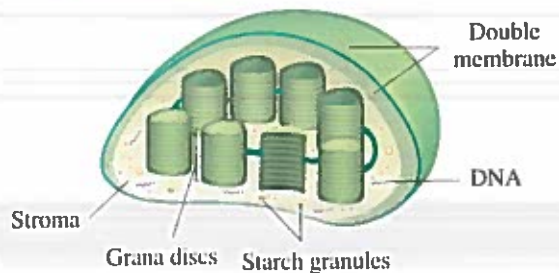
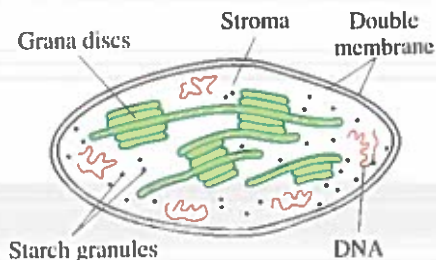


Diagram of chloroplast (Highly magnified)

### Integration with Physics



The presence of the green plastid in the form of a convex lens permits the collection of a larger amount of light rays which increases its efficiency to perform the photosynthesis process.



• **It is proved that the chloroplast consists of :**

- ① **Double thin external membrane :** its thickness is about 10 nanometers.
- ② **Matrix (Stroma) :** consists of a colourless protein substance.
- ③ **Starch granules :**
  - They spread in the stroma with large numbers.
  - They are small in size, as they decompose into soluble sugar that translocated to other organs of the plant under certain conditions.
- ④ **Grana :**
  - They are embedded in the stroma.
  - They are disc-shaped structures arranged along the body of plastid, where they are linked together by thin membranes.
  - Each granum is about 0.5 micron in diameter and about 0.7 micron in thickness.
  - Each granum consists of 15 hollow discs or more that are arranged above each other and the granum is hollow from inside, while the margins of some discs of a granum may extend to meet the margins of another disc of a neighbouring granum to increase the surface area of grana that are exposed to light.
  - They are responsible for carrying the **pigments** which absorb the light energy "to perform the photosynthesis process".

• **The main pigments in the chloroplast :**

Pigment	Colour	Approximate ratio
<b>Chlorophyll (A)</b>	Bluish green	70%
<b>Chlorophyll (B)</b>	Yellowish green	
<b>Xanthophyll</b>	Lemon yellow	25%
<b>Carotene</b>	Orangish yellow	5%

**Note**

The green colour dominates over the other colours of pigments in the chloroplast, due to the high ratio of chlorophyll pigments.

**Do you know ... ?**

- Chlorophyll (A) and (B) are considered from the main pigments that are responsible for absorbing most of the light needed for accomplishing the photosynthesis process.
- Xanthophyll and carotene are considered from the accessory pigments that absorb a little amount of light, then transfer it to chlorophyll (A) which increases the efficiency of photosynthesis process.

- **The importance of chlorophyll :** it absorbs the light energy required for the photosynthesis process.

### The structure of chlorophyll :

- It is complicated in structure and the molecular formula of chlorophyll (A) is  $C_{55}H_{72}O_5N_4Mg$
- It is believed that there is a relation between the presence of magnesium atom (Mg) at the centre of chlorophyll (A) molecule and the ability of chlorophyll to absorb the light.

### Life application:-

The pepper colours are different according to the various pigments that are found in its cells where :

- \* The green pepper fruits contain a high percentage of green chlorophyll.
- \* The yellow pepper fruits contain a high percentage of xanthophyll.
- \* The orange pepper fruits contain a high percentage of carotene.



### Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

1 The opposite graph illustrates the percentages of pigments that are present in a leaf of a plant, study it, then answer :

(1) By which of the following pigments the most light energy that is needed for the photosynthesis process is absorbed ?

- (a) (X).                      (b) (Y).  
(c) (Z).                      (d) (Y) and (Z).

(2) Which of these pigments is found in a high percentage in the roots of carrot plant ?

- (a) (X).                      (b) (Y).                      (c) (Z).                      (d) (X) and (Y).

(3) Which of these pigments is found in a high percentage in the stems of *Corchorus olitorius* "mulukhiyah" plant ?

- (a) (X).                      (b) (Y).                      (c) (Z).                      (d) (Y) and (Z).

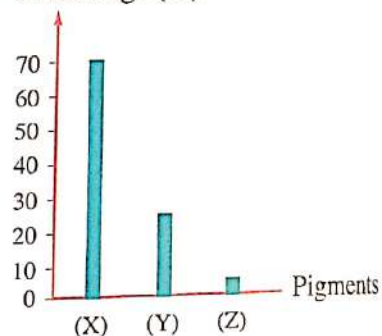
2 Which of the following elements affects the efficiency of chlorophyll absorption to light ?

- (a) Mg                      (b) K                      (c) Na                      (d) Cl

3 If you know that the difference between chlorophyll (A) and chlorophyll (B) is in one chemical group, as the first contains alkyl group ( $CH_3$ ), while the second contains aldehyde group ( $CHO$ ). So, what is the molecular formula of chlorophyll (B) ?

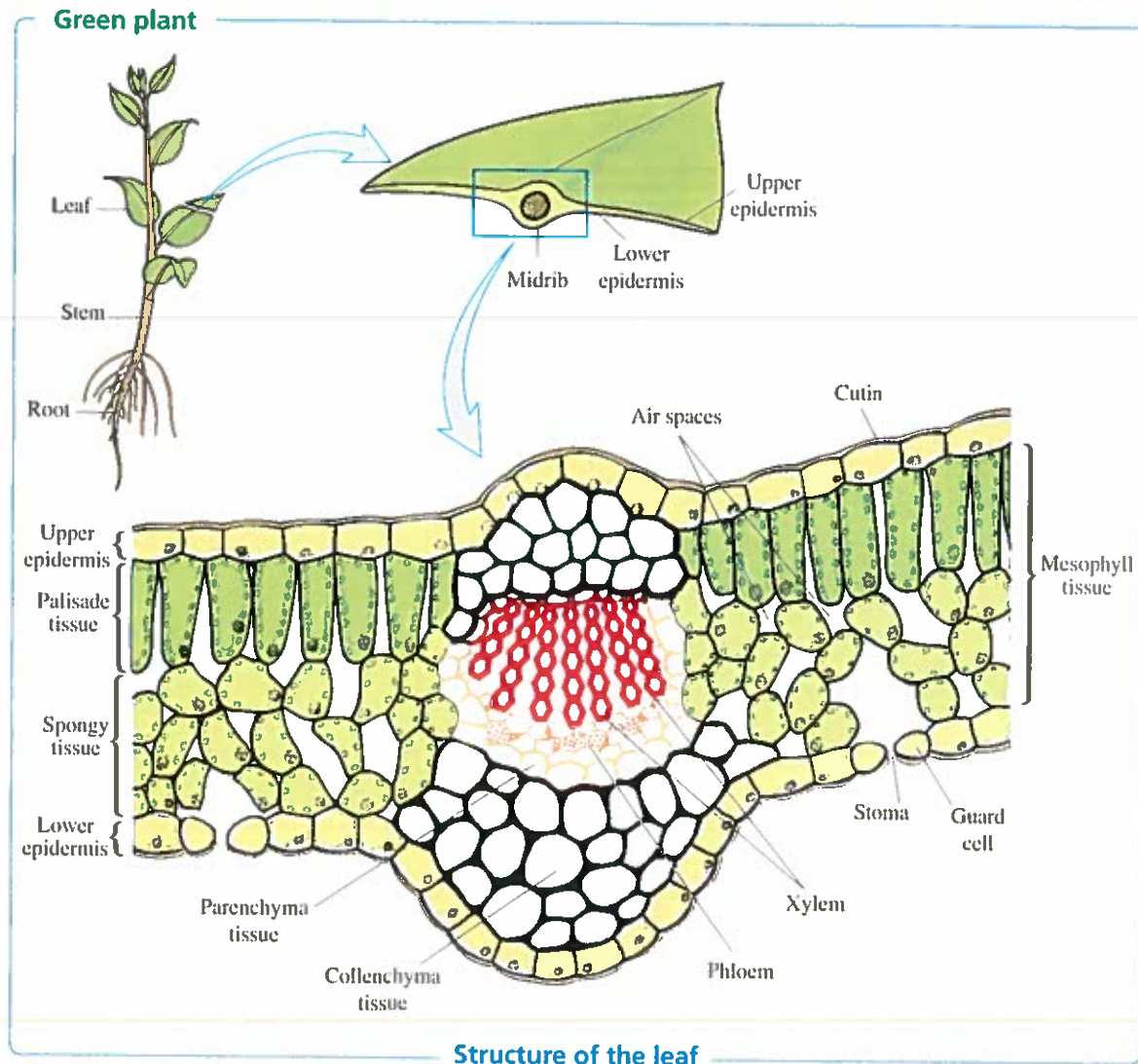
- (a)  $C_{55}H_{72}O_5N_4Mg$                       (b)  $C_{54}H_{70}O_6N_4Mg$   
(c)  $C_{55}H_{70}O_6N_4Mg$                       (d)  $C_{55}H_{70}O_4N_4Mg$

Percentage (%)





## Structure of the leaf



- The leaf consists of three main tissues, which are :

### 1 Upper and lower epidermis

- Each of the upper and lower epidermis consists of one layer of adjacent barrel-shaped **parenchyma cells** that are devoid of chlorophyll.
- The external wall of each epidermis is coated by a layer of **cutin**, except the **stomata** that spread throughout the epidermal cells.

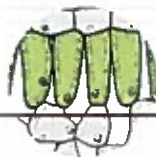


## 2 Mesophyll tissue

- It is located between the upper and lower epidermis, transversed by veins and consists of :

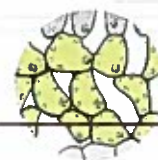
### 1 Palisade layer

- It is perpendicular to the surface of the upper epidermis.
- It consists of one row of cylindrical and elongated parenchyma cells.
- Its cells possess many chloroplasts that arrange themselves in its upper part to receive the largest amount of light rays.



### 2 Spongy layer

- It is located below the palisade layer.
- It consists of irregular-shaped and loosely-arranged parenchyma cells with wide intercellular spaces.
- Its cells contain a lower number of chloroplasts than the palisade cells.



## 3 Vascular tissue

- It consists of **numerous vascular bundles** which extend inside the veins and venules, and the main vascular bundle of the leaf is found in the midrib.
- **The vascular bundle consists of :**
  - **Xylem vessels :** found in several vertical rows that are separated by xylem parenchyma (thin-walled) cells.
  - **Phloem :**
    - It follows the xylem toward the lower surface of the leaf.
    - It translocates the dissolved organic food substances that are formed in the mesophyll tissue to the different plant parts.

## 2 Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

- 1 If the magnesium element is detected in a leaf of a plant, in which of the following will it be found in an excess amount ?
  - (a) Upper epidermis.
  - (b) Lower epidermis.
  - (c) Palisade layer.
  - (d) Spongy layer.
- 2 How far are the following statements correct, "cutin layer is absent in aquatic plants", "and its thickness decreases in the desert plants" ?
  - (a) The two statements are correct.
  - (b) The two statements are wrong.
  - (c) The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.
  - (d) The first statement is wrong and the second statement is correct.

Answered



## Mechanism of photosynthesis

### Source of oxygen evolved during photosynthesis process

- The American scientist "Van Neil" was the first person who pointed out the source of oxygen evolved in the photosynthesis process through his studies to this process in the **green and purple sulphur bacteria**.



Van Neil

### 1 Green and purple sulphur bacteria

- Sulphur bacteria are characterized by :**

- Being autotrophic :** as they can synthesize their food by a bacteriochlorophyll (which is simple-structured than the normal chlorophyll).
- Living in swamps and ponds :** as hydrogen sulphide is abundant which is the source of hydrogen that is used by these bacteria to reduce  $\text{CO}_2$ , in order to build-up carbohydrates substances and sulphur is released.

- Van Neil assumed that :**

- Light decomposes hydrogen sulphide into hydrogen and **sulphur** in light reactions :



- The resulted hydrogen reduces carbon dioxide into carbohydrates in dark reactions :



So, the general chemical equation for photosynthesis in sulphur bacteria is



### 2 Green plants

- Van Neil assumed that :**

- Light decomposes water into hydrogen and **oxygen** in light reactions :



- The resulted hydrogen reduces carbon dioxide into carbohydrates in dark reactions :



So, the general chemical equation for photosynthesis in green plants is



- Consequently, Van Neil proposed that water is the source of oxygen in green plants, as that the hydrogen sulphide is the source of sulphur in sulphur bacteria.

### Confirming the theory of Van Neil

- To confirm that water is the source of oxygen that evolved from the photosynthesis process :

In 1941, a group of scientists at California university carried out experiments to verify the theory of "Van Neil", where they used the green *Chlorella* alga and provided it with all the suitable conditions for accomplishing the photosynthesis process.

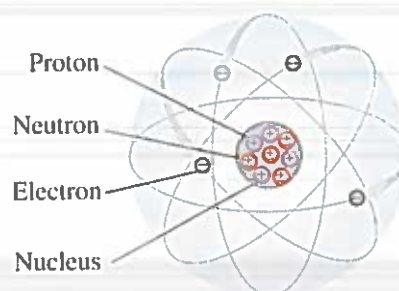
	First experiment	Second experiment
<b>Steps :</b>	Using water contains oxygen isotope $^{18}\text{O}$ instead of $^{16}\text{O}$	Using normal water with carbon dioxide contains $^{18}\text{O}$ isotope
<b>Observations :</b>	The evolved oxygen from photosynthesis is $^{18}\text{O}$ isotope.	The evolved oxygen from photosynthesis is normal oxygen $^{16}\text{O}$
<b>Equation of the reaction :</b>	$6\text{C}^{16}\text{O}_2 + 12\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O} \xrightarrow[\text{Chlorophyll}]{\text{Light energy}} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}^{16}\text{O}_6 + 6\text{H}_2^{16}\text{O} + 6^{18}\text{O}_2\uparrow$	$6\text{C}^{18}\text{O}_2 + 12\text{H}_2^{16}\text{O} \xrightarrow[\text{Chlorophyll}]{\text{Light energy}} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}^{18}\text{O}_6 + 6\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O} + 6^{16}\text{O}_2\uparrow$
<b>Conclusion :</b>	The source of the evolved oxygen from photosynthesis is water not carbon dioxide.	

### Integration with Chemistry



- Isotopes are forms of the chemical element that have the same atomic number (the number of protons inside the nucleus or the number of electrons that revolve around the nucleus), but they differ in the mass number (the sum of protons and neutrons inside the nucleus), due to the difference in neutrons number.

- Example :** oxygen has three stable isotopes which are :



### 3 Test yourself

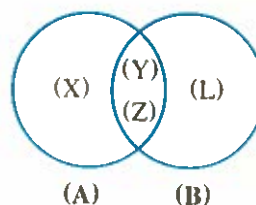
Answered

Choose the correct answer :

1 The opposite figure represents the products of photosynthesis process of two living organisms (A) and (B), if you know that :

(A) : An autotrophic organism that lives in a salty swamp that is rich in sulphur element.

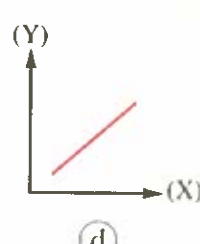
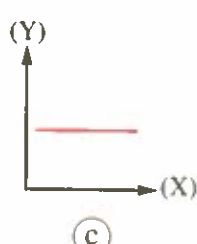
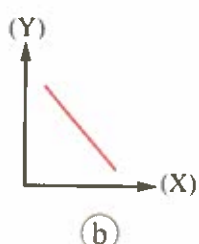
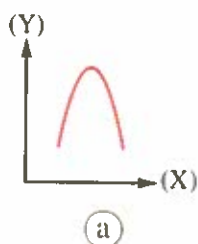
(B) : An autotrophic organism that lives in a mud soil.



Which of the following represents (X) and (Y) respectively ?

- (a) Oxygen / Water. (b) Sulphur / Glucose.  
(c) Oxygen / Glucose. (d) Sulphur / Oxygen.

2 Which of the following graphs illustrates the relation between the percentage of the presence of purple sulphur bacteria (Y) in swamps water and the sulphur (X) that is precipitated in it ?



3 When using carbon dioxide containing oxygen isotope ( $^{18}\text{O}$ ) in the photosynthesis process, which of the following will contain the oxygen isotope ( $^{18}\text{O}$ ) in the products of the reaction ?

- (a) Glucose only. (b) Glucose and water.  
(c) Water only. (d) Water and evolved oxygen.

### Light and dark reactions of the photosynthesis process

- In 1905, "Blackman" explained through his studying experiments on the limiting factors for the photosynthesis rate, such as light, temperature and carbon dioxide, the photosynthesis process is **divided into** :
  - Light reactions (sensitive to light).
  - Dark reactions "Enzymatic reactions" (sensitive to temperature).



Blackman

## First Light reactions

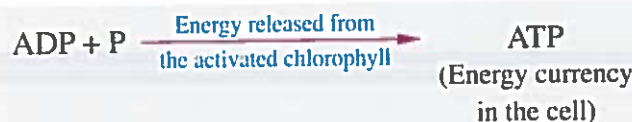


### Light reactions

They are a group of reactions that occur in the grana inside the green plastid (chloroplast), as it contains the chlorophyll pigments and the light is the limiting factor for the rate (speed) of these reactions.

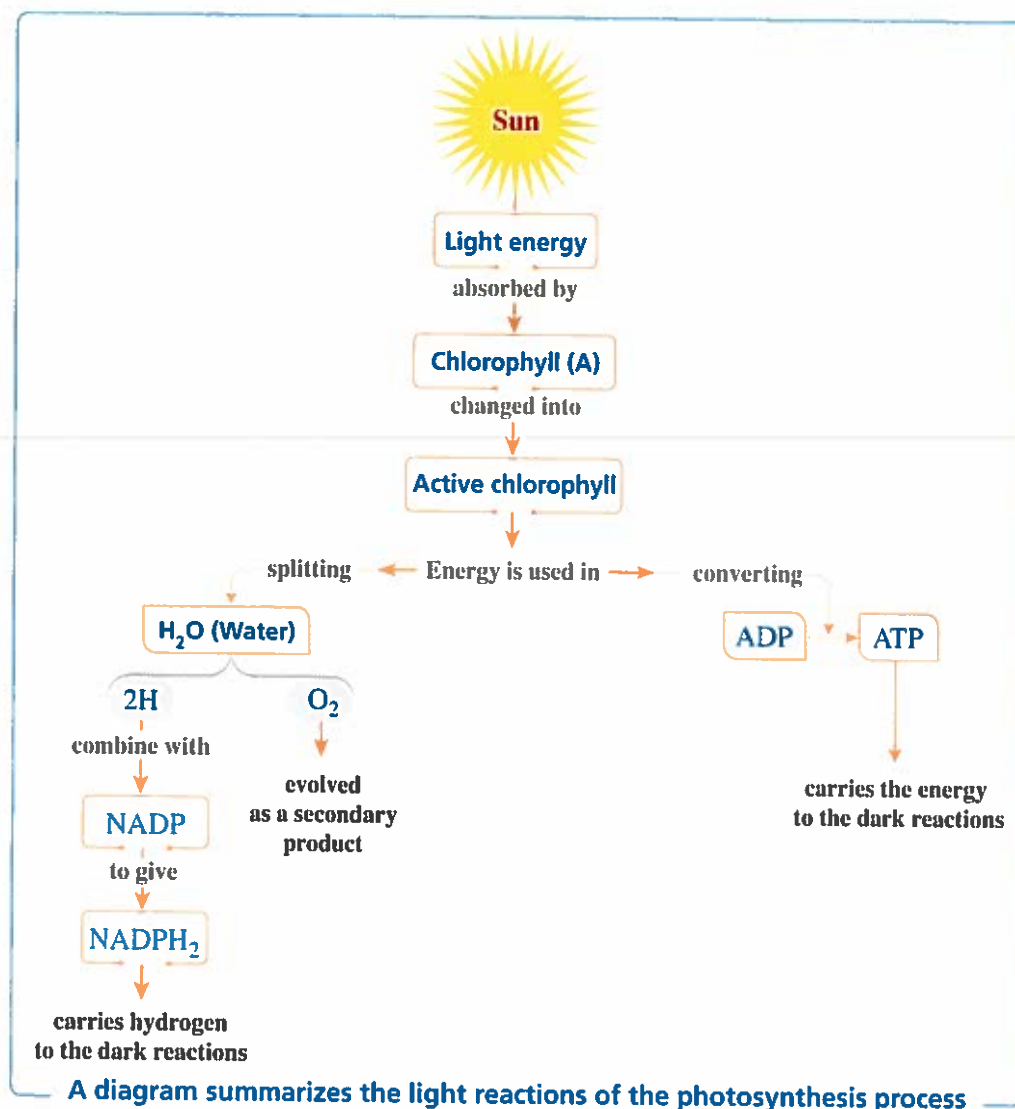
#### • Light reactions occur in a chain of steps, as follows :

- ① **Light** falls on the **chlorophyll** that is present in the grana of the chloroplast, therefore the electrons in the atoms of chlorophyll molecule will gain energy. So, they are shifted upward (transferred) from their low-energy levels to the higher ones.
- ② The kinetic energy of light is stored as a chemical potential energy in the chlorophyll. So, the chlorophyll molecules in which their electrons have reached this condition are said to be in an "**excited state**" or "**activated state**".
- ③ When the stored energy in chlorophyll is released, the electrons fall once again to the lower energy levels and the chlorophyll will return to the stable state, being ready for another influence of light to become excited once more.
- ④ A part of energy released from the excited chlorophyll is used in splitting up the water molecule into hydrogen and oxygen, where :
  - **Hydrogen** combines with a coenzyme (hydrogen receptor) that is present in the chloroplast and symbolized by **NADP** to give **NADPH<sub>2</sub>**, in this way hydrogen will not escape or recombine with oxygen again.
  - **Oxygen** is released as a secondary product.
- ⑤ The other part of energy released from the excited chlorophyll is stored in **ATP molecule** by the combination of ADP molecule (which is present in the chloroplast) with a phosphate group ( $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ ), and this process is called "**photosynthetic phosphorylation**".



- **ADP** : Adenosine DiPhosphate.
- **ATP** : Adenosine TriPhosphate that carries the energy to the dark reactions.
- **NADP** : Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide Phosphate.





## Second Dark reactions

### Dark (Enzymatic) reactions



They are a group of reactions that occur in the stroma (matrix of chloroplast) outside the grana, in which the temperature is the limiting factor for the rate (speed) of these reactions. So, these reactions can occur in either light or darkness.

- In these reactions, **carbon dioxide gas is fixed** by its combination with the **hydrogen** carried on  $\text{NADPH}_2$  compound with the help of the energy stored in ATP molecules, therefore carbohydrates are formed. So,  $\text{NADPH}_2$  and ATP compounds are called **energy-fixing compounds**.

- "Melvin Calvin" and his associates at California university in 1949 revealed the nature of dark reactions by using the newly discovered radioactive isotope of carbon ( $^{14}\text{C}$ ).



Melvin Calvin

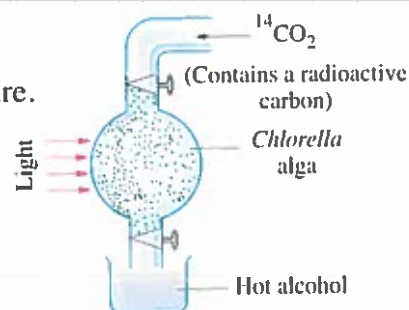


## Experiment

### Melvin Calvin

#### 1. Steps :

- (1) *Chlorella* alga was put in the apparatus shown in the figure.
- (2) He supplied the alga with  $\text{CO}_2$  gas containing the radioactive carbon ( $^{14}\text{C}$ ).
- (3) The apparatus was exposed to a very brief light of lamp to allow the photosynthesis process to take place.
- (4) *Chlorella* was then immersed in a beaker containing hot alcohol to kill the cell and stopping the biochemical reactions.
- (5) He managed to separate the compounds that are formed during photosynthesis process (by special means) and tested for the radioactive carbon in these compounds by using Geiger counter.



#### 2. Results :

- (1) A compound with three carbon atoms (3C) was formed which is called "phosphoglyceraldehyde PGAL" (after two seconds only from exposing to light) and it is :
  - The first stable chemical compound produced from photosynthesis process.
  - Used in building-up glucose, starch, proteins and fats.
  - Used in the cellular respiration as a high-energy compound.
- (2) Proving that the hexose sugar (glucose) is not synthesized in one step, but synthesized through several intermediate reactions catalyzed by certain specific enzymes.

## 4 Test yourself

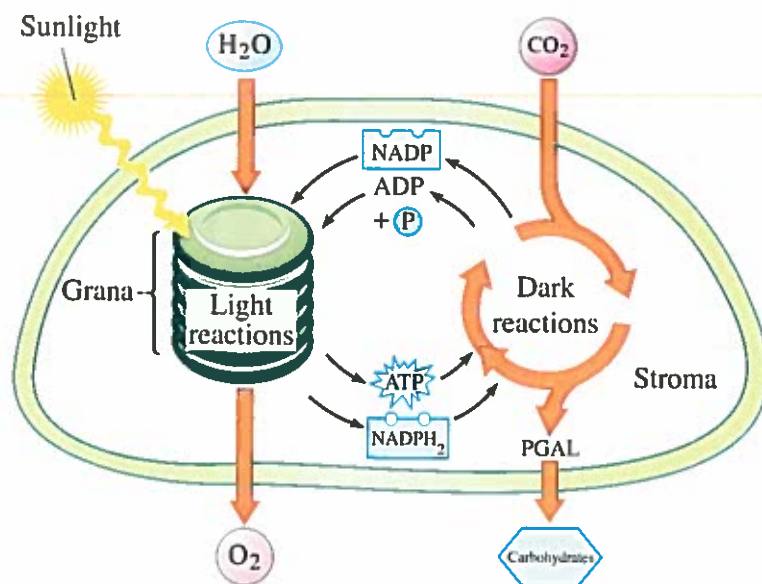
Answered

Choose the correct answer :

- 1 When is water formed in the products of the equation  
 $(6\text{CO}_2 + 12\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6 + 6\text{H}_2\text{O} + 6\text{O}_2\uparrow)$  ?  
 (a) During light reactions. (b) During dark reactions.  
 (c) During photosynthetic phosphorylation. (d) During light and dark reactions.
- 2 What happens if the NADP compound is absent during the light reactions ?  
 (a) The splitting process of water doesn't occur.  
 (b) Hydrogen will transfer to the stroma.  
 (c)  $\text{CO}_2$  gas isn't fixed up.  
 (d) The energy will not be transferred to the dark reactions.
- 3 How many molecules of phosphoglyceraldehyde needed to build-up two molecules of glucose during the photosynthesis process ?  
 (a) 1 (b) 2 (c) 3 (d) 4

🎁 From the previous, we can :

- Summarize the mechanism of occurrence of light and dark reactions in chloroplast, as shown in the following diagram :



• Compare between the light and dark reactions, as follows :

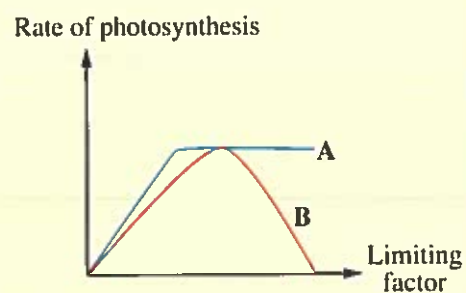
P.O.C.	Light reactions	Dark reactions
Location :	In grana.	In stroma (matrix of chloroplast).
The limiting factor :	Light	Temperature
What happens in this process :	Conversion of the kinetic energy of light into chemical potential energy in chlorophyll.	Fixation of $\text{CO}_2$ by its combination with hydrogen that is carried on $\text{NADPH}_2$ compound by the help of ATP
Products :	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Hydrogen combines with NADP, forming <math>\text{NADPH}_2</math></li> <li>- Oxygen gas (secondary product).</li> <li>- Energy stored in ATP molecule.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- PGAL compound that is used in building-up glucose, starch, proteins and lipids, also used as a high-energy compound in the cellular respiration.</li> <li>- Water.</li> </ul>

### 5 Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

The opposite graph illustrates the relation between the rate of photosynthesis and its two limiting factors (A) and (B) which affect its speed through affecting on the speed of the occurrence of .....

- (a) light reactions only.
- (b) dark reactions only.
- (c) light and dark reactions respectively.
- (d) dark and light reactions respectively.



Answered



The questions signed by  are answered in detail.

# Continue : Autotrophic Nutrition

(Photosynthesis in Green Plants)

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

To watch videos of  
how to answer  
questions use the App



Interactive test

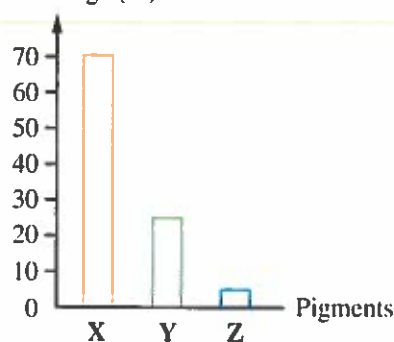
First

Multiple Choice Questions

## Chloroplast and the structure of the leaf

- 1 Which of the following tissues are characterizing the stems of herbaceous plants comparing with the stems of perennial trees ?
  - a) Parenchyma tissues.
  - b) Collenchyma tissues.
  - c) Sclerenchyma tissues.
  - d) Chlorenchyma tissues.
- 2 When exposing a plant to a sunny day, which of the following its releasing rate from the leaf increases ?
  - a)  $\text{CO}_2$
  - b)  $\text{O}_2$
  - c)  $\text{N}_2$
  - d)  $\text{H}_2$
- 3 When exposing a plant to a long period of darkness, which of the following its releasing rate from the leaf increases ?
  - a)  $\text{CO}_2$
  - b)  $\text{O}_2$
  - c)  $\text{N}_2$
  - d)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$
- 4 The opposite graph shows the percentages of pigments inside plant plastids, which of them is the most abundant in apricot plant fruit ?
  - a) Z
  - b) Y
  - c) X and Z
  - d) Y and X
- 5 Which of the following that its deposition leads to the impermeability of the epidermal cells walls in a leaf of a plant to water ?
  - a) Cutin.
  - b) Cellulose.
  - c) Pectin.
  - d) Suberin.

Percentage (%)



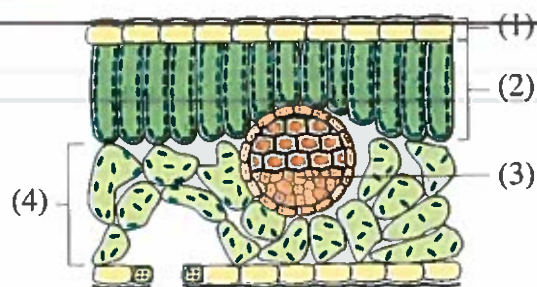
6 Through which of the following layers the light passes inside the bean plant leaf ?

- (a) Layer that contains air chambers.
- (b) Layer that is rich in plastids.
- (c) Layer that is impermeable to water.
- (d) Layer that contains vascular tissues.

7 In the opposite figure :

(1) In which of the following structures, the largest amount of carbohydrates is manufactured ?

- (a) (1).
- (b) (2).
- (c) (3).
- (d) (4).



(2) In which of the following tissues, the highest concentration of the compounds that contain magnesium element is present ?

- (a) (1).
- (b) (2).
- (c) (3).
- (d) (4).

(3) In which of the illustrated parts in the figure where the photosynthesis process takes place ?

- (a) (1) and (4).
- (b) (1) and (3).
- (c) (2) and (4).
- (d) (2) and (3).

(4) In which of the following parts, the largest amount of  $\text{CO}_2$  is used ?

- (a) (1).
- (b) (2).
- (c) (3).
- (d) (4).

8 Which of the following symptoms appear on growing the plant in a soil poor in magnesium element ?

- (a) Small leaves and many roots grow.
- (b) Large leaves and few roots grow.
- (c) The leaves are getting greener.
- (d) The leaves are getting more yellow in colour.

9 The following figures show some cells in a plant leaf that contains many green plastids, which of them indicates that the plant is exposed to a dim light ?



(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

10 \* If you know that the *Medicago sativa* plant is the host of the *Cuscuta* plant. So, which of the following can be concluded ?

- (a) The *Medicago sativa* plant is devoid of chlorophyll and the *Cuscuta* plant contains real roots.
- (b) The *Cuscuta* plant is devoid of chlorophyll and the *Medicago sativa* plant contains real roots.
- (c) The *Medicago sativa* plant contains chlorophyll and the *Cuscuta* plant contains real roots.
- (d) The *Medicago sativa* plant is devoid of chlorophyll and the *Cuscuta* plant is devoid of roots.

11 \* Which of the following contains the highest percentage of starch granules ?

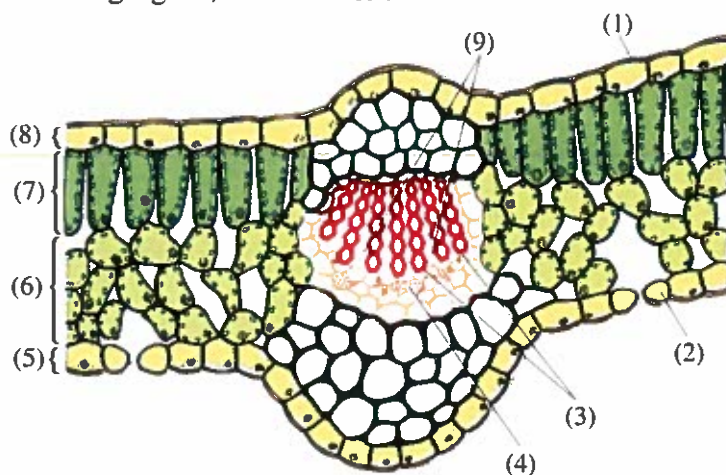
- (a) Palisade tissue.
- (b) Spongy tissue.
- (c) Xylem tissue.
- (d) Phloem tissue.

12 \* The opposite table shows the number of chloroplasts in three types of cells in a dicotyledonous plant leaf, which of the following represents the correct number of chloroplasts ?

	Epidermis	Palisade layer	Spongy layer
(1)	Zero	17	6
(2)	6	Zero	17
(3)	17	6	Zero
(4)	17	6	17

- (a) (1).
- (b) (2).
- (c) (3).
- (d) (4).

13 \* Study the following figure, then answer :



(1) Which of the following alternatives represents two different types of living and non-living cells which share in the formation of a compound tissue ?

- (a) (3) and (4).
- (b) (5) and (6).
- (c) (3) and (9).
- (d) (7) and (8).

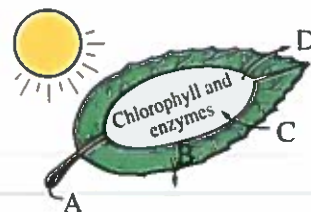
(2) What are the two similar types of cells which share in performing one function ?

- (a) (3) and (4).
- (b) (5) and (6).
- (c) (6) and (7).
- (d) (7) and (8).

- 14 \* Which of the following is applied on the upper surface of the plant leaf ?
- (a) It is more green than its lower surface.
  - (b) It is less green than its lower surface.
  - (c) It has the same degree of green colour of its lower surface.
  - (d) It is different in the green colour degree from its lower surface regarding to the light intensity.

### Mechanism of photosynthesis

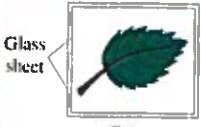





- 15 Which of the following equations represents the nutrition process in the following figure ?
- (a)  $B + D \xrightarrow{\text{Sunlight}} A + C$
  - (b)  $A + C \xrightarrow{\text{Sunlight}} B + D$
  - (c)  $A + C \xrightarrow{\text{Sunlight}} A + D$
  - (d)  $A + B + D \xrightarrow{\text{Sunlight}} B + C$



- 16 Which of the following interpret the inability of the green plants to survive in far depths of oceans ?
- (a) There is no suitable soil to fix the plant roots.
  - (b) The concentration of oxygen is very high.
  - (c) The light intensity is very low.
  - (d) The concentration of carbon dioxide is very low.
- 17 In the photosynthesis process, which of the following the green plants use ?
- (a) Carbon dioxide and water to produce energy.
  - (b) Oxygen and water to produce energy.
  - (c) Energy to produce carbon dioxide and water.
  - (d) Energy to produce oxygen, water and glucose.
- 18 What is the factor that doesn't affect the rate of photosynthesis in the plant ?
- (a) The number of plastids.
  - (b) The site of stomata.
  - (c) The thickness of the mesophyll tissue.
  - (d) The concentration of chlorophyll.



- 19 \* The following table shows the exposure of 3 plant leaves to light for several hours then detecting the starch in each of them by using iodine solution :

<b>The beginning of experiment</b>			
<b>The end of the experiment</b>			

Which choice in the following table illustrates the reason for non-changing the colour of iodine solution in these leaves as shown at the end of the experiment ?

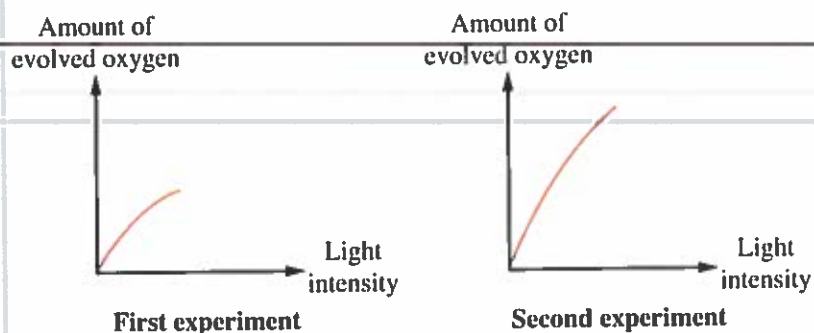
	(1)	(2)	(3)
(a)	Absence of chlorophyll	Absence of CO <sub>2</sub>	Absence of light
(b)	Absence of CO <sub>2</sub>	Absence of chlorophyll	Absence of light
(c)	Absence of light	Absence of chlorophyll	Absence of CO <sub>2</sub>
(d)	Absence of CO <sub>2</sub>	Absence of light	Absence of chlorophyll

- 20 \* Which of the following equations is more suitable for expressing the photosynthesis process in green plants ?

- (a)  $6\text{CO}_2 + 6\text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{Light energy}} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6 + 6\text{O}_2 \uparrow$
- (b)  $\text{CO}_2 + 2\text{NADPH}_2 + 3\text{ATP} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{Light energy}} \frac{1}{6}\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6 + 2\text{NADP}$
- (c)  $n\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6 \xrightarrow{\text{Light energy}} (\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6)_n + n\text{H}_2\text{O}$
- (d)  $6\text{CO}_2 + 12\text{H}_2\text{S} \xrightarrow{\text{Light energy}} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6 + 6\text{H}_2\text{O} + 12\text{S} \downarrow$

## Light and dark reactions

- 21** The two following graphs illustrate two experiments that are carried out by two groups of students to measure the rate of the photosynthesis process by measuring the oxygen amount released from an aquatic plant at various environmental conditions :



- The first experiment: at a low temperature and a high concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas.
- The second experiment: at a high temperature and a low concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas.

What may be concluded from these experiments ?

- ☐ a The photosynthesis rate is not affected by changing temperature.  
☐ b The high concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas decreases the rate of photosynthesis.  
☐ c The temperature and  $\text{CO}_2$  gas have a limited effect on the rate of photosynthesis.  
☐ d As the light intensity increases, the rate of photosynthesis process increases.
- 22** Which of the following the green plants use in the photosynthetic phosphorylation process ?
- ☐ a Light + water + chlorophyll. ☐ b  $\text{CO}_2$  + ADP + light.  
☐ c Light + chlorophyll + ADP ☐ d Water +  $\text{CO}_2$  + ADP
- 23** Which of the following conversions is the opposite process to the photosynthetic phosphorylation process ?
- ☐ a ATP from ADP in grana. ☐ b ADP from ATP in grana.  
☐ c ATP from ADP in stroma. ☐ d ADP from ATP in stroma.
- 24** Which of the following compounds doesn't belong to light reactions ?
- ☐ a Formation of ADP ☐ b Formation of glucose.  
☐ c Evolving of  $\text{O}_2$  ☐ d Formation of NADP
- 25** In the green plastid, ADP and NADP compounds are converted into .....
- ☐ a energy-carrier compounds. ☐ b hydrogen-carrier compounds.  
☐ c (a) and (b) respectively. ☐ d (b) and (a) respectively.

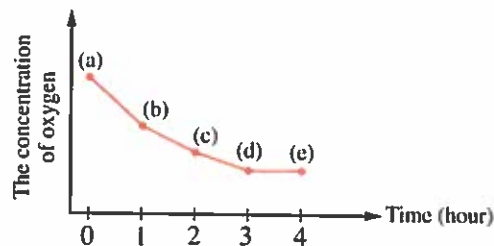
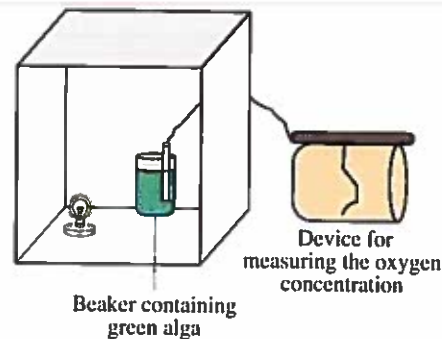
26 What is/are the source(s) of energy that is/are needed to fix  $\text{CO}_2$  gas in the chloroplast ?

- ☐ a  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$                       ☐ b ATP and NADP  
☐ c ATP    ☐ d  $\text{H}^+$  ions and phosphate groups.

27 The dark reactions take place in the stroma in the presence of each of carbon dioxide, .....

- ☐ a  $\text{NADPH}_2$  and ATP                      ☐ b NADP and ATP  
☐ c  $\text{NADPH}_2$  and water.                      ☐ d water and ATP

28 In an experiment to study the effect of light intensity on photosynthesis process, a student put a beaker containing green alga and an electric lamp inside a closed box, and he estimated the concentration of oxygen inside the beaker, after that he started to reduce the light intensity for several times and recorded the concentration of oxygen inside the beaker at each time, and the results were represented in the following graph. Study it, then answer :



(1) In which of the following periods the rate of the resulted oxygen equals the rate of the consumed oxygen ?

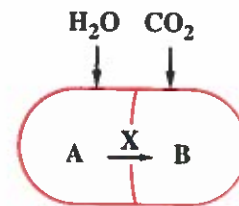
- ☐ a From (a) to (b).    ☐ b From (b) to (c).  
☐ c From (c) to (d).    ☐ d From (d) to (e).

(2) Which of the following whose production rate increases by increasing the rate of oxygen production ?

- ☐ a  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$                       ☐ b ATP                      ☐ c  $\text{NADPH}_2$                       ☐ d  $\text{CO}_2$

29 The opposite figure represents a reaction that happens inside an organelle in a plant leaf, where do the two processes (A) and (B) take place ?

- ☐ a In grana and stroma respectively.  
☐ b In stroma and grana respectively.  
☐ c In grana.  
☐ d In stroma.



30 What is the main function of dark reactions in the green plastid ?

- ☐ a Usage of ATP to release  $\text{CO}_2$                       ☐ b Usage of  $\text{NADPH}_2$  to release  $\text{CO}_2$   
☐ c Splitting of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  to release  $\text{O}_2$                       ☐ d Formation of simple sugars.

**31** In the green and purple sulphur bacteria, what happens in the light and dark reactions respectively ?

- (a) Formation of hydrogen sulphide and splitting of water.
- (b) Evolving of oxygen and formation of water.
- (c) Splitting of hydrogen sulphide and formation of water.
- (d) Splitting of water and formation of hydrogen sulphide.

**32** Which of the following that its occurrence is not related to the presence of  $\text{NADPH}_2$  compounds in the stroma of the chloroplast ?

- (a) Splitting of water molecule.
- (b) Activation of chlorophyll.
- (c) Formation of ADP
- (d) Releasing of oxygen gas.

**33** Which of the following reactions occurs in stroma and doesn't occur in grana ?

- (a) Formation of a 3-carbon compound.
- (b) Conversion of NADP into  $\text{NADPH}_2$
- (c) Splitting of water molecule.
- (d) Conversion of ADP into ATP

**34** In the dark reactions of photosynthesis process, how is PGAL compound formed ?

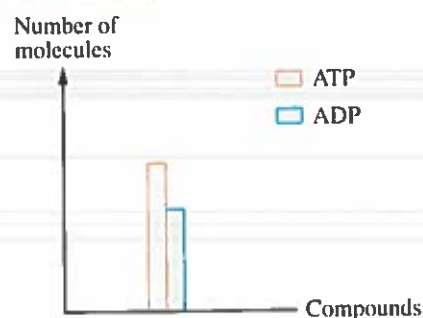
- (a) By combination of carbon dioxide with water.
- (b) By combination of carbon dioxide with hydrogen.
- (c) By production of ATP from ADP
- (d) By reaction between carbon dioxide and chlorophyll.

**35** In an experiment similar to that of Melvin Calvin,  $\text{CO}_2$  gas containing  $^{16}\text{O}$  isotope and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  containing  $^{18}\text{O}$  isotope were used, what is the product that is formed after four seconds ?

- (a) PGAL containing  $^{16}\text{O}$
- (b) Glucose containing  $^{16}\text{O}$
- (c) Glucose containing  $^{18}\text{O}$
- (d) PGAL containing  $^{18}\text{O}$

**36** From the opposite graph which represents some products of the photosynthesis process reactions, what are the reactions that take place during this stage ?

- (a) Formation of water molecule.
- (b) NADP reduction.
- (c) Formation of high-energy compounds.
- (d)  $\text{CO}_2$  reduction.



**37** What is the number of phosphoglyceraldehyde molecules that are needed to form a glucose molecule ?

- (a) 2
- (b) 3
- (c) 4
- (d) 5



38 Which of the following compounds doesn't belong to dark reactions' products ?

- (a) Formation of ADP                      (b) Formation of glucose.  
(c) Formation of oxygen.                (d) Formation of NADP

39 Which of the following compounds are not produced, when exposing the *Chlorella* alga to light for two seconds only ?

- (a)  $\text{NADPH}_2$                       (b) ATP                      (c) PGAL                      (d)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$

40 Which of the following tables summarizes what happens for the compounds sharing in the biochemical reactions of the photosynthesis ?

Substance	Water	ADP	NADP
Affecting	Synthesis	Synthesis	Reduction

(a)

Substance	Oxygen	ADP	NADP
Affecting	Photolysis	Synthesis	Oxidation

(b)

Substance	Water	ATP	NADP
Affecting	Oxidation	Synthesis	Oxidation

(c)

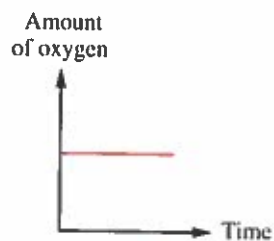
Substance	Water	ATP	NADP
Affecting	Photolysis	Synthesis	Reduction

(d)

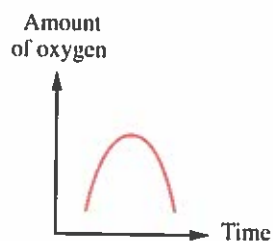
41 The customers in a restaurant observed that one of the dark potted plants inside the restaurant was more growing and greener than the other plants, a customer asked the owner of the restaurant about the reason, and he answered that he put the remains of soda water (sparkling water) in the pot of this plant. So, which of the following can explain that ?

- (a) Soda water makes the soil more alkaline, leading to an increase in the plant growth.  
(b) Temperature of soda water increases the rate of the plant growth.  
(c) Evolved oxygen from soda water increases the plant growth.  
(d) Soda water contains mineral salts and  $\text{CO}_2$  gas which increases the rate of the plant growth.

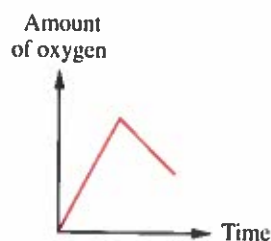
42 If we supposed that a green plant is exposed to a continuous light for 24 hours, which of the following graphs expresses the amount of oxygen produced by the plant ?



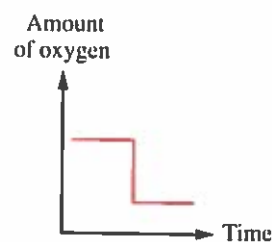
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

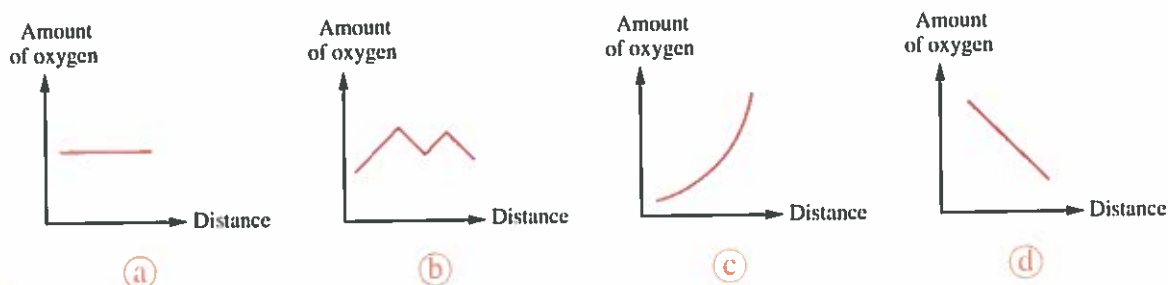
- 43 The photosynthesis process takes place through two successive stages of biochemical reactions, which of the following belongs to the second stage ?

- (a) The storage of light energy. (b)  $\text{CO}_2$  fixation.  
 (c) Releasing of  $\text{O}_2$  gas.  
 (d) The occurrence of photosynthetic phosphorylation.

- 44 In the following table, which of the following choices summarizes the photosynthesis process ?

	The conversion of energy	Photosynthesis process product	The storage form
(a)	From chemical to light	Glucose	Starch
(b)	From chemical to light	Starch	Glucose
(c)	From light to chemical	Glucose	Starch
(d)	From light to chemical	Starch	Glucose

- 45 Which of the following graphs expresses the amount of the resulted oxygen, if the source of light is moved gradually and slowly away from the green plant within 24 hours of continuous exposure ?



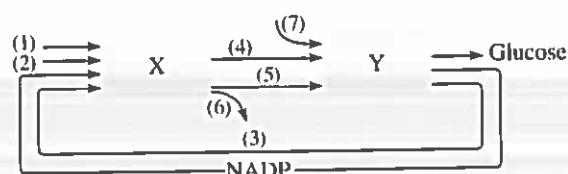
- 46 What is the source of glucose that is present in the cell sap of the root hair ?

- (a) Absorbed from the soil by active transport.  
 (b) Resulted from the catabolism.  
 (c) Resulted from the photosynthesis process.  
 (d) Resulted from the catabolism and photosynthesis processes.

- 47 From your study to the following diagram :

(1) To which does no. (1) refer ?

- (a) ATP (b)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$   
 (c)  $\text{O}_2$  (d)  $\text{CO}_2$



(2) To which does no. (3) refer ?

- (a)  $\text{NADPH}_2$  (b) ADP (c)  $\text{O}_2$  (d) Electrons.

(3) Which of the following expresses no. (4) ?

- (a)  $\text{NADPH}_2$  (b) ADP (c)  $\text{CO}_2$  (d) Electrons.

(4) To which does each of (X) and (Y) refer respectively ?

- (a) Grana / Stroma (b) Stroma / Grana  
(c) Cytoplasm / Grana (d) Stroma / Cytoplasm

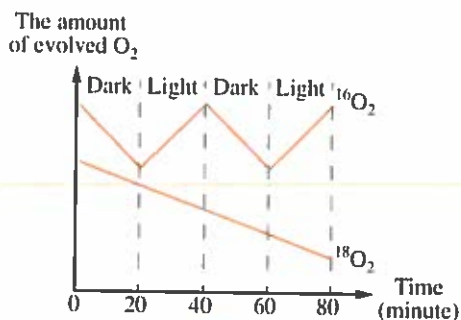
48 \* What is the place of the occurrence of the reduction reactions inside the chloroplast ?

- (a) Grana. (b) Stroma.  
(c) Double membrane. (d) Grana and stroma together.

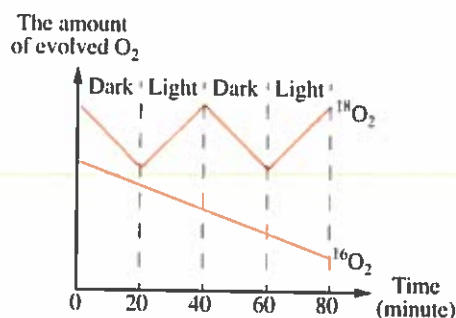
49 \* Which of the following statements is correct about light and dark reactions ?

- (a) The occurrence of light reactions depends on the occurrence of dark reactions.  
(b) The occurrence of dark reactions depends on the occurrence of light reactions.  
(c) The occurrence of each of them depends on the other at the same time.  
(d) The occurrence of each of them doesn't depend on the other.

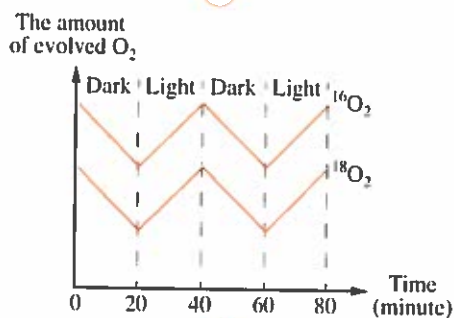
50 \* A type of algae was placed in a medium containing mineral salts and water  $\text{H}_2^{16}\text{O}$  in which oxygen  $^{18}\text{O}_2$  is dissolved and a source of carbon dioxide  $\text{C}^{18}\text{O}_2$ , which of the following graphs represents the change in the two oxygen isotopes concentration when exposed to dark and light periods ?



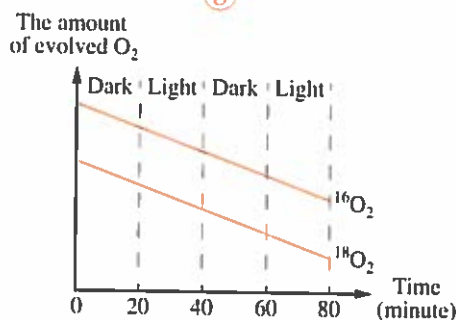
(a)



(b)

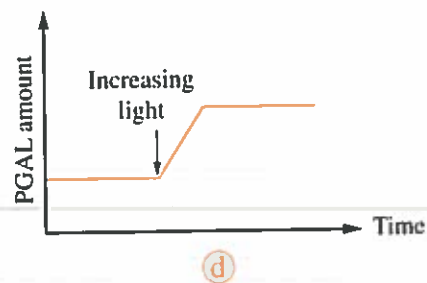
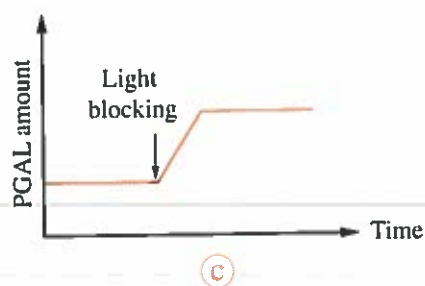
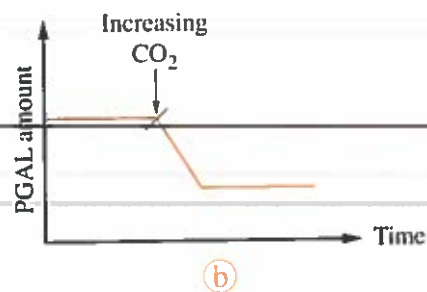
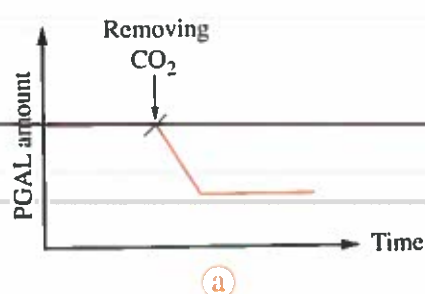


(c)

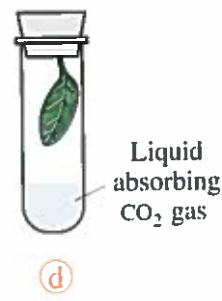
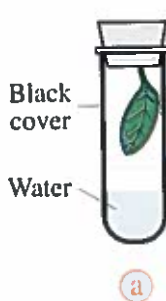


(d)

- 51 \* Which of the following graphs represents the change that occurs in the amount of one of the affecting factors on the produced substances from the reactions that occur in the stroma ?



- 52 \* During the detection of the photosynthesis process, four plant leaves were exposed to the Sun and after 24 hours the starch was detected. Which of the following test tubes is used to prove that the chlorophyll is essential for the photosynthesis process ?



- 53 \* Which of the following explains the reason for using the carbon isotope instead of using the oxygen isotope in Calvin's experiment ?

- (a) The source of the evolved oxygen is water.
- (b) The raw materials that form the phosphoglyceraldehyde found in  $\text{CO}_2$  only.
- (c) Oxygen enters in the structure of all the photosynthesis products.
- (d) The carbon isotope is easily traced than that of oxygen.



## Second

## Miscellaneous Questions

1 **Give reason for :** the stem of *Corchorus olitorius* "mulukhiyah" plant has the ability to make photosynthesis process.

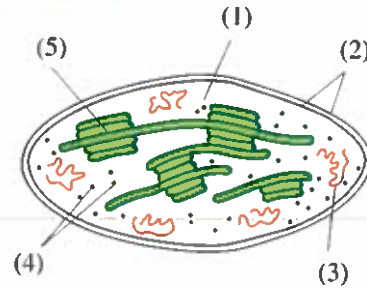
2 **In the opposite figure :**

(a) **Determine** the types of the main pigments that are present in structure no. (5).

(b) **Explain how** the processes happening in the structure no. (1) are integrated with that occurred in the structure no. (5).

(c) **Mention the number and name of the structure that :**

1. Is present also in the cell nucleus.
2. Consists of colourless protein substance.
3. May disappear under certain conditions.



3 **What happens in case of :** the absence of grana from the chloroplasts in a plant ?

4 **What is the relation between :** the molecular structure of chlorophyll and the efficiency of photosynthesis process ?

5 **What happens in case of :** the absence of phloem tissue from the plant leaf ?

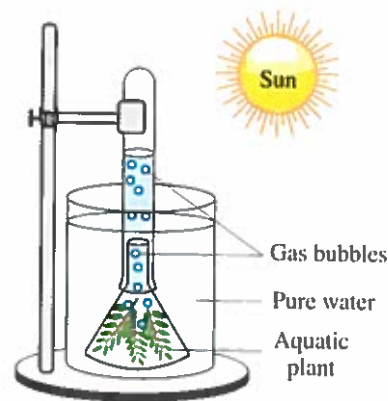
6 "Oxygen is always resulted from the photosynthesis process in the autotrophic organisms". **How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

7 **The opposite figure shows an experiment to prove that the green plant performs photosynthesis process :**

(a) **Mention** the mistake(s) in the opposite experiment, **with explanation.**

(b) **After correcting the mistake(s), predict what happens in case of :**

1. Replacing the aquatic plant with a type of aquatic bacteria. **Explain your answer.**
2. Exposing the opposite experiment to an electric lamp instead of sunlight.



- 8 "All types of bacteria are autotrophic organisms".

**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

- 9 "Scientists used some isotopes in illustrating the mechanism of photosynthesis process".

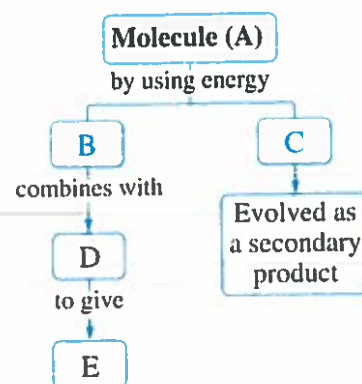
**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

- 10 "The dark reactions in plant don't need co-factors".

**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

- 11 **What happens in case of :** exposing sulphur bacteria to a decrease in hydrogen sulphide ?

- 12 **The opposite diagram illustrates a part of important reactions that are occurred inside the green plant, in the light of this, answer the following :**



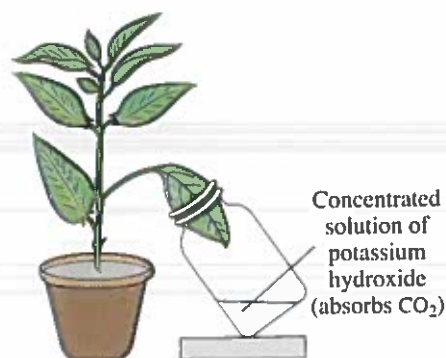
- (a) In which part of the plant, the illustrated reactions in the diagram occurred ?
- (b) What happens to (B), when (D) is absent ? And what is the effect of that on the green plant ?
- (c) Predict what happens if (E) is not formed.

- 13 **Explain :** the chlorophyll molecules work as energy convertor devices.

- 14 "ATP molecules are formed directly from the light energy".

**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

- 15 **In the opposite figure,** a leafy plant was exposed to sunlight with putting a part of one of its leaves inside a glass jar that contains a concentrated solution of potassium hydroxide, and the other part was exposed to light, and after several hours, the formation of starch was detected by using iodine solution on the two parts of the leaf. **What do you expect to happen ? Explain your answer.**



- 16 **What happens in case of :** decreasing the temperature of a plant below its suitable value (according to photosynthesis process) ?

**17 Explain :** the ability of plants to fix carbon dioxide ( $\text{CO}_2$ ) in the dark, after being exposed to light.

**18** "The high-energy organic compounds are formed in grana".

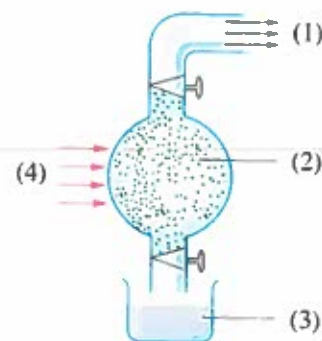
**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

**19 The opposite figure illustrates an experiment that shows the nature of dark reactions in an alga :**

(a) **Determine** the mistake in the opposite experiment.

**With explanation.**

(b) **What happens in case of** the absence of factor no. (4) ?



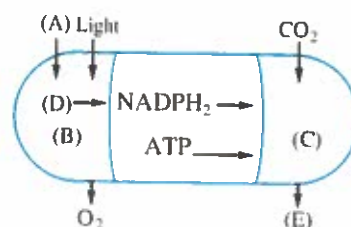
**20 The opposite diagram illustrates a part of the plant where the photosynthesis process occurs :**

(a) **Where** do the represented reactions in the opposite diagram occur ?

(b) **Determine** the type of reaction that occurs in each of (B) and (C).

(c) **What** is the limiting factor for the rate of reactions in each of (B) and (C) ?

(d) **Deduce** the names of (A), (D) and (E) substances.



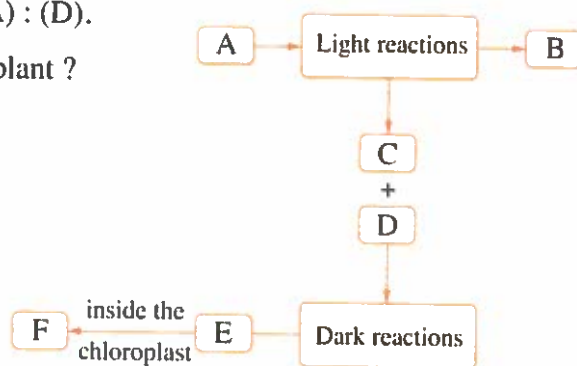
**21 Explain :** the organic compounds that are formed from the products of photosynthesis process are varied.

**22 The following diagram illustrates some steps of photosynthesis in plant :**

(a) **Deduce** the names of substances from (A) : (D).

(b) **How** is substance (E) formed inside the plant ?

(c) **Suggest** the site of (F) inside the plant leaf. **Explain your answer.**



## New Types of questions?

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

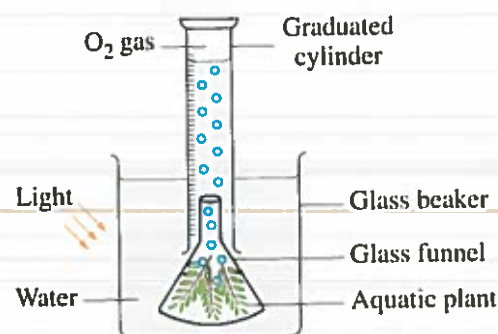
**Choose two correct answers for the following questions :**

- 1 The photosynthesis process is carried out in two successive stages of biochemical reactions, which of the following belongs to the first stage ?

- ☐ a Carbon dioxide gas fixation.      ☐ b  $\text{NADPH}_2$  compound oxidation.  
☐ c High energetic bonds formation.      ☐ d ADP compounds formation.  
☐ e Chlorophyll molecules activation.

- 2 The opposite figure represents a scientific experiment for measuring the production rate of oxygen gas during the photosynthesis process, which of the following affects the amount of oxygen gas which is collected in the graduated cylinder ?

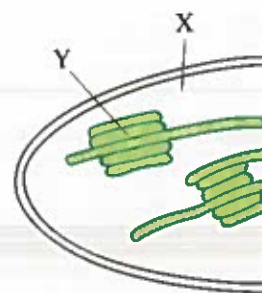
- ☐ a The height of water in the graduated cylinder.  
☐ b The height of water in the glass beaker.  
☐ c The volume of aquatic plant.  
☐ d The time of exposing to light.      ☐ e The volume of glass beaker.



**Choose from the list what suits the spaces :**

- 3 From the opposite figure which illustrates a part of green plastid :

- .....(1)..... takes place in the part (X).
- .....(2)..... takes place in the part (Y).



Splitting of a water molecule
Formation of tri-carbon compound
Oxidation of hexa-carbon compound
Oxidation of PGAL compound
Breaking of ADP molecules





Chapter

1

## Lesson Three

# Heterotrophic Nutrition

## Digestion

- The heterotrophic living organism (consumer) obtains its food in the form of ready-made organic materials which are usually large and complex molecules, therefore they can't diffuse through the cell membranes of the living organism. So, the living organism must digest these molecules to benefit from them.



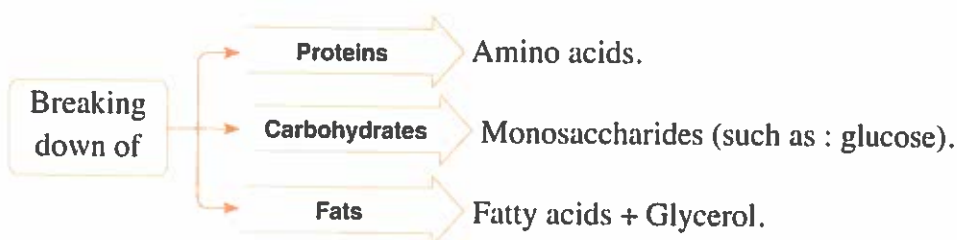
## Digestion

It is the process of converting the large food molecules (polymers) into smaller ones (monomers) by means of hydrolysis, and this process is catalyzed by enzymes.

### The importance of digestion :

The breaking down of the large and complex-structured food substances into simpler structured and smaller-sized molecules which are easily absorbed by the cells (by diffusion or active transport), where the cells use them as a source of energy or to build new tissues and continue the growth.

### Examples :



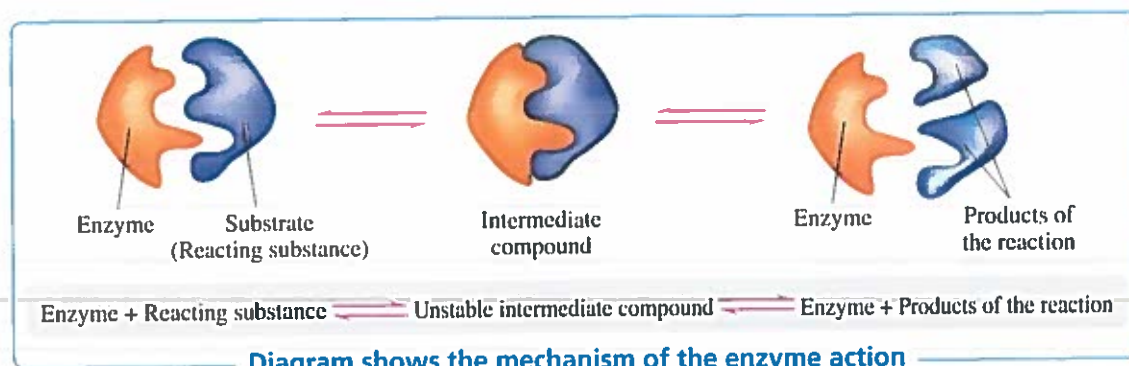
## Enzymes

## Enzyme

It is a protein substance which has the properties of catalysts, as it has the ability to activate a particular chemical reaction.

## Mechanism of the enzyme action

- Each enzyme activates a particular chemical reaction (specific activation), and this reaction depends on :
  - The structure of the reacting molecules (reactants or substrates).
  - The nature (shape) of enzyme.
- After the reaction is completed, the resulting molecules break away from the enzyme, leaving it in the same form as it was before the reaction.



## Characteristics of enzymes

- They are specific :** as each enzyme can accelerate **only one type** of chemical reactions, depending on the structure of the reactant molecule and the nature (shape) of enzyme.
- Enzymes don't affect the products of the reaction :** as they work as catalysts which only accelerate the rate of the reaction, until it reaches the **equilibrium state**.

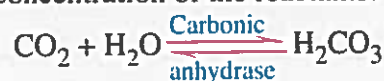
- Some enzymes have a reversible effect :**

As the enzyme that catalyzes the decomposition of a complex molecule into two simpler ones, can also recombine these two small molecules again to give rise to the same complex molecule once more.

- The degree of the enzyme's activity depends on :**
  - The temperature.
  - The pH value of medium.

## Do you know...?

- From the enzymes that have a reversible effect is carbonic anhydrase enzyme which catalyzes the following reaction in both directions, depending on the concentration of the reactants.



## Remember that

### The pH value :

Is the measurement that determines the concentration of hydrogen ions ( $\text{H}^+$ ) in the solution to determine whether it is acidic ( $\text{pH} < 7$ ) or basic ( $\text{pH} > 7$ ) or neutral ( $\text{pH} = 7$ ).

- ⑤ Some enzymes are secreted in an inactive state and they are activated by specific substances :

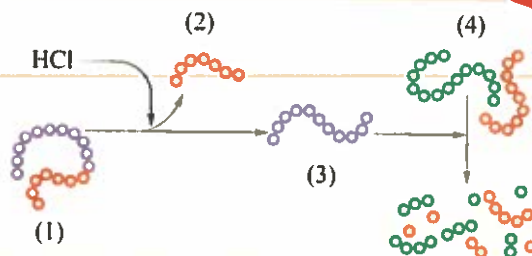
• **Example :** pepsin enzyme is secreted by the stomach as an inactive **pepsinogen** which is changed into the active **pepsin** in the presence of hydrochloric acid (HCl) in the stomach.



### 1 Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

The opposite figure shows protein substances in one of the enzymatic reactions in the digestive system, which of them represent enzymes ?

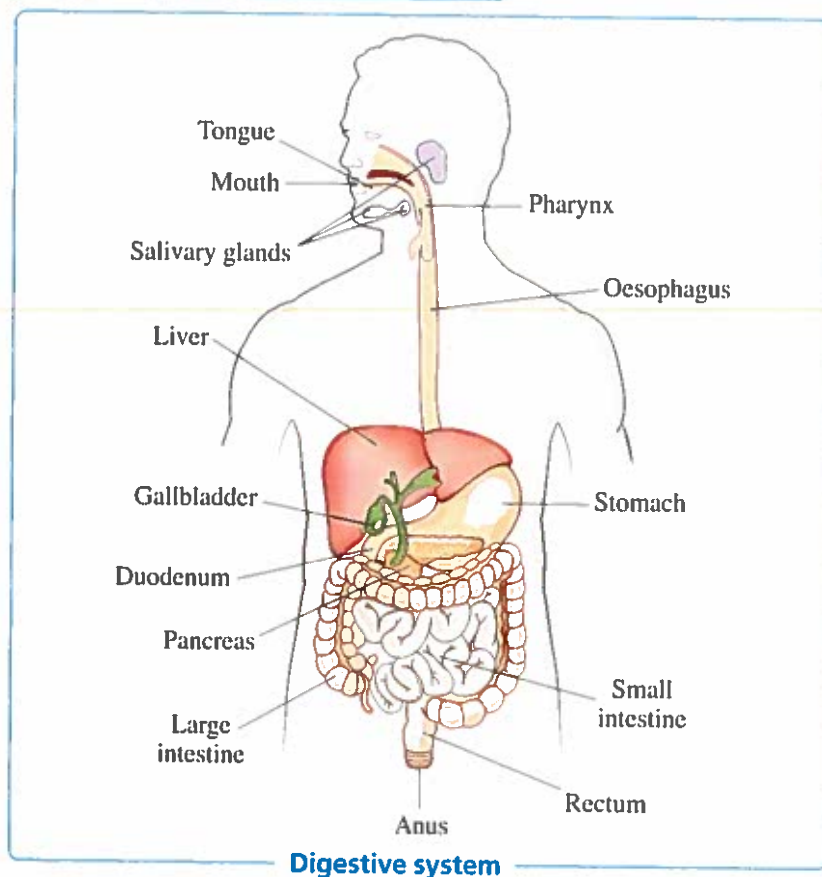


Answered

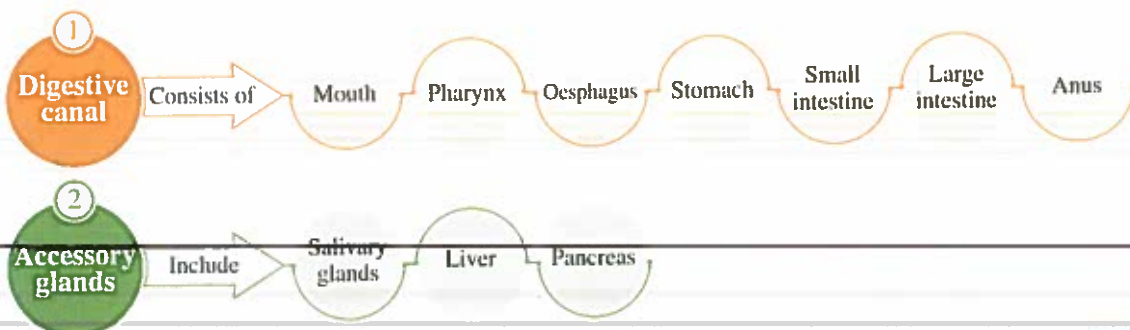
- (a) (1) and (2).      (b) (1) and (3).      (c) (2) and (3).      (d) (3) and (4).

## Digestion in man

### Structure of the digestive system in man



- The digestive system in man consists of :



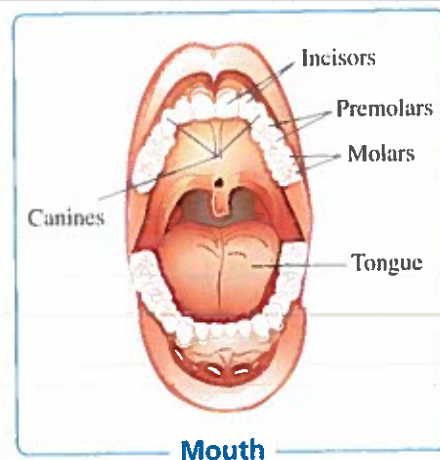
## Stages of digestion

### 1 Buccal digestion



#### Mouth

- The digestive canal starts with the mouth opening which contains :



**Mouth**

#### ① Teeth : that are differentiated into :

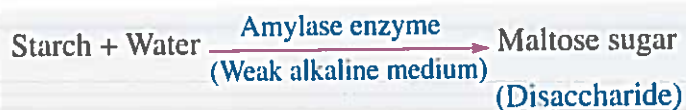
- **Incisors** : lie at the front of the jaw for cutting food.
- **Canines** : follow the incisors to tear food.
- **Premolars and molars** : follow the canines (at the back) for crushing and grinding food.

#### ② Tongue :

- Organ of taste.
- Helps in manipulating food and mixing it with saliva to be chewed by the teeth.

#### ③ Salivary glands :

- There are three pairs of salivary glands which open into the mouth cavity through ducts to secrete the saliva that contains :
  - Mucus that softens food and facilitates its swallowing.
  - Amylase enzyme "**Ptyalin**" which works in a weak alkaline medium of (pH = 7.4) and catalyzes the hydrolysis of starch into disaccharide maltose (malt sugar).



## Key Point

Chewing of food well before the swallowing process leads to its mixing with saliva which increases the surface area of the food substance that is exposed to enzymes to facilitate its digestion.



## Pharynx

- It is a cavity at the back of mouth which leads to two tubes :
  - The first is **oesophagus**.
  - The second is **trachea** (which is considered a part of the respiratory system).

## Swallowing process

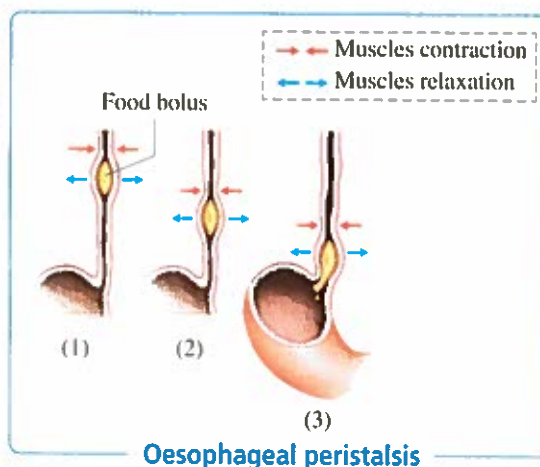
It is an organized reflex action, where during this process, the top of trachea and larynx are elevated together in front of the epiglottis to close over the glottis (the entrance to air passage). So, food is pushed from mouth to the oesophagus.

### Do you know...?

- Reflex action is an involuntary fast response for a certain sensory stimulus that is occurred without the intervention of will or consciousness.

## Oesophagus

- It follows the pharynx, where it passes through the neck and into the chest cavity, and extends parallel to the vertebral column with 25 cm long.
- It is lined with glands to secrete mucus.
- It transfers food to the stomach by a series of rhythmical muscular contractions and relaxations called "**Peristalsis**" which continues along the alimentary canal to churn and mix food with the digestive juices.



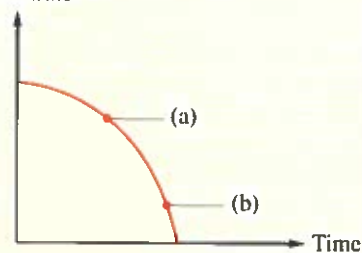
Oesophageal peristalsis

## 2 Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

- The opposite graph illustrates the digestion of starch by the action of amylase enzyme. Which of the following statements is correct ?
  - The concentration of disaccharides at point (a) is more than that at point (b).
  - The concentration of disaccharides at point (b) is more than that at point (a).
  - The concentration of starch at point (a) is less than that at point (b).
  - The concentration of starch at point (b) is equal to its concentration at point (a).
- The swallowing process is considered a(an) .....
  - voluntary process only.
  - involuntary process only.
  - voluntary, then involuntary process.
  - involuntary, then voluntary process.

The concentration of substrate



Answered

**3** Which of the following proves the specificity of amylase enzyme in its work ?

- (a) Its digestion to the substances found in rice and indigestion to that found in bread or potatoes.
- (b) Its digestion to the substances found in potatoes and indigestion to that found in bread or rice.
- (c) Its digestion to the substances found in bread and indigestion to that found in rice or potatoes.
- (d) Its digestion to the substances found in rice, bread and potatoes by the same mechanism.

## 2 Gastric digestion (Digestion in stomach)

### Stomach



- **It is a dilated muscular sac :**

- It starts with a constricted circular muscle which is **the cardiac sphincter** that separates the stomach from the oesophagus.
- It ends with a muscular valve of circular smooth muscle which is **the pyloric sphincter** that separates the stomach from the small intestine.

- **It secretes the gastric juice that is colourless acidic liquid which consists of :**

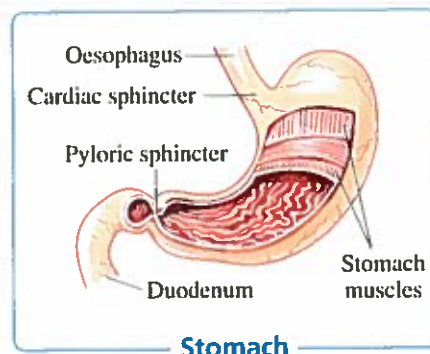
① **Water** : with percentage 90%

② **Hydrochloric acid (HCl)** :

It creates an **acidic** medium (**pH = 1.5 : 2.5**) inside the stomach, **which leads to :**

- Stopping the action of ptyalin enzyme.
- Killing the harmful bacteria that may enter with food.

③ **Pepsin enzyme** : is secreted in an inactive form called "**pepsinogen**" and it is activated by the action of HCl acid to digest proteins.



### • Proteins digestion :

The active pepsin enzyme catalyzes the hydrolysis of protein by breaking certain peptide bonds in the long chains of protein to convert them into smaller fragments (chains) of polypeptides.



#### Notes

- ① Proteins are the only food substances which are affected by the gastric juice.
- ② The gastric juice doesn't affect the cells which line the stomach, **this is due to :**
  - The presence of **pepsinogen** in an inactive form which is activated only after being secreted from the cells of stomach, and when it is mixed with HCl acid in the cavity of stomach.
  - The presence of **heavy mucous secretions** of the inner wall of stomach which protect it against the effect of digestive enzymes.

### ③ Test yourself

Answered

Choose the correct answer :

- ① What happens during the passage of food through oesophagus ?
  - (a) The action of ptyalin enzyme stops.
  - (b) The action of ptyalin enzyme continues.
  - (c) The action of pepsin enzyme starts.
  - (d) The action of ptyalin enzyme stops and that of pepsin enzyme starts.
- ② From the most common symptoms of Gastro-oesophageal reflux is the occurrence of an inflammation in the lower part of its lining, which of the following may cause that ?
  - (a) A disturbance in the muscle that controls the cardiac sphincter.
  - (b) A disturbance in the muscle that controls the pyloric sphincter.
  - (c) A disturbance in the two muscles.
  - (d) A disturbance in the secretion of HCl acid in stomach.
- ③ *H. pylori* bacteria lead to the occurrence of inflammations in the stomach wall, and to survive in the stomach of the infected human, it secretes an enzyme that works on .....
  - (a) stopping the action of ptyalin enzyme.
  - (b) neutralizing the pH value.
  - (c) digesting the proteins which enter the stomach.
  - (d) activating pepsinogen.

### 3 Intestinal digestion



#### Small intestine

- It follows the stomach and consists of duodenum and ileum.
- It is about 8 meters long.
- It is about 3.5 cm in diameter at its beginning to reach 1.25 cm at its end.
- It folds over itself, the coils and loops of small intestine are connected together by the **mesentery** membrane.

#### Integration with Physics



Light can be transferred to internal components inside the human's body as the stomach and duodenum for examining and exploration or for surgical operation through endoscopes which depend on the total reflection of light during its work.



#### Key Point

The presence of the small intestine is restricted on a small area from the abdominal cavity, due to the presence of many folds in it.

- **The digestive juices inside the small intestine :** a group of juices are secreted and work on food digestion, which are as follows :

#### A Bile juice

- It is secreted from the liver on food during its passage in the duodenum, and it is devoid of the digestive enzymes.
- It converts the fats into emulsified fats, (i.e. dividing the large masses of fats into small fat globules) to facilitate and accelerate the enzymatic action on fats that don't dissolve in water.



#### Key Point

The bile juice is stored in the gallbladder till secreted in the duodenum.

Fats  $\xrightarrow{\text{Bile juice}}$  Emulsified fats

#### Integration with Chemistry



The breaking down of substrate into small parts causes the increase in the substrate surface area exposed to the reaction which consequently accelerate its rate.



## B Pancreatic juice

- It is secreted from the pancreas on food in the duodenum.
- Pancreatic juice contains :

### ① Sodium bicarbonate :

It neutralizes HCl acid and makes the medium alkaline (pH = 8).

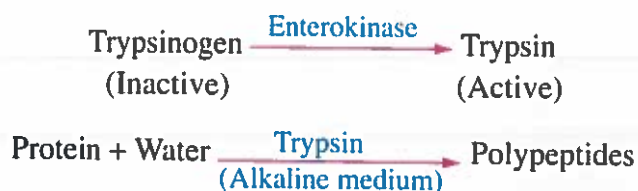
### ② Pancreatic amylase enzyme :

It catalyzes the hydrolysis of glycogen and starch into disaccharide (maltose).



### ③ Trypsinogen enzyme :

It is inactive, but it changes into the active form which is "**trypsin**" in the duodenum by the action of enterokinase enzyme that is secreted by the inner wall of the small intestine, where trypsin enzyme catalyzes the hydrolysis of protein into polypeptides.



## Key Points

- The pancreatic juice contains inactive trypsinogen enzyme as it doesn't lead to the lysis of the pancreatic tissues which are formed of protein.
- Enterokinase enzyme plays an indirect role in the digestion proteins.

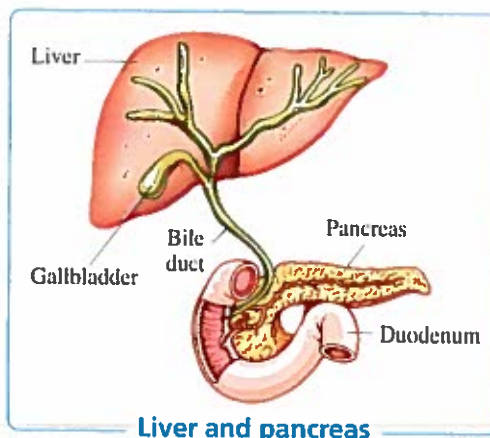
### ④ Lipase enzyme :

It catalyzes the hydrolysis of the emulsified fats into fatty acids and glycerol.



## C Intestinal juice

- It is secreted by special cells in the wall of the small intestine and contains a mixture of enzymes that complete the action of the previous enzymes and end the digestion of all food constituents, **which are as follows :**



**① Peptidases enzymes :**

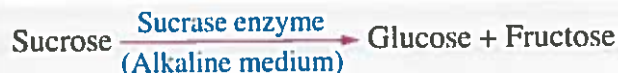
They are several types, where each one of them is specialized in breaking the peptide bonds that are present between certain types of amino acids in the polypeptide chain to give various amino acids at the end.

**② A group of enzymes which hydrolyze the disaccharides into monosaccharides, which are, as follows :**

- **Maltase enzyme :** hydrolyzes maltose (malt sugar) into two molecules of glucose (grape sugar).



- **Sucrase enzyme :** hydrolyzes sucrose (cane sugar) into glucose and fructose (fruit sugar).



- **Lactase enzyme :** hydrolyzes lactose (milk sugar) into glucose and galactose.

**③ Enterokinase enzyme :**

It is not from the digestive enzymes, but it acts only as a co-enzyme to activate the trypsinogen enzyme.

**Key Points**

- The enzyme which hydrolyzes the disaccharides into identical monosaccharides is maltase enzyme.
- The digestion of disaccharides as sucrose and lactose sugars start and end in the small intestine.
- Sugars are found in blood in a monosaccharide form.

**4 Test yourself****Answered**

Choose the correct answer :

- 1** As a result of an injury in the gallbladder of a person, it had been removed surgically, which of the following processes can be affected by this ?
- (a) The removal of amino groups of proteins.
  - (b) The digestion of carbohydrates.
  - (c) The breaking down of peptide bonds of proteins.
  - (d) The digestion of fats.

**2** A person ate a type of food and it was not affected by the digestive enzymes, until it reached the duodenum, what do you expect this type of food to be ?

- (a) Plant protein. (b) Animal protein.  
(c) Carbohydrates. (d) Fats.

**3** What is the enzyme that is secreted from the small intestine and completes the action of another enzyme secreted from the stomach ?

- (a) Lipase. (b) Pancreatic amylase.  
(c) Trypsin. (d) Peptidase.

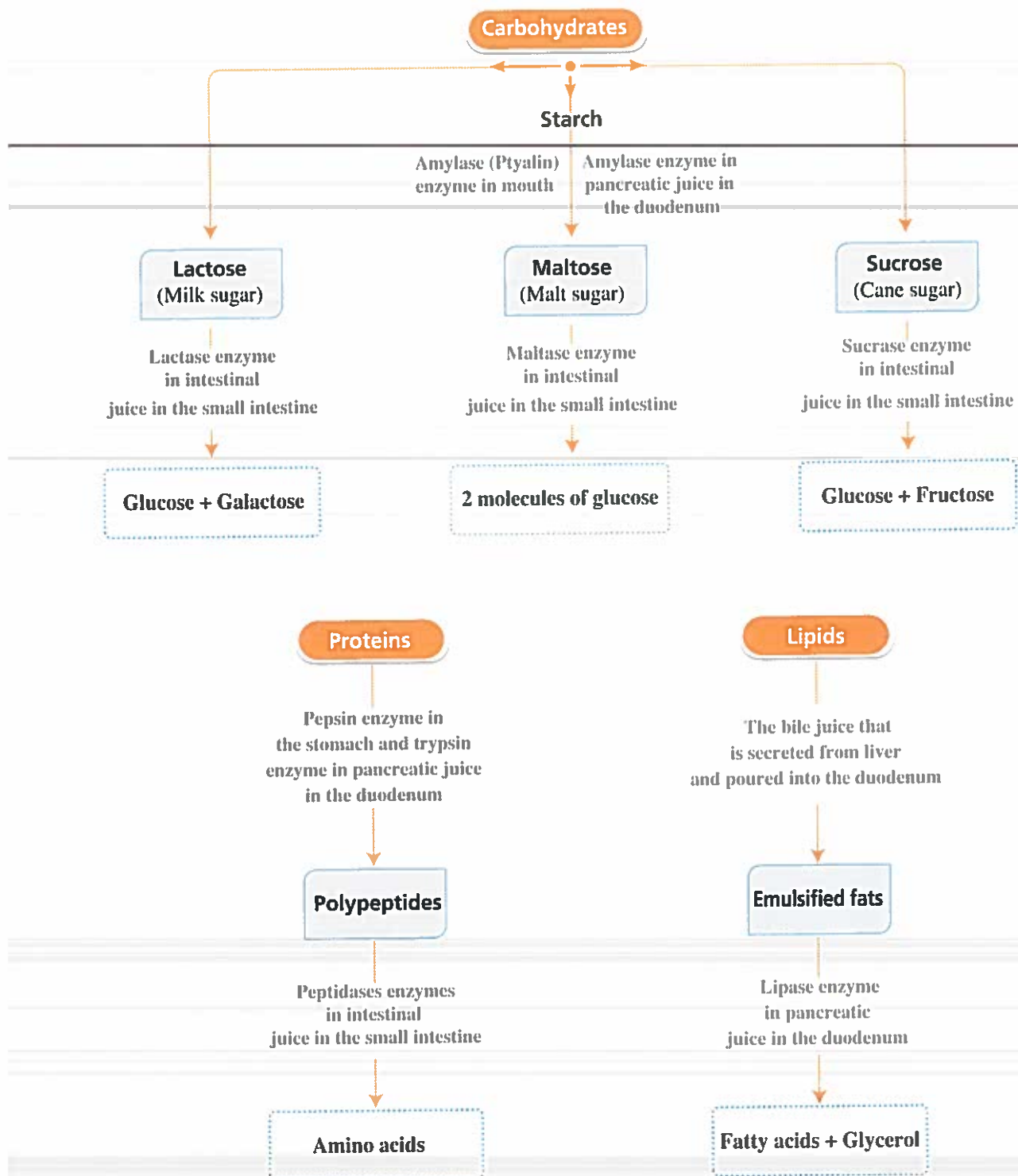
**4** Which of the following enzymes produces symmetrical and simpler molecules through its action ?

- (a) Sucrase. (b) Lactase.  
(c) Lipase. (d) Amylase.

© A summary for the digestive juices that are secreted on food in the alimentary canal :

The juice	The secretory organ	Site of action	Contents
<b>Saliva :</b>	Salivary glands.	Mouth	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mucus.</li> <li>• Amylase (Ptyalin) enzyme.</li> </ul>
<b>Gastric juice :</b>	Inner stomach wall.	Stomach cavity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water.</li> <li>• HCl acid.</li> <li>• Pepsinogen enzyme.</li> </ul>
<b>Bile :</b>	Liver	Duodenum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contains bile that is devoid of digestive enzymes.</li> </ul>
<b>Pancreatic juice :</b>	Pancreas	Duodenum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sodium bicarbonate.</li> <li>• Pancreatic amylase enzyme.</li> <li>• Trypsinogen enzyme.</li> <li>• Lipase enzyme.</li> </ul>
<b>Intestinal juice :</b>	Specialized cells in the small intestine wall.	Ileum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Peptidases enzymes.</li> <li>• Maltase enzyme.</li> <li>• Sucrase enzyme.</li> <li>• Lactase enzyme.</li> <li>• Enterokinase enzyme.</li> </ul>

© A summary for the stages of carbohydrates, proteins and lipids digestion along the alimentary canal :





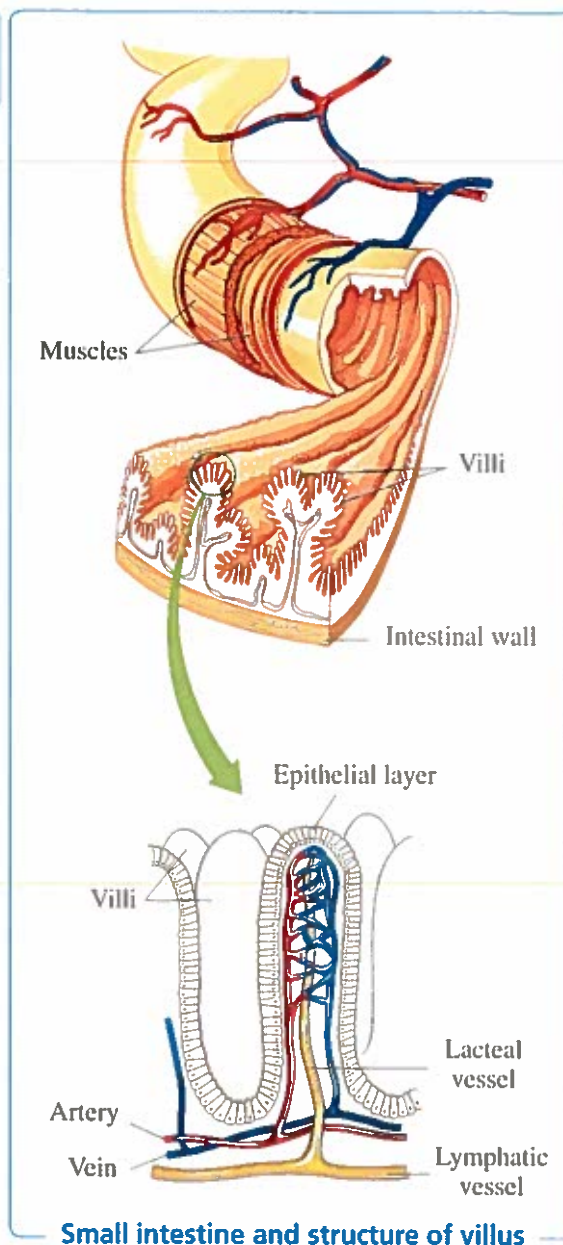
## Absorption of digested food

### Absorption

It is the transfer of the digested food substances to blood or lymph through the cells lining ileum (villi) in the small intestine.

### Villi

- By studying the structure of the small intestine wall :
  - It was noticed that the inner epithelial lining of ileum is folded to form "villi".
  - The inner surface area of small intestine reaches about  $10 \text{ m}^2$ , i.e. about 5 times the surface area of the human body, due to the presence of villi to increase the surface area of the small intestine that is subjected to the absorption of digested food.
- **Structure of villus :**
  - **Epithelial layer :**  
Encloses a lacteal (lymphatic) vessel that is surrounded by a network of venous and arterial blood capillaries.
  - **Micro-villi :**  
They are very tiny projections from the epithelial layer of the villus that are observed by the electron microscope, and they also increase the surface area of absorption.



### Mechanism of absorption of the digested food by the villi

- The products of digestion are transferred to the blood and lymph by the **active transport and membranous diffusion**.
- There are two routes through which the absorbed food substances pass in each villus, which are :

#### ① Blood route :

- It starts with the blood capillaries inside each villus.
- Through which water, mineral salts, monosaccharides, amino acids and water soluble vitamins pass.
- These substances are poured into the hepatic portal vein, then to liver and from it to the hepatic vein to be emptied into the inferior vena cava, then to the heart.

#### ② Lymphatic route :

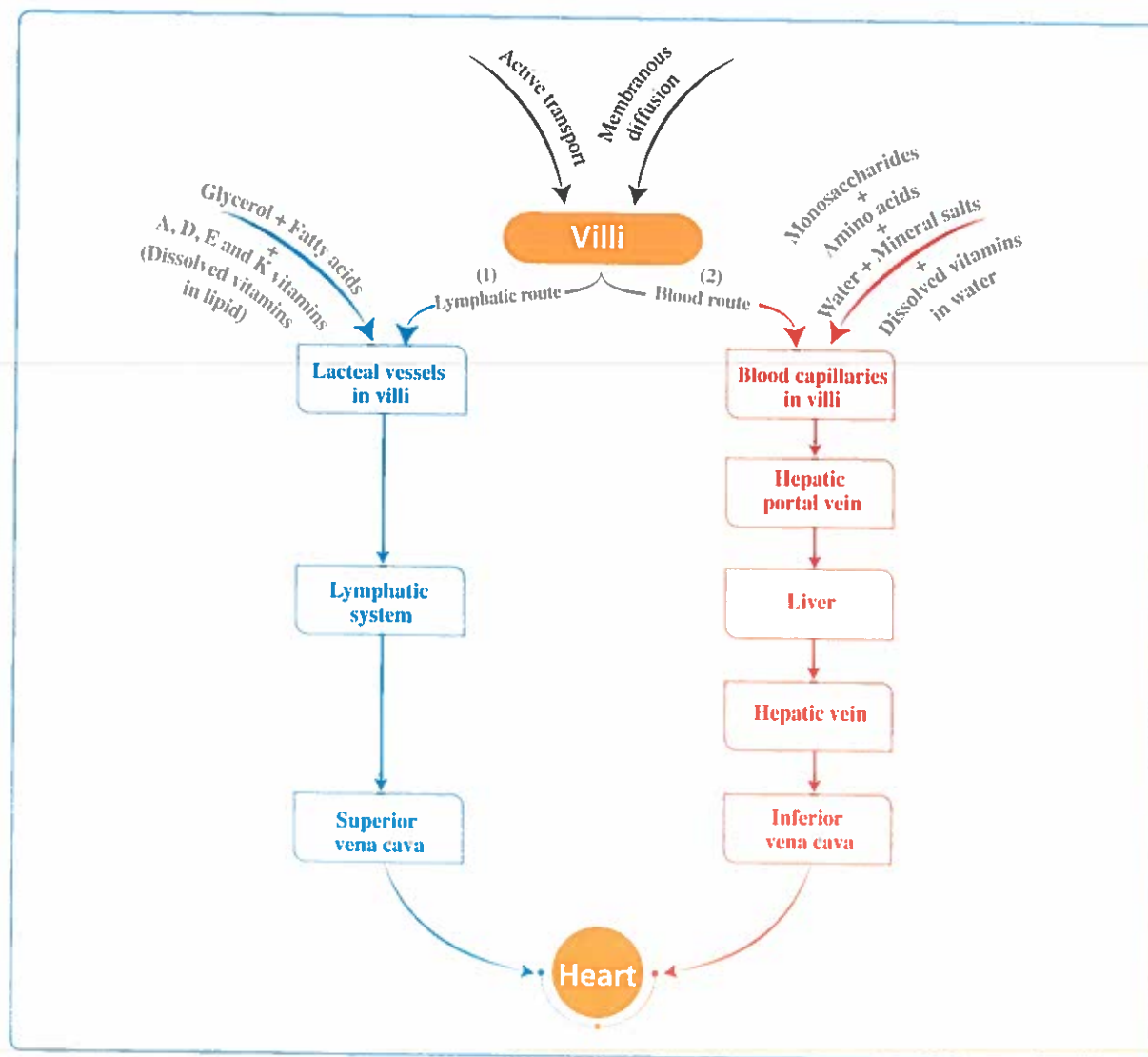
- Through which fatty acids, glycerol and fat soluble vitamins (A, D, E and K) pass.
- Some of these fatty acids and glycerol may **recombine** inside the epithelial cells of villi to form fats again.
- The epithelial cells absorb some of the finely emulsified fats that are not hydrolyzed by enzymes **directly** by engulfment.
- All fats pass into the lacteal vessels inside the villi, then to the lymphatic system which carries them slowly and empties them into the superior vena cava, then to the heart.



### Key Points

- The vitamins that are soluble in water are vitamins (B) complex which are ( $B_1$ ,  $B_2$  and  $B_{12}$ ) and vitamin (C) which is known as ascorbic acid.
- Some of the digestion products need energy to force the digestion products to spread into blood or lymph through the villi epithelial cells.
- The inferior vena cava carries completely digested food substances as carbohydrates and proteins, while the superior vena cava carries some of the undigested substances as fats through the lacteal vessels.

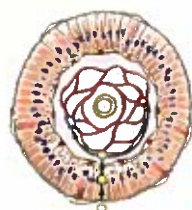
© The following diagram illustrates the routes of the absorbed food substances in villus :



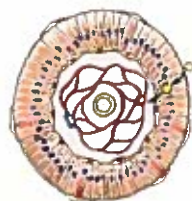
### 5 Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

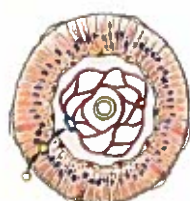
- 1 Which of the following transverse sections from a villus represents the correct way for the absorption of finely emulsified fats ?



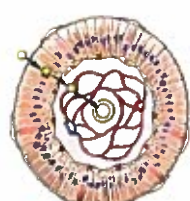
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

Answered

- 2** Which of the following statements is applied on the inner surface of the small intestine ?
- (a) Thin and rich in blood capillaries.
  - (b) Thick and poor in blood capillaries.
  - (c) Rich in villi and poor in blood capillaries.
  - (d) Poor in villi and rich in blood capillaries.
- 3** Which of the following food substances doesn't/don't reach the blood directly ?
- (a) Fatty acids.
  - (b) Amino acids.
  - (c) Water soluble vitamins.
  - (d) Glucose.

## Metabolism

### Metabolism :

It is the process by which the body utilizes the digested food substances that had been absorbed.

- Metabolism includes two opposite processes, which are :

#### 1 Anabolism

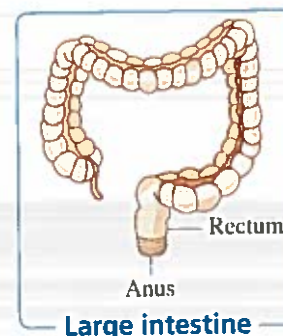
- A process by which the simple and small-sized food particles are **changed into** complex compounds that enter in the structure of the body **where** :
  - **Monosaccharides** are changed into starch that is stored in the form of glycogen in liver and muscles.
  - **The fatty acids and glycerol** are changed into fats and stored mainly beneath the skin.
  - **The amino acids** are changed into different types of proteins in the body.

#### 2 Catabolism

- A process by which the absorbed food substances (especially glucose) are **oxidized** to produce the energy required for performing the vital activities of the body.

### Large intestine and defecation

- The undigested food wastes rush into the large intestine.
- The lining of large intestine contains many convolutions to help in the absorption of water and some salts through it.
- Food wastes become semi-solid and have a bad odour inside the large intestine, due to the presence of some types of bacteria in it.
- The large intestine secretes mucus to facilitate the passage of food wastes to outside.





- Waste remains are expelled in the form of faeces through anus, as a result of the strong muscular contractions of the rectum that accompanied by the relaxation of the two muscles of the anal sphincter which are situated on both sides of anus.



## Key Point

- Number of sphincter muscles that are included in the digestive system inside the human body is four, which are :
  - Ring sphincter muscle (involuntary) that controls the cardiac sphincter.
  - Ring sphincter muscle (involuntary) that controls the pyloric sphincter.
  - Two sphincter muscles (voluntary) on both sides of the anus.

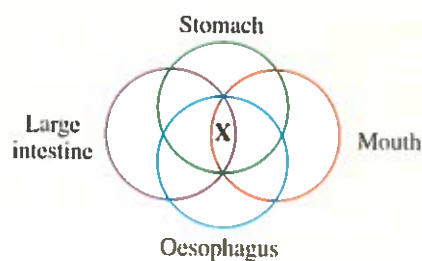


## Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

From the opposite figure, which of the following may represent (X) ?

- Secreting digestive enzymes.
- The presence of mucus.
- Performing peristalsis.
- The symmetry of pH value.



Answered

## Heterotrophic Nutrition

To watch videos of  
how to answer  
questions use the App



Interactive test

The questions signed by  are answered in detail.

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

## First

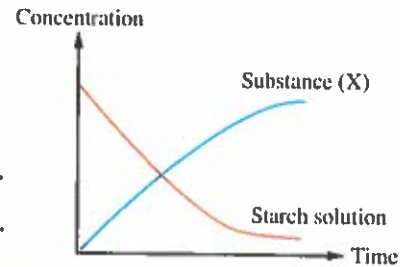
## Multiple Choice Questions

## Mechanism of the enzyme action and buccal digestion

- 1 The digestion process of food aims to its change into substances which can be .....  
 (a) swallowed. (b) excreted. (c) defecated. (d) absorbed.
- 2 From the opposite diagram,  
 what happens to the rate  
 of production of (D), if  
 enzyme no. (1) is absent ? It will .....  
 (a) stop. (b) increase. (c) decrease. (d) not be affected.
- 3 From the two following reactions, what can be deduced regarding the two enzymes (1) and (2) ?
- $$\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{(1)} \text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$$
- $$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3 \xrightarrow{(2)} \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$
- (a) Enzyme (1) and (2) are the same enzyme.  
 (b) Enzyme (2) slows down the production of  $\text{CO}_2$   
 (c) Both enzymes can build-up macro-molecules only.  
 (d) Both enzymes break down the macro-molecules only.
- 4 What is the first compound resulted from the digestion of polysaccharides in human ?  
 (a) Glucose. (b) Maltose. (c) Sucrose. (d) Lactose.
- 5 On eating a piece of bread, which of the following enzymes will start its action firstly ?  
 (a) Trypsin. (b) Peptidase. (c) Amylase. (d) Lipase.
- 6 In which part of the human alimentary canal does the enzyme work efficiently, if  
 the optimum pH for this enzyme = 7.5 ?  
 (a) Mouth. (b) Small intestine.  
 (c) Stomach. (d) Large intestine.

- 7 The opposite graph illustrates the production of substance (X) when the enzyme works on a starch solution. What does substance (X) represent ?

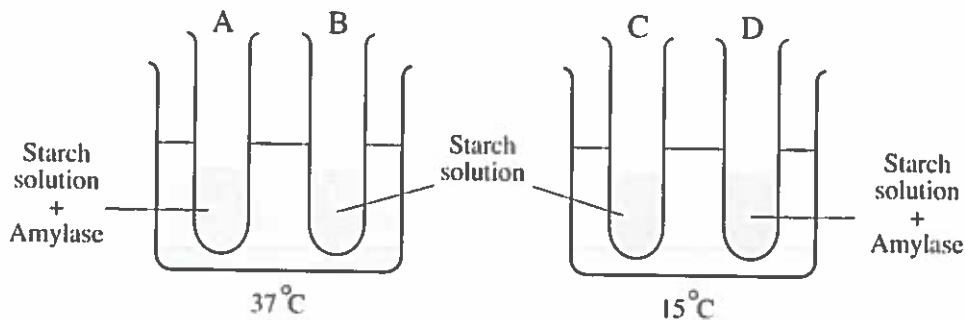
(a) Lactose. (b) Sucrose.  
(c) Glucose. (d) Maltose.



- 8 When having a breakfast meal that consists of eggs, honey and some pastries, what do you expect to be digested firstly in the mouth ?

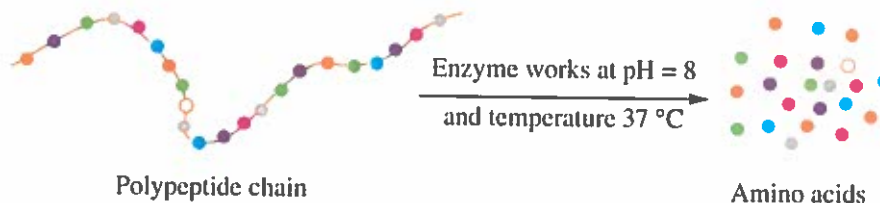
(a) Eggs. (b) Honey.  
(c) Pastries. (d) Honey and pastries together.

- 9 Which tube in the two following figures contains the highest content of maltose after 20 minutes from the beginning of the experiment ?



(a) A (b) B  
(c) C (d) D

- 10 The following figure shows the effect of an enzyme that works in the human digestive canal, which of the following decreases the production rate of amino acids ?

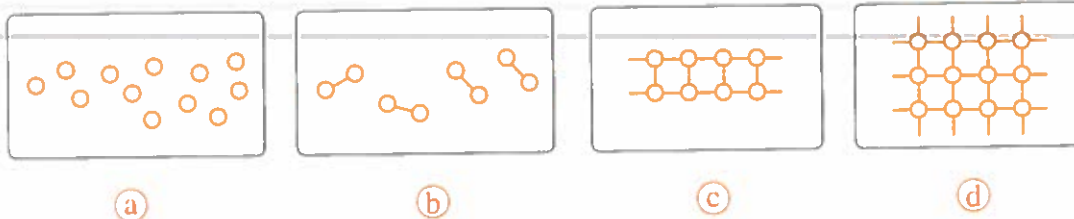


(a) The removal of the produced amino acids when formed.  
(b) Increasing the amount of polypeptide chains.  
(c) The stability of the temperature at 37 °C.  
(d) Decreasing the pH value to 2

- 11 In case you eat all the following food, on which one of them can the body depend to form the required enzymes to complete the vital processes ?

(a) Rocca. (b) Corn.  
(c) Eggs. (d) Orange.

- 12 \* Which of the following figures illustrates a starch molecule, after being digested in the mouth ?



### Gastric and intestinal digestion

- 13 The backflow of the gastric acid to the oesophagus is known as "Gastro-oesophageal reflux" and it occurs due to a defect in the sphincter muscle located between the .....

(a) oesophagus and stomach. (b) stomach and small intestine.  
(c) duodenum and ileum. (d) ileum and large intestine.

- 14 Why does the action of salivary amylase enzyme is stopped in the stomach ?

(a) Due to the decrease in the enzyme amount.  
(b) Due to changing all carbohydrates into maltose sugar.  
(c) Due to the difference in pH  
(d) Due to the difference in temperature.

- 15 Which of the following that its digestion may be affected, if the liver is severely damaged ?

(a) Carbohydrates. (b) Fats.  
(c) Proteins. (d) Disaccharides.

- 16 Which of the following juices where the digestive enzymes are completely absent ?

(a) Pancreatic. (b) Gastric. (c) Bile. (d) Intestinal.

- 17 Where does the digestion of oils used in preparing meals start ?

(a) In mouth. (b) In oesophagus.  
(c) In stomach. (d) In small intestine.



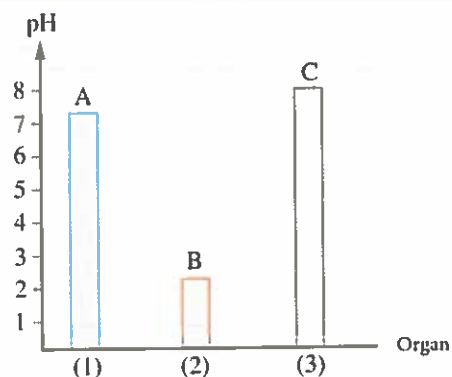
- 18 Which of the following food substances that its digestion starts and ends in the small intestine ?  
 (a) Cheese. (b) A piece of meat. (c) Peanut butter. (d) Rice.
- 19 Which of the following enzymes that bile juice plays an important role in accelerating its activity ?  
 (a) Lipase. (b) Maltase. (c) Amylase. (d) Trypsin.
- 20 Which of the following organs that its infection affects the digestion of each of fats, proteins and carbohydrates together ?  
 (a) Pancreas. (b) Stomach. (c) Large intestine. (d) Liver.
- 21 Which of the following enzymes doesn't digest the same type of food substances ?  
 (a) Maltase. (b) Lipase. (c) Sucrase. (d) Lactase.
- 22 Which of the following enzymes doesn't complete the action of other enzymes or juices by breaking down their products into simpler molecules ?  
 (a) Lipase. (b) Enterokinase. (c) Peptidase. (d) Maltase.
- 23 Which of the following enzymes doesn't produce simpler and symmetrical molecules through its action ?  
 (a) Ptyalin. (b) Maltase. (c) Pancreatic amylase. (d) Lactase.
- 24 Which of the following enzymes have a role in hydrolysis of glycogen completely ?  
 (a) Amylase and lipase. (b) Amylase and sucrase.  
 (c) Amylase and lactase. (d) Amylase and maltase.
- 25 Which of the following doesn't contain digestive enzymes for carbohydrates ?  
 (a) Saliva. (b) Pancreatic juice.  
 (c) Gastric juice. (d) Intestinal juice.
- 26 Which of the following isn't correct about trypsin and pepsin enzymes ?  
 (a) Trypsin enzyme works in an alkaline medium, while pepsin enzyme works in an acidic medium.  
 (b) Trypsin and pepsin enzymes act on the same substrate.  
 (c) Trypsin enzyme works in the small intestine, while pepsin enzyme works in the stomach.  
 (d) Trypsin enzyme is secreted in an active form, while pepsin enzyme is secreted in an inactive form.

- 27 Where does the protein digestion start and end respectively ?  
 (a) Mouth / stomach. (b) Stomach / ileum.  
 (c) Oesophagus / stomach. (d) Duodenum / ileum.
- 28 Which of the following contains glands that secrete mucus not enzymes ?  
 (a) Pancreas. (b) Stomach.  
 (c) Oesophagus. (d) Small intestine.
- 29 Which of the following food elements aren't affected by the action of the digestive enzymes ?  
 (a) Proteins and minerals. (b) Fats and vitamins.  
 (c) Fats and proteins. (d) Minerals and vitamins.
- 30 Which of the following has a role in the digestion process without secreting digestive enzymes ?  
 (a) Liver. (b) Pancreas.  
 (c) Small intestine. (d) Stomach.

31 Study the opposite graph, then answer :

- (1) If you know that enzyme (C) has an indirect role in the digestion process and the action of enzyme (A) stops in organ no. (2), therefore what are the organs (1), (2) and (3) respectively ?

- (a) Stomach / small intestine / mouth.  
 (b) Mouth / stomach / pancreas.  
 (c) Mouth / stomach / small intestine.  
 (d) Small intestine / stomach / mouth.

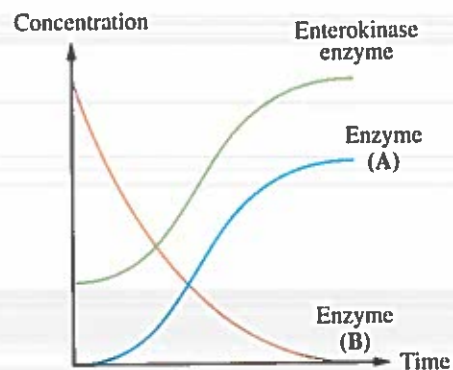


- (2) Which of the following activates enzyme (B) ?

- (a) HCl acid. (b) Sodium bicarbonate.  
 (c) Enterokinase enzyme. (d) Ptyalin enzyme.

32 The opposite graph shows the relation among 3 enzymes that share in digesting a food substance, what is/are the final product(s) of digesting the food substance which is/are affected by enzyme (A) ?

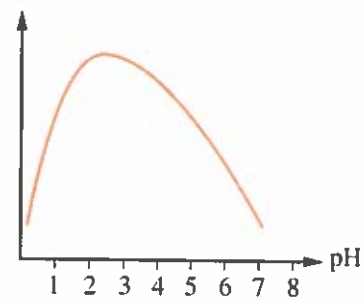
- (a) Disaccharide.  
 (b) Amino acids.  
 (c) Polypeptides.  
 (d) Fatty acids.



33 The opposite graph shows the results of an experiment through which the enzyme action was measured at different pH values, in which part of the digestive canal does this enzyme work ?

- (a) Buccal cavity.
- (b) Oesophagus.
- (c) Small intestine.
- (d) Stomach.

Enzyme action

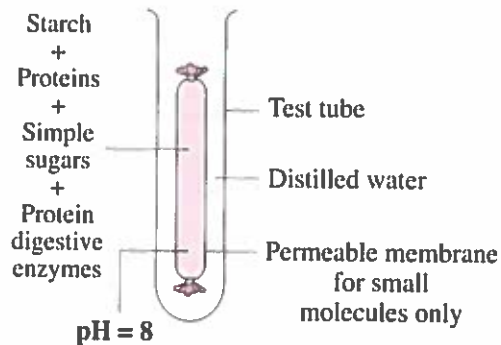


34 Where are fats completely digested ?

- (a) In mouth.
- (b) In stomach.
- (c) In duodenum.
- (d) In small intestine.

35 The opposite figure shows an experiment carried out in the room temperature, which of the following substances can be detected in water after 45 minutes ?

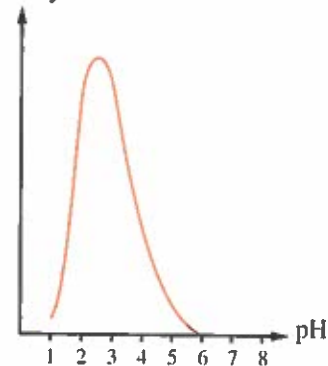
- (a) Amino acids and simple sugars.
- (b) Protein and amino acids.
- (c) Protein and monosaccharides.
- (d) Starch and monosaccharides.



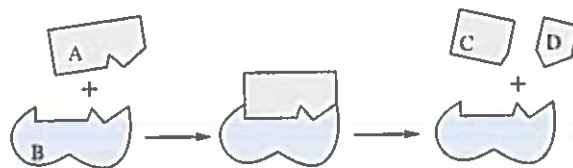
36 The opposite graph illustrates the effect of pH on the rate of a digestive enzyme activity, which of the following choices represents the substrate and the product ?

	Substrate	Product
(a)	Polypeptides	Amino acids
(b)	Proteins	Polypeptides
(c)	Carbohydrates	Maltose
(d)	Fats	Fatty acids

Enzyme activity



37 The following diagram illustrates the action of a digestive enzyme :



If (D) is a fructose molecule. What do (A), (B) and (C) represent ?

	A	B	C
(a)	Sucrase enzyme	Sucrose molecule	Glucose molecule
(b)	Sucrose molecule	Glucose molecule	Sucrase enzyme
(c)	Glucose molecule	Sucrase enzyme	Sucrose molecule
(d)	Sucrose molecule	Sucrase enzyme	Glucose molecule

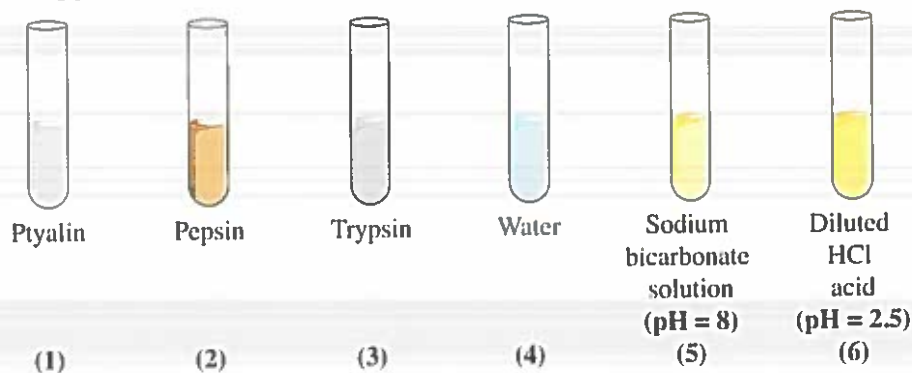
38 \* The purpose from the conversion of milk in the infants' stomach into coagulated substance is to make benefit from the ..... that is(are) present in milk.

- (a) sugar                      (b) protein                      (c) mineral salts                      (d) water

39 \* In the light of your understanding to the mechanism of the enzyme action, which of the following represents the product of an enzymatic reaction and has the ability of specific activation at the same time ?

- (a) Pepsin                      (b) Enterokinase.  
(c) Trypsin.                      (d) Maltase.

40 \* Which of the following tubes can be used together to form two different solutions that digest the egg white ?





	The first solution	The second solution
(a)	(2) + (4)	(3) + (5)
(b)	(1) + (4) + (5)	(2) + (4) + (6)
(c)	(2) + (4) + (6)	(3) + (4) + (5)
(d)	(3) + (4) + (5)	(1) + (4) + (6)

- 41 \* A sample was taken from the juice that is present inside the pancreatic duct, what is the digestive effect of this sample if drops of it are put on protein, lipids and starch separately (in suitable conditions) ?

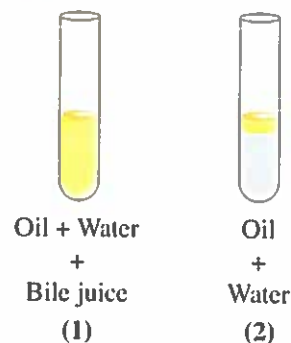
	Proteins	Lipids	Starch
(a)	Digested in a normal rate	Digested in a lower rate than the normal rate	Not digested
(b)	Not digested	Digested in a lower rate than the normal rate	Digested in a normal rate
(c)	Digested in a lower rate than the normal rate	Digested in a normal rate	Not digested
(d)	Digested in a lower rate than the normal rate	Not digested	Digested in a lower rate than the normal rate

- 42 \* Which of the following pairs are not similar in their action ?  
 (a) Pepsin and trypsin. (b) Ptyalin and pancreatic amylase.  
 (c) HCl acid and enterokinase enzyme. (d) Bile juice and maltase.
- 43 \* Which of the following enzymes doesn't digest the same type of carbohydrates ?  
 (a) Maltase. (b) Amylase. (c) Sucrase. (d) Lactase.

- 44 \* Which of the following enzymes participate in the digestion of milk ?  
 (a) Pepsin – Trypsin – Peptidases – Maltase. (b) Amylase – Maltase – Pepsin – Lactase.  
 (c) Pepsin – Trypsin – Peptidases – Lactase. (d) Peptidases – Trypsin – Maltase – Lactase.

- 45 \* In the two opposite figures, the pH value in the two test tubes (1) and (2) is adjusted to be 8, after adding lipase enzyme to the two test tubes, what happens to the mixture shape ?

- (a) It changes in test tube (1) faster than test tube (2).  
 (b) It changes in test tube (2) faster than test tube (1).  
 (c) It changes in the two test tubes (1) and (2) by the same rate.  
 (d) It doesn't change in the two test tubes.



- 46 \* The following diagram shows how to extract fructose sugar from corn seeds to be used as a healthy alternative for sucrose sugar :



Impurification of seeds from the protein digestive enzymes before starting the process .....

- ☐ a will affect step (1). 
 ☐ b will affect step (2).  
☐ c will affect both step (1) and (2). 
 ☐ d will not affect both step (1) and (2).

- 47 \* For treating Dyspepsia (indigestion) cases, the doctor may prescribe capsulated tablets which contain digestive enzymes, in your opinion, why are the tablets capsulated ?

- ☐ a To release the medicine in the stomach before reaching the duodenum.  
☐ b To release the medicine in the intestine without releasing it in the stomach.  
☐ c To release the medicine in both stomach and intestine.  
☐ d To facilitate the medicine absorption through intestine.

### Absorption and metabolism

- 48 Which of the following food substances takes a different route in its absorption ?

- ☐ a Egg white. 
 ☐ b Butter.  
☐ c Honey. 
 ☐ d Bread.

- 49 *Salmonella* bacteria infect human when eating contaminated food or water causing some symptoms as diarrhea. Which part of the alimentary canal is most affected ?

- ☐ a Oesophagus. 
 ☐ b Pharynx. 
 ☐ c Stomach. 
 ☐ d Intestine.

- 50 If the lacteal vessels are blocked inside the villi, which of the following nutrients will **not** enter in the blood circulation with a normal rate ?

- ☐ a Amino acids. 
 ☐ b Glucose. 
 ☐ c Fats. 
 ☐ d Fructose.

- 51 Which of the following enzymes **won't** produce substances that are absorbed by the body ?

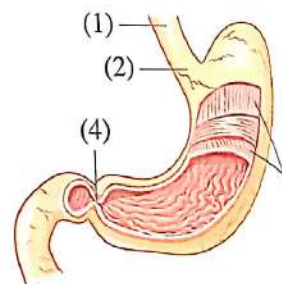
- ☐ a Maltase. 
 ☐ b Lactase. 
 ☐ c Enterokinase. 
 ☐ d Sucrase.

- 52 Why does the absorption process of some products of digestion by villi is called active transport process ?
- (a) Because of the conversion of the large food molecules into small-sized molecules.
  - (b) Because of the hydrolysis process that depends on enzymes.
  - (c) Because of the need to an amount of energy to be absorbed.
  - (d) Because of its transfer to the bloodstream.
- 53 What is the name of the process by which the absorbed food becomes a part of the body ?
- (a) Anabolism.
  - (b) Catabolism.
  - (c) Digestion.
  - (d) Absorption.
- 54 Which of the following is not considered the result for the non-occurrence of digestion process of a food bolus ?
- (a) The impermeability of its simple molecules through its cell membranes.
  - (b) The non-occurrence of the absorption process in the small intestine.
  - (c) Its presence in the form of wastes in the large intestine.
  - (d) The body benefits from it as a source of energy.
- 55 How many voluntary sphincter muscles are present in the digestive system of human ?
- (a) 1
  - (b) 2
  - (c) 3
  - (d) 4
- 56 \* The action of each of ..... is required for the absorption of A, D and K vitamins.
- (a) bile and amylase
  - (b) bile and peptidases
  - (c) bile and pancreatic juice
  - (d) trypsin and enterokinase
- 57 \* Which of the following blood vessels where the vitamin (B) doesn't pass through it, to reach the heart ?
- (a) Hepatic portal vein.
  - (b) Hepatic vein.
  - (c) Inferior vena cava.
  - (d) Superior vena cava.
- 58 \* Which of the following doesn't cause the presence of a high percentage of fats in the wastes of the digestive system ?
- (a) Disturbance in the action of pancreas.
  - (b) Disturbance in the action of lipase enzyme.
  - (c) Disturbance in the bile juice secretion.
  - (d) Disturbance in HCl acid secretion.

## Second

## Miscellaneous Questions

- 1 What happens in case of : the absence of enzymes from the digestive system ?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What happens in case of : increasing the temperature of the medium where the enzyme is present ?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Explain : some enzymes work in two opposite directions.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What happens in case of : placing a piece of bread in the mouth and chewing it for three minutes ?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Give reason for : food passes easily in the digestive canal.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What happens in case of : the removal of epiglottis from the pharynx ?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The opposite figure represents a part of the human digestive system :  
 (a) Where does this movement take place in the digestive canal ? And what is its name ?  
 (b) Illustrate the mechanism of this movement.  
 (c) What is the function of this movement in the process of food digestion ?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Give reason for : human doesn't suffer from ulcers in the oesophagus, when eating dry foods.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Explain : hydrochloric acid plays an important role in the digestion process in stomach.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 10 What happens if : a person took a high dosage of antacid drug ?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 11 What happens if : the gastric juice contains sodium bicarbonate ?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 12 From the opposite figure :  
 (a) How does structure no. (3) participate in the digestion process ?  
 (b) What is the functional suitability of structure no. (1) ?  
 (c) Show how to control the opening and closing of structures no. (2) and no. (4).  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 13 Explain : when a person eats a meal that consists of rice, meat and vegetables, meat is the only food substance which is affected by the gastric juice.



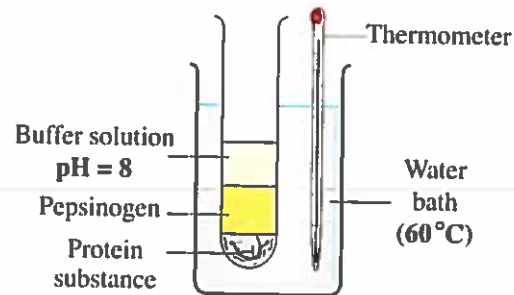


**14 What happens if :** pepsin enzyme is formed in an active form inside the stomach cells ?

**15 Give reason for :** starch is not digested inside the stomach, in spite of mixing food with ptyalin enzyme.

**16 From the opposite figure :**

Correct the mistakes in this figure to make the enzyme work efficiently and digest the substrate (protein substance) that is present in the tube "without drawing".



**17 Give reason for :** the occurrence of stomach ulcer in some cases.

**18 Explain :** the stomach doesn't digest itself.

**19 Give reason for :** bile juice is not a digestive juice.

**20 Explain :** the activity of liver improves the efficiency of the digestion process.

**21 What happens in case of :** the absence of bile juice from the human body ?

**22 Give reason for :** pepsin enzyme digests protein in the stomach, while its action stops in the small intestine.

**23 What happens in case of :** the non-secretion of sodium bicarbonate in the pancreatic juice ?

**24 Give reason for :** enterokinase enzyme plays an indirect role in the proteins digestion.

**25 What is the similarity between :** enterokinase enzyme and HCl acid ?

**26 "Eating fast foods stimulates the activity of peptidases enzymes to digest them".**

**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

**27 "The small intestine contains a mixture of food substances, such as polypeptides and several enzymes, such as trypsin".**

**Deduce the reason for why trypsin doesn't affect the polypeptides, although it digests the proteins.**

**28** "The degree of hydrogen ion concentration (pH) plays an important role in the stages of food digestion" :

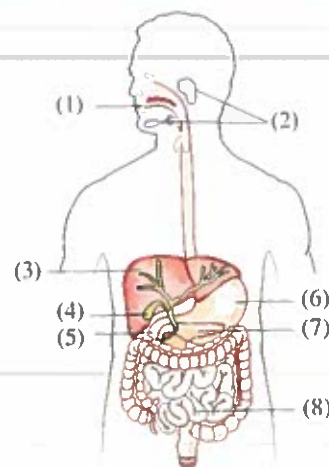
- (a) • **Illustrate** the role of pH in mouth, stomach and duodenum.  
 • **Follow up** the (pH) role in the whole digestive canal.
- (b) **Mention** a food substance that is digested at two different pH values.

**29** The opposite figure illustrates a diagram for the digestive system structure :

(a) Write the number and name of the organ that :

1. Secretes the protein digestive enzymes.
2. Doesn't secrete any digestive enzymes.
3. Secretes amylase enzyme.
4. The digestion of carbohydrates occurs inside it.

(b) What is the function of the liquid that is produced by part no. (7) and secreted in part no. (5) ?



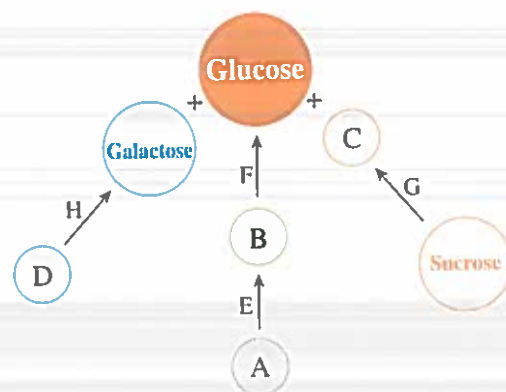
**30** "The alimentary canal contains enzyme (X) that hydrolyzes molecule (A) into two similar molecules of monosaccharides" :

- (a) What is the name of each of enzyme (X) and molecule (A) ?
- (b) In which part in the alimentary canal is enzyme (X) secreted ? And in which part of it molecule (A) is formed ?

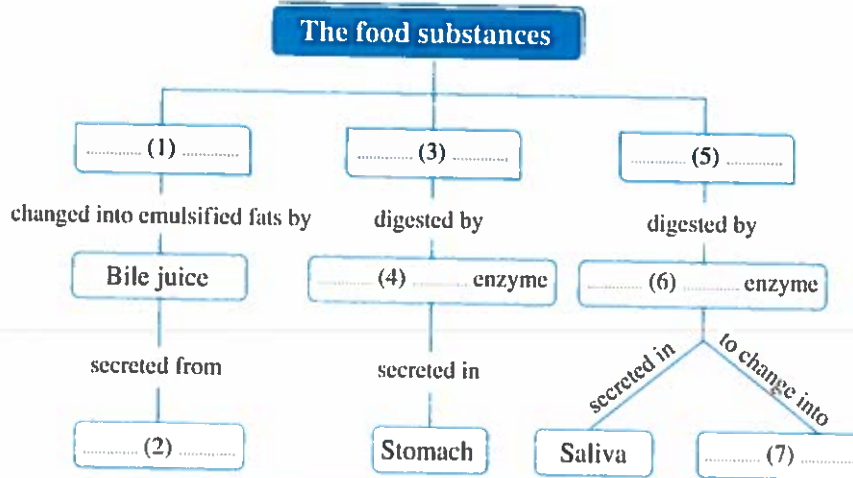
**31** **Explain** : the digestion in stomach is different from that in the small intestine.

**32** In the opposite diagram :

- (a) What do the letters illustrated in this diagram represent ?
- (b) Deduce what happens if (F) is replaced by (E), explain your answer.
- (c) Determine the sources of secretion of (E), (F), (G) and (H) in the digestive system.

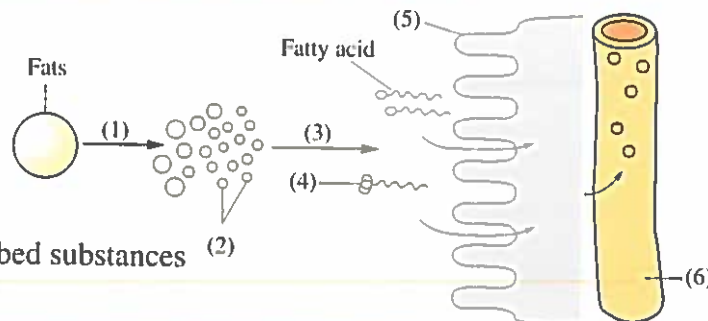


- 33** The following diagram shows a summary for the digestion process of food substances, complete the diagram using suitable words :

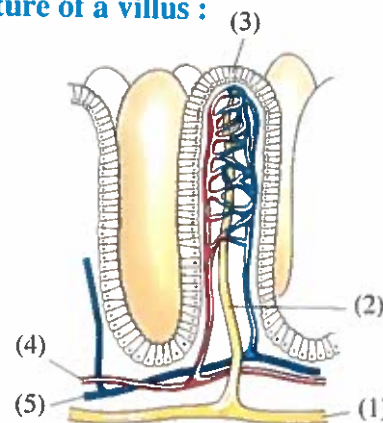


- 34 Explain :** the presence of carbohydrates in the form of monosaccharides in blood.
- 35** "The activity of enzymes depends on the type of food that the human eats".  
**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**
- 36 Give reason for :** the presence of engulfing cells in the epithelial layer of villi.

- 37** The opposite figure illustrates the digestion of a part of fats through the digestive system :



- (a) Write the labels from no. (1) : (6).
- (b) Mention the path of the absorbed substances through the structure no. (6).
- 38** The following diagrammatic figure represents the structure of a villus :
- (a) Mention the names of the structures which transport the amino acids and fatty acids.
- (b) Which of the two structures no. (4) or (5) contains a higher percentage of glucose ? Explain your answer.
- (c) Mention the name of the structure which pours its contents in the superior vena cava.
- (d) Illustrate the function of structure no. (3).
- (e) Compare between : structure no. (1) and structure no. (5), "according to : the absorbed substances and their path".

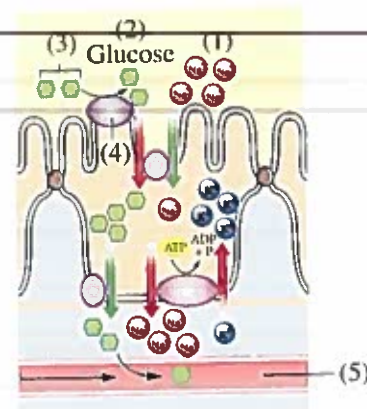


**39 Explain :** the absorption process of some digestion products through the villi is known as an active transport process.

**40** "The inferior vena cava carries substances that are digested completely".  
**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

**41** Study the opposite figure that illustrates one of the important processes that occurs in the human body, then answer :

- Mention the names of each of (3), (4) and (5).
- How are (1) and (2) absorbed ?
- Deduce the site of occurrence of this process.



**42** "The epithelial layer cells of the villi have a role in the digestion process".  
**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

**43 Give reason for :** (A), (D), (E) and (K) vitamins pass through the lymphatic route, while vitamin (B) passes through the blood route.

**44 "A man ate a piece of meat" :**

- How does his digestive system digest this piece of meat ?
- What is the route that the products of the digestion process passed through to reach the liver ?

**45 "A meal consists of bean, oil and bread" :**

- Determine the first place for the digestion of each component of the meal and the juice which digests each part.
- What is the final form for the digestion of these components ?
- Which route is taken by the glucose sugar to reach the heart ?

**46** "The completely digested food transfers from the villi of the small intestine to the heart through the inferior vena cava".

**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**



**47 Explain :** theoretically, human can live without stomach, but he can't live without small intestine.

**48 What happens in case of :** the removal of ileum from the body of a mammalian animal experimentally ?

**49 What happens if :** the metabolism of the absorbed food in the liver is not occurred ?

**50 What happens in case of :** the absence of convolutions from the lining of large intestine ?

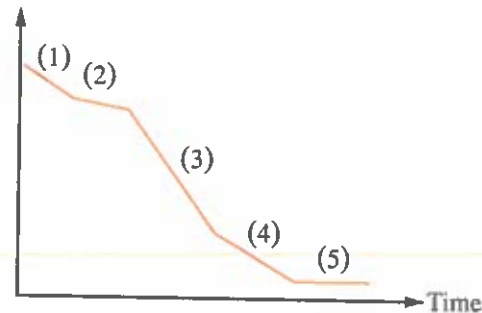
**51** "The absorption process that occurs in the small intestine is different from that which occurs in the large intestine".

**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

**52 What is the difference between :** the lining of ileum and the lining of large intestine ?

**53 The opposite graph shows the percentage of undigested food of a meal along the alimentary canal, starting from the mouth :**

The percentage of undigested food



(a) What do the parts from (1) : (5) represent ?

(b) Explain : the decline of the curve at (2) and its constancy at (5), although the digestive enzymes are not secreted in these two parts.

(c) What is the substance that can be digested at (1) and (4) ?

(d) Why doesn't this curve reach the zero point vertically ?

(e) In which part each of the following occurs :

1. Absorption of the digested food.
2. Absorption of water from the wastes of the undigested food.
3. Stopping the digestion process.

## New Types of questions?

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

**Choose two correct answers for the following questions :**

**1** In the light of your study, which of the following substances that each of the salivary glands and pancreas shares in its digestion ?

- (a) Rice.
- (b) Meat.
- (c) Peanut.
- (d) Potato.
- (e) Butter.

**2** Which of the following is from the results of increasing peristalsis of the duodenum ?

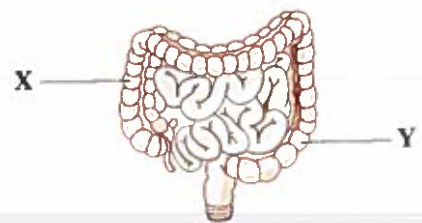
- (a) The bile juice production decreases.
- (b) The pH value in small intestine decreases.
- (c) The absorption rate of amino acids decreases.
- (d) Secretion of sodium bicarbonate increases.
- (e) The absorption rate of glucose decreases.

**Choose from the list what suits the spaces :**

**3** From the opposite figure that illustrates a part of the digestive system in human :

By comparing the part (X) with the part (Y), it is observed that

- Part (X) .....(1).....
- Part (Y) .....(2).....



Containing more content of water
Is more coherent
Doesn't contain water
Doesn't contain mucus
The peristalsis in it, stops



Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

1 If we supposed that plant (X) obtains its food in the form of glucose, vitamin (B), water and salts. So, which of the following statements is correct ?

- (a) The autotrophic plant contains simple chlorophyll.
- (b) The autotrophic plant contains chlorophyll (A) only.
- (c) The autotrophic plant contains chlorophyll (B) only.
- (d) The heterotrophic plant doesn't contain chlorophyll (A) or (B).

2 The following diagram represents a vital process that occurs inside the human body :

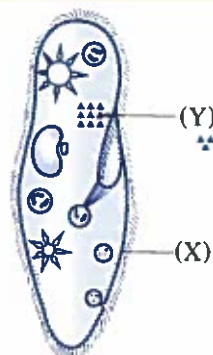


Which of the following represent (X) and (Y) respectively ?

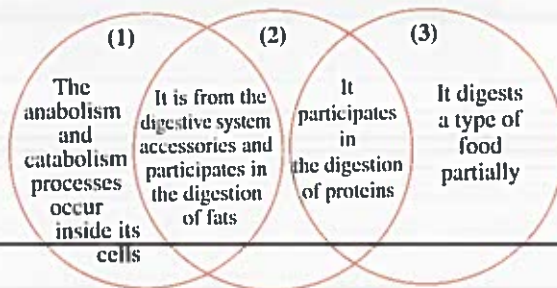
- (a) Peptidases enzymes / polypeptide.
- (b) Peptidases enzymes / amino acid.
- (c) Trypsin enzyme / amino acid.
- (d) Pepsin enzyme / polypeptide.

3 The opposite figure illustrates a unicellular protozoan that lives in swamps and ponds water, the arrow shows the transfer of molecules (Y) through the structure (X) by ..... phenomenon.

- (a) diffusion
- (b) active transport
- (c) imbibition
- (d) osmosis

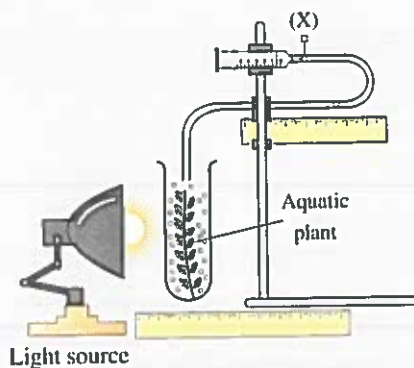


The following figure represents three organs of the digestive system in human :



- 4 The organ(s) that participate(s) in the dividing process of food without reaching the final form that will be absorbed is(are) .....
- (a) (1) & (2).      (b) (2) only.      (c) (3) only.      (d) (1) & (3).
- 5 What is the organ(s) that secrets(s) enzymes to digest all the types of food ?
- (a) (1) & (2).      (b) (2) only.      (c) (3) only.      (d) (2) & (3).
- 6 What is the organ(s) that can be removed without affecting the human life ?
- (a) (1) & (2).      (b) (2) only.      (c) (3) only.      (d) (2) & (3).

The following figure illustrates an experiment to study a vital process in the plant, examine it, then answer :

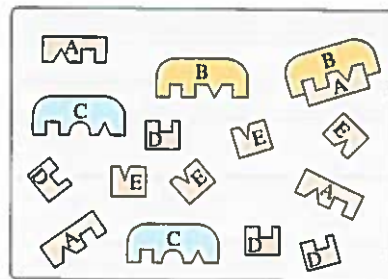


- 7 What is the gas(es) that is(are) collected in structure (X) ?
- (a) Oxygen.      (b) Nitrogen.  
 (c) Carbon dioxide.      (d) Oxygen and carbon dioxide.
- 8 Which of the following doesn't lead to an increase in the volume of the gas(es) collected in structure (X) ?
- (a) The increase in temperature to the optimum degree.  
 (b) The increase in concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$  in water.  
 (c) The increase in distance between the light source and the plant.  
 (d) The increase in light intensity.



- 9 The opposite figure illustrates the role of an enzyme in the digestion process, which of the opposite structures represent the products of this process ?

- (a) A and D (b) C and B  
(c) E and A (d) D and E



- 10 Which choice in the following table illustrates the correct number of chloroplasts in three different cells in a green plant leaf ?

	Epidermal cell	Palisade tissue cell	Spongy tissue cell
(a)	0	6	17
(b)	0	17	6
(c)	6	17	0
(d)	17	0	6

- 11 In an experiment similar to that of Melvin Calvin,  $\text{CO}_2$  with  $^{18}\text{O}$  isotope and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  with  $^{16}\text{O}$  isotope were used, what is the product that is resulted firstly ?

- (a) PGAL containing  $^{16}\text{O}$  (b) Glucose containing  $^{16}\text{O}$   
(c) Glucose containing  $^{18}\text{O}$  (d) PGAL containing  $^{18}\text{O}$

- 12 Study the following figure, then answer :



Which of the following enzymes affects this compound to start its absorption ?

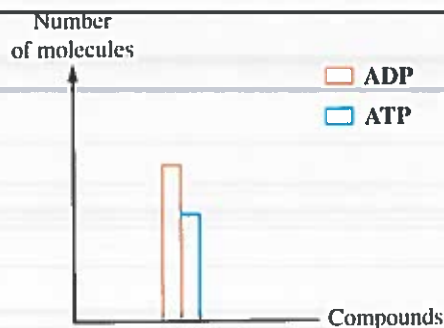
- (a) Amylase. (b) Pepsin.  
(c) Trypsin. (d) Peptidase.

13 What is the result of sugar deficiency in the sap vacuoles of *Nitella* alga which lives in a swamp poor in chlorine, although the plant needs it ?

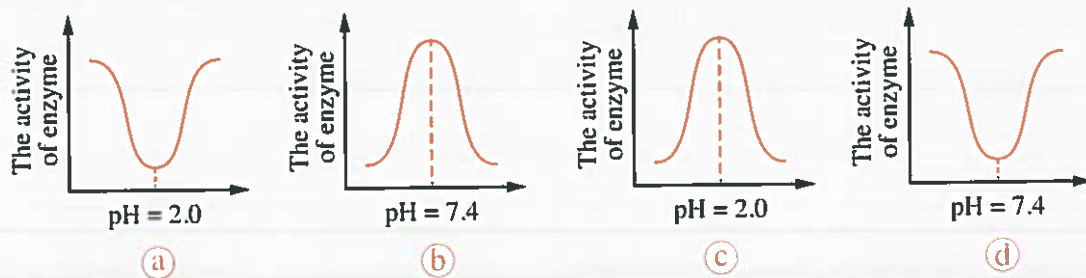
- (a) Chlorine absorption increases. (b) Water absorption decreases.  
(c) Active transport process decreases. (d) Starch production rate increases.

14 Study the opposite graph which expresses some products of photosynthesis process reactions, which reaction occurs during this stage ?

- (a)  $H_2O$  splitting.  
(b) NADP reduction.  
(c) Photosynthetic phosphorylation.  
(d)  $CO_2$  reduction.



15 If you know that pepsin enzyme becomes active in a small range of high concentrations of hydrogen ions, which of the following graphs expresses the highest rate of pepsin activity and (pH) value ?



16 Which of the following plants are characterized by high osmotic pressures ?

- (a) Normal plants and fresh water environment plants.  
(b) Normal and desert plants.  
(c) Desert plants and fresh water environment plants.  
(d) Desert plants and salty water environment plants.



17 What is(are) the compounds that its(their) formation inside the chloroplast is affected by nitrogen deficiency ?

- (a) Enzymes. (b) PGAL  
(c) Glucose. (d) Starch.

18 What are the food substances that their components are re-built in order to work as an insulator which protects the body against cold weather ?

- (a) Vegetables and fruits. (b) Meat and eggs.  
(c) Meat and vegetables. (d) Peanuts and sesame.

19 Which of the following choices shows the changes that occur in the size of corn plant cells and their turgor pressure when the sugar concentration increases inside the cells ?

	Cells' size	H <sub>2</sub> O turgor pressure
(a)	Increases	Increases
(b)	Decreases	Decreases
(c)	Decreases	Increases
(d)	Increases	Decreases

20 Which of the following pathways represents the flow of electrons during photosynthesis process ?

- (a)  $\text{NADPH}_2 \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{Dark reactions.}$  (b)  $\text{O}_2 \rightarrow \text{ADP} \rightarrow \text{Dark reactions.}$   
(c)  $\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{Dark reactions} \rightarrow \text{NADPH}_2$  (d)  $\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{NADPH}_2 \rightarrow \text{Dark reactions.}$

21 Fungal infection causes deficiency of the chlorophyll synthesis in the plant cells, which of the following happens as a result of this deficiency ?

- (a) The non-formation of the co-enzymes.  
(b) The non-formation of ATP in light reactions.  
(c) Non-entry of  $\text{CO}_2$  to the stroma.  
(d) Deficiency in the amount of glucose formed from photosynthesis.

Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

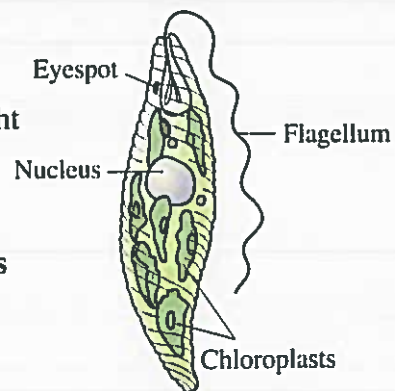
- 22 Although the purple sulphur bacteria are autotrophic, they differ from the green plants in the photosynthesis process. **Explain this.**

- 23 **What happens if :** the number of chloroplasts in the palisade tissue is equal to their number in the spongy tissue ?

- 24 **The opposite figure** illustrates *Euglena* which is a unicellular living organism that is characterized by the presence of a flagellum for movement, eyespot for light sensitivity and also chloroplasts.

**In the light of your study :**

**Explain the importance of movement for the life of this organism.**







**25** "All enzymes of the human digestive system are digestive enzymes".

**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

---



---



---



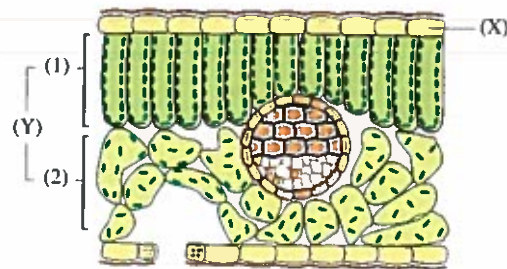
---



---

**26** The opposite figure represents a T.S. in a plant leaf, study it, then answer :

(a) The cells of structure (X) are barrel-shaped, explain this.



(b) What is the difference between : structure no. (1) and structure no. (2) in the tissue (Y) ?

---



---



---

**27** The opposite figure represents a part of the digestive canal, study it, then answer :

(a) Deduce the functional suitability of structure no. (1).

---



---



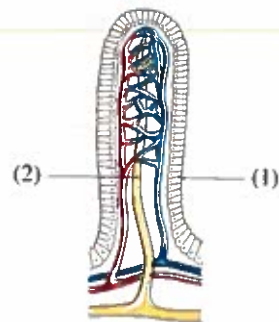
---



---



---



(b) Mention the absorbed substances through structure no. (2).

---



---



---

## Exercise on Chapter

# 1

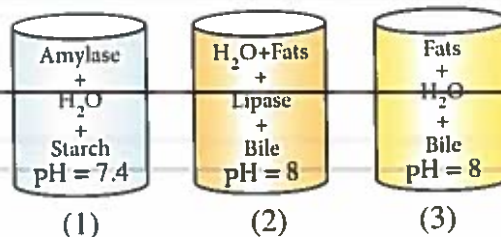
## From the Questions of the Previous Year Exams



Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

- 1 In the opposite figures, in which tube does the complete digestion occurs?

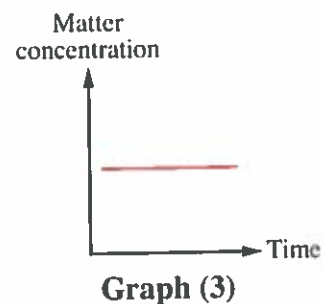
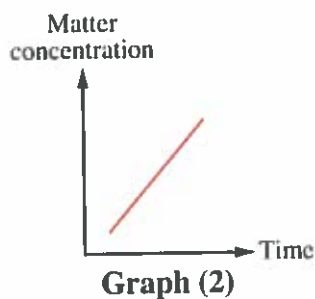
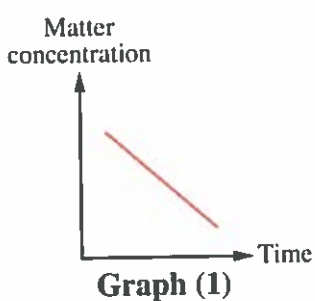
- (a) (1), (2)
- (b) (3) only.
- (c) (1), (3)
- (d) (2) only.



- 2 The number of hydrogen atoms resulted from the photolysis of 6 water molecules is ..... atoms.

- (a) 6
- (b) 12
- (c) 18
- (d) 24

- 3 Which of the following graphs represents the changes in concentration of an enzyme, a protein, and amino acids produced in a test tube?



	Graph (1)	Graph (2)	Graph (3)
(a)	Amino acids	Protein	Enzyme
(b)	Protein	Enzyme	Amino acids
(c)	Amino acids	Enzyme	Protein
(d)	Protein	Amino acids	Enzyme

4 If you know that *Ascaris* worms can live and feed inside the human small intestine, so that these organisms are .....

- (a) saprophytes. (b) autotrophs. (c) carnivores. (d) parasites.

5 In which part of the human alimentary canal does the enzyme work efficiently, if the optimum pH for this enzyme is 7.5?

- (a) Mouth. (b) Small intestine.  
(c) Stomach. (d) Large intestine.

6 The green plants are similar to purple-sulphur bacteria in the .....

- (a) type of chlorophyll in both of them.  
(b) source of hydrogen required for  $\text{CO}_2$  fixation in both of them.  
(c) dark reactions in both of them.  
(d) secondary products of photosynthesis process in both of them.

7 Which of the following pathways describes the flow of electrons during photosynthesis process?

- (a)  $\text{NADPH}_2 - \text{H}_2\text{O} - \text{Dark reactions}$ . (b)  $\text{O}_2 - \text{ADP} - \text{Dark reactions}$ .  
(c)  $\text{H}_2\text{O} - \text{Dark reactions} - \text{NADPH}_2$  (d)  $\text{H}_2\text{O} - \text{NADPH}_2 - \text{Dark reactions}$ .

8 Green and purple sulphur bacteria are from the .....

- (a) parasites. (b) saprophytes.  
(c) carnivorous. (d) autotrophs.

9 Which of the following elements whose absence doesn't affect photosynthesis process?

- (a) Iron. (b) Phosphorus.  
(c) Magnesium. (d) Calcium.

10 The process of mixing two different substances is .....

- (a) osmosis. (b) diffusion.  
(c) active transport. (d) imbibition.

11 The source of released oxygen in the photosynthesis process is .....

- (a) water. (b)  $\text{CO}_2$   
(c) glucose. (d) NADP

12 Which of the following represents active transport?

- (a) Increasing the diffusion of substances against gradient.  
(b) Ions inside the cell more than outer medium.  
(c) No relation between diffusion of substances and amount of energy.  
(d) Liked between diffusion of substances and activity of cell.

13 Water vapour transfer from plant to air by .....

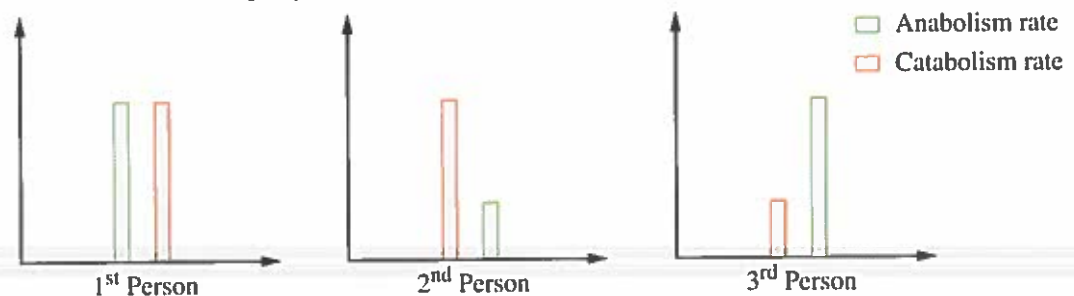
- (a) active transport. (b) imbibition. (c) diffusion. (d) osmosis.

14 The substance(s) that is/are the fastest to supply the cell with energy is/are .....

- (a) lipids. (b) carbohydrates. (c) proteins. (d) water.

15 The following graphs describe the relation between rate of anabolism and catabolism in 3 people differ in age stage :

Which of the following represents the arrangement of 3 persons from the first to the third?



- (a) Childhood – Youth – Elderhood.  
(b) Youth – Childhood – Elderhood.  
(c) Elderhood – Childhood – Youth.  
(d) Youth – Elderhood – Childhood.



16 By which process is food moved along the alimentary canal?

- a Assimilation.
- b Digestion.
- c Ingestion.
- d Peristalsis.

17 A person hasn't the ability to absorb vitamin K by his villi, you advise him to eat .....

- a proteins.
- b carbohydrates.
- c fats, lipids.
- d vitamins.

18 Gallbladder was removed from a person, which of the following is expected to occur ?

- a He can't eat fresh vegetables.
- b He can eat fats in small quantities.
- c He can take drinks only.
- d He can eat only one big meal daily.

19 Which of the following elements is needed by the plant to absorb ions against the concentration gradient ?

- a (Cl).
- b (Fe).
- c (P).
- d (S).

20 Vitamin B enters to heart via.....

- a lymphatic route.
- b superior vena cava.
- c pulmonary circulation.
- d inferior vena cava.

21 Which of the following best explains how enzymes aid digestion ?

- a Enzymes break down large, complex food molecules into smaller ones which can be absorbed.
- b Enzymes slow down the rate of digestion, so it doesn't require too much energy.
- c Enzymes regulate the pH of the digestive system to ensure that it remains at the optimum.
- d Enzymes are released by gallbladder to neutralize stomach acid.



Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

- 22** How far is this statement correct , with explanation? " The role of enzymes is restricted on digestion of food substances only".



Substrate binding

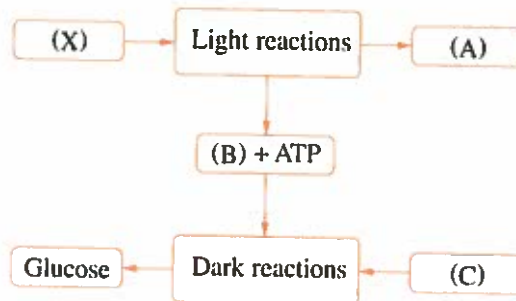
- 23** **Explain :** Amylase enzyme is secreted in an active form, while pepsin enzyme is secreted in an inactive form.

- 24** **Give reason for :** the age of root hair doesn't exceed few days or weeks?

- 25** **A meal consists of bean, oil and bread,** what is the route that the products of the digestion process passed through, in order to reach the heart? (For each component of the meal).

- 26** "The alimentary canal contains enzyme (X) that hydrolyses molecule (A) into two similar molecules of monosaccharides". **What is the name of each of enzyme (X) and molecule (A)?**

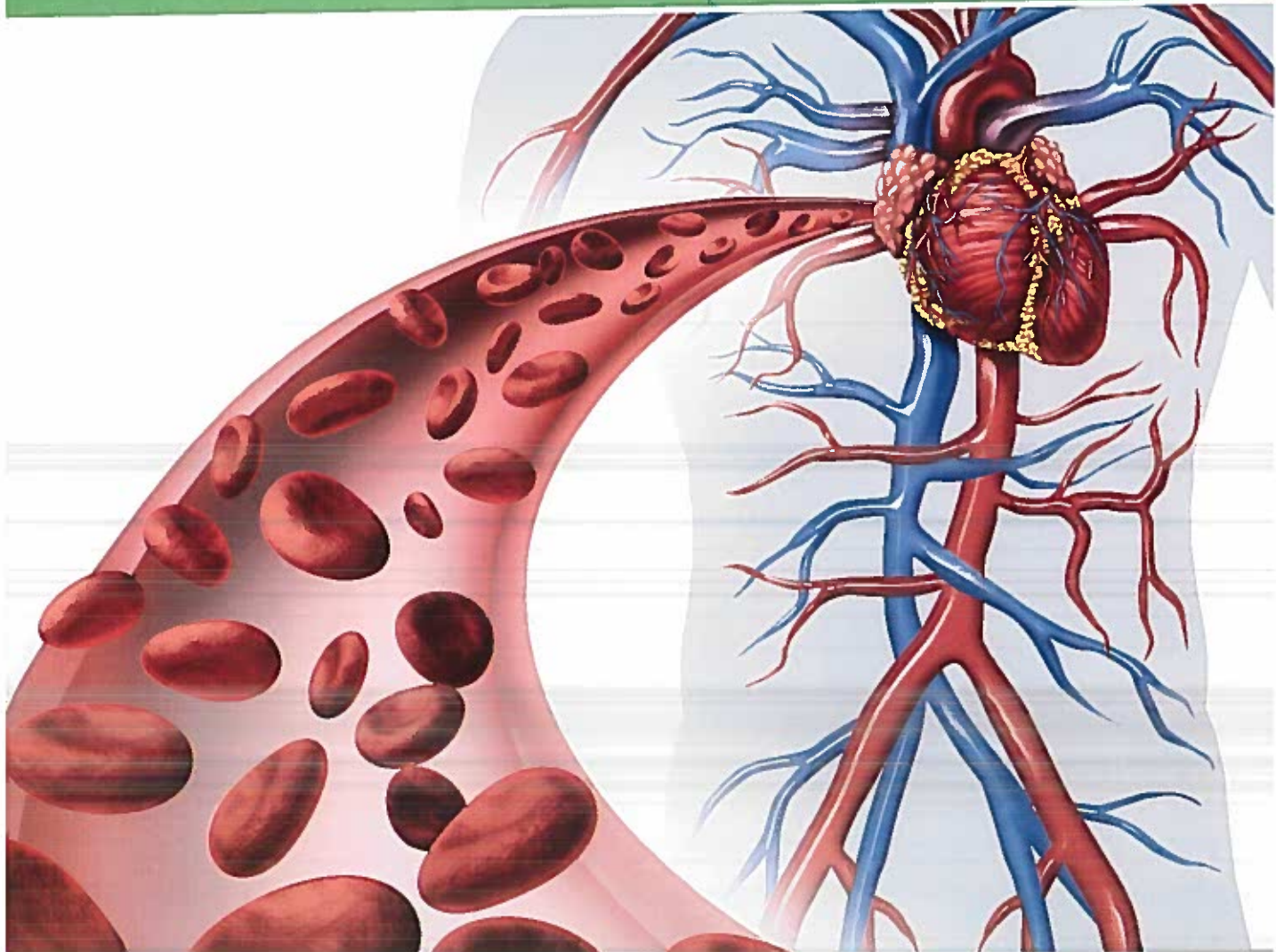
27 The following diagram represents light and dark reactions :



- (a) What does (C) refer to ?
- (b) What is the symbol of the compound which transfers the hydrogen from the light reactions to dark reactions?

# Chapter Two

## Transport in Living Organisms



Lesson **1** **Transport in Plant.**

Lesson **2** **Human Transport System (Circulatory System).**

Lesson **3** **Continue : Human Transport System (Blood Circulation and Lymphatic System).**

► Test on Chapter 2

► Exercise from the Questions of the Previous Year Exams.

## Objectives of the chapter

**By the end of this chapter, the student should be able to :**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Identify the concept of transport in higher plants.</li><li>• Deduce the mechanism of transport from the root to the leaf.</li><li>• Discover the factors that are responsible for the ascent of sap.</li><li>• Recognize the transport of manufactured food from the leaf to other parts of the plant.</li><li>• Explain the role of sieve tubes in transport.</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Identify the structure of transport system in man.</li><li>• Identify the circulatory system.</li><li>• Identify the contents and functions of blood.</li><li>• Identify the heartbeat and blood pressure.</li><li>• Understand the blood circulation.</li><li>• Understand the mechanism of blood clot formation.</li><li>• Identify the components of lymphatic system.</li></ul> |
|---|---|





**How** do you think  
the soil water can  
reach every part  
of the plant?

## Chapter

# 2

### Lesson One

## Transport in Plant

- It is clear from our previous studies for nutrition and digestion in living organisms that each living organism needs various substances that transport (move) inside its body by different means.

### Transport in lower (primitive) plants

- Lower (Primitive) plants (like algae) don't need specialized transport tissues, as the raw materials (carbon dioxide, water and mineral salts) move with the products of photosynthesis from one cell to another by **diffusion** and **active transport**.

### Transport in higher plants

- Gases (oxygen and carbon dioxide) move by **diffusion**.
- Water, mineral salts and soluble products of photosynthesis are transported through **specialized vascular tissues** which are :

#### 1 Xylem tissues (vessels and tracheids)

They translocate water and mineral salts that are absorbed from the soil through the root across its different tissues, till they reach the xylem vessels in root, then to the xylem of stem, then to the leaves where the photosynthesis process takes place.

#### 2 Phloem tissues (sieve tubes)

They translocate the high-energy organic food substances (carbohydrates, fats and proteins) from the sites of their production (leaves) to the sites of their storage and consumption in the different tissues of plant (root, stem, fruits and seeds) through the sieve tubes in the phloem of leaf, stem and root.



## 1 Test yourself

Answered

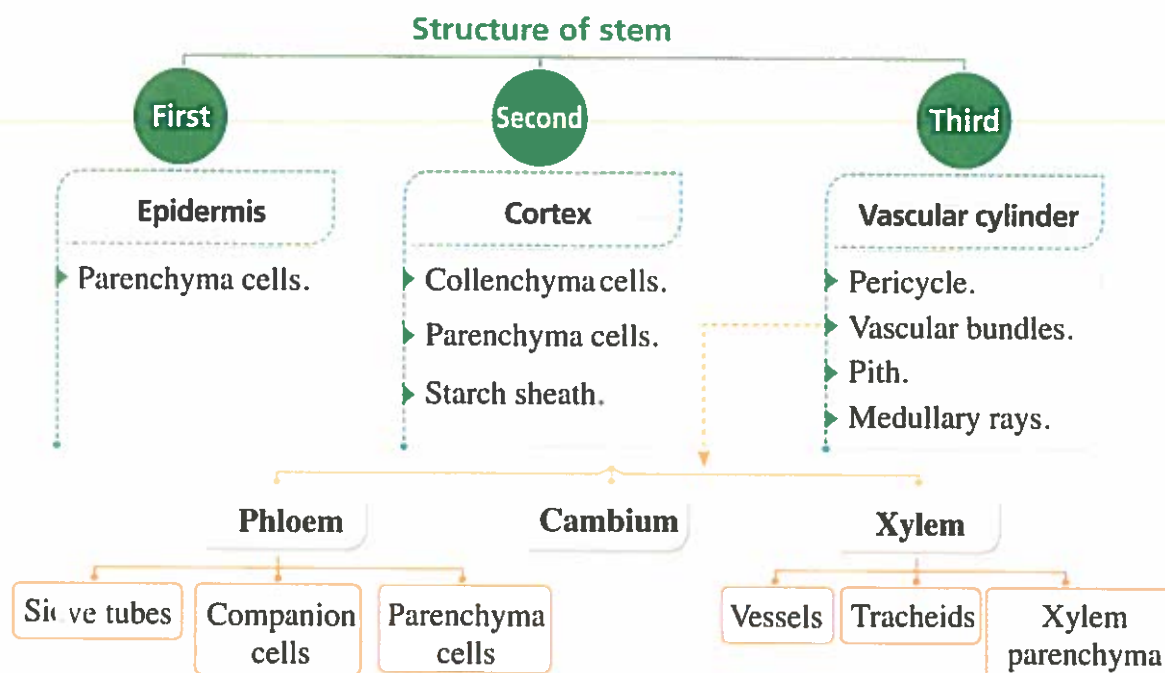
Choose the correct answer :

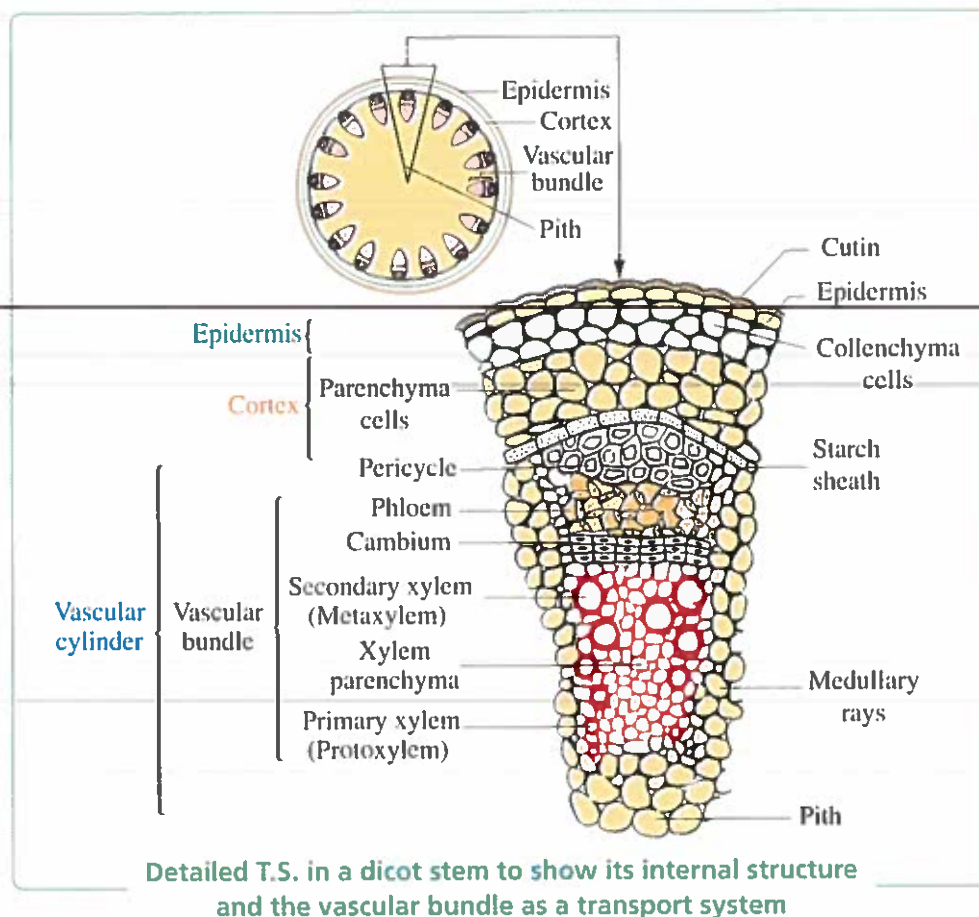
- 1 How far are these statements "carbohydrates are the essential substances that the plant forms in the photosynthesis process" , "the plant can form proteins and fats through it" correct ?
  - (a) The two statements are correct.
  - (b) The two statements are wrong.
  - (c) The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.
  - (d) The first statement is wrong and the second statement is correct.
- 2 Which of the following represent the production and distribution lines in the plant respectively ?
  - (a) Leaves and xylem tissues.
  - (b) Leaves and phloem tissues.
  - (c) Phloem tissues and leaves.
  - (d) Xylem tissues and phloem tissues.

- We should now study the **internal** structure of stem to help us understanding the role of stem in the process of transportation.

### Structure of the plant stem

- On examining a cross-section in a dicot plant stem under the microscope, it was found that it consists of a group of tissues, as shown in the following diagram :





## First Epidermis

### • It consists of :

One row of adjacent and barrel-shaped parenchyma cells, where the outer walls are covered by cuticle (layer of cutin).

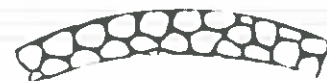


## Second Cortex

### • It consists of :

#### ① Collenchyma cells :

- **Description** : they are several rows of cells which have thickened corners by the deposition of cellulose and they may contain chloroplasts.



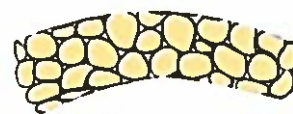
#### • Functions :

- Act as a mechanical tissue for the support of stem.
- Take part in the photosynthesis process (in case of the presence of chloroplasts).

## ② Parenchyma cells :

- **Description** : they are several rows of parenchyma cells with plenty of intercellular spaces.

- **Function** : aeration.



## ③ Starch sheath :

- **Description** : the innermost row of cells in the cortex.

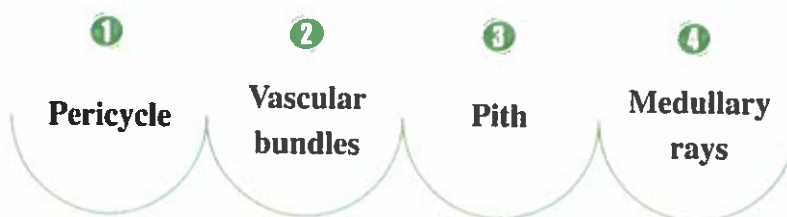
- **Function** : storing and keeping the starch granules.



## Third Vascular cylinder

- It occupies a large space of the stem.

- It consists of :



### 1 Pericycle

- **Description** :

- A group of parenchyma cells alternates with groups of fibrous cells.
- Each group of fibers faces a vascular bundle from outside.



- **Function** : makes the stem strong, erect and elastic.

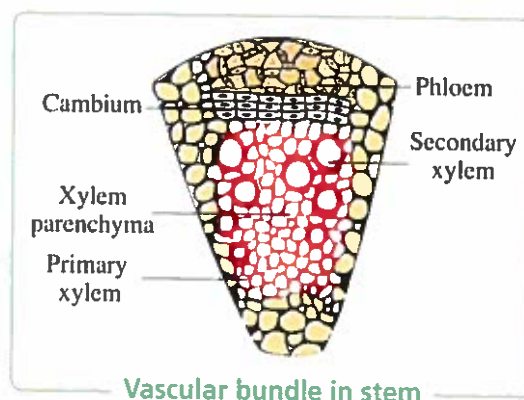
### 2 Vascular bundles

- They are arranged in a cylinder, where each bundle is triangular in shape with its base directed outwards.

- It consists of :

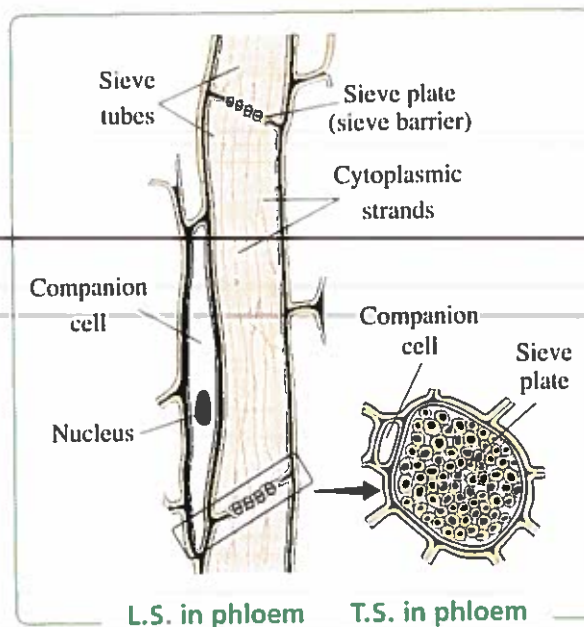
#### A Phloem

- It represents the outer tissue (part) of the vascular bundle.
- **Function** : transporting organic food substances from the leaves to all the plant parts.
- **Structure** : it consists of sieve tubes, companion cells and phloem parenchyma cells.



### Sieve tubes

- They are elongated cells which contain cytoplasmic strands without a nucleus.
- They are separated from each other by cross-walls that are perforated by tiny pores through which the cytoplasmic strands extend from one tube to another, these perforated cross-walls are called "**sieve plates (barriers)**".



### Companion cells

- They are living cells with a nucleus, where each cell of them is accompanied by a sieve tube.
- They contain a large number of ribosomes and mitochondria which enable them to organize the vital processes of sieve tubes.



### Key Point

Although the sieve tubes don't contain nuclei, they are able to transport the food substances.

### B Cambium

- **Description** : it consists of one row or more of **meristematic cells** that are found between the phloem and xylem.
- **Function** : its cells divide to give a secondary phloem **externally** and a secondary xylem **internally**.

### C Xylem

- It represents the internal tissue (part) of the vascular bundle.
- **Structure** : it consists of **vessels**, **tracheids** and **xylem parenchyma**.
- **Functions** :
  - Translocating water and solutes from the root to stem, then to the leaves.
  - Supporting the stem.

## Vessels

- **Structure** : they consist of a chain of elongated cylindrical cells that are joined end to end.

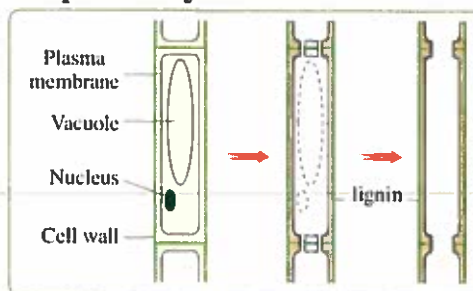
- **Steps of their formation** :

- ① At first, the transverse walls of the cylindrical cells have been completely dissolved, so the cells become one tube.
- ② The cellulose wall of cells is thickened by **lignin** substance which is **impermeable** to water and solutes.
- ③ The protoplasmic contents of cells died, leaving a hollow vessel (tube).

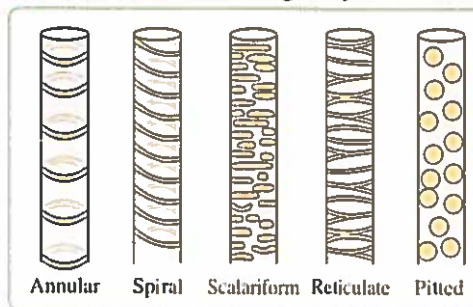
- Numerous pits are scattered all over the vessel wall, where the primary wall is left without thickening to allow the passage of water from inside the vessel to its outside.
- Strands of lignin are laid down on the inner lining of the vessel with various forms, such as annular and spiral to support the vessel and prevent the collapse (curve) of its wall inwards.

### Do you know...?

• **Steps of the xylem vessel formation** :



• **The forms of thickening in xylem vessels** :



## Tracheids

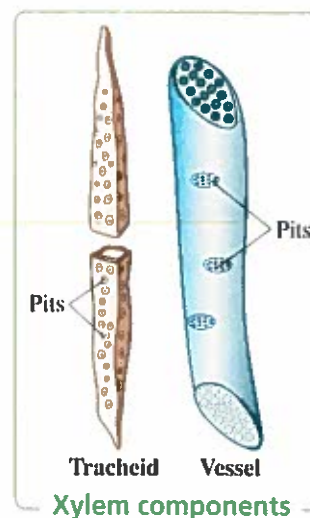
They are more or less similar to vessels, whereas they appear in T.S. different in being :

- Pentagonal or hexagonal form.
- Pointed (tapered), as the two ends are not opened.

They are similar to vessels in being pitted.

## Xylem parenchyma

- **Description** : rows of parenchyma cells that are present between the xylem vessels.



### Note

Xylem in the vascular bundles of stem is connected with the xylem of root and leaves. Also, the phloem of stem is connected with that of root and leaves. Therefore, there is a network of vessels that spreads all over the plant parts.



## 3 Pith

- Description : parenchyma cells occupying the centre of the stem.
- Function : storage.

## 4 Medullary rays

- Description : parenchyma cells extending among the vascular bundles.
- Function : join the cortex with the pith.

## 2 Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

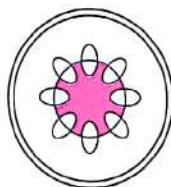
1 Which of the following isn't from the functions of the stem's cortex ?

- (a) Supporting.      (b) Transport.      (c) Photosynthesis.      (d) Storage.

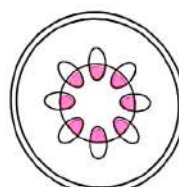
2 A plant was placed in water containing red dye for 24 hours, then it was removed, after those several sections of the stem were taken. Which of the following figures illustrates that ?



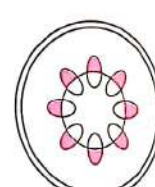
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

## Mechanism of transport in higher plants

It includes two different processes, which are :

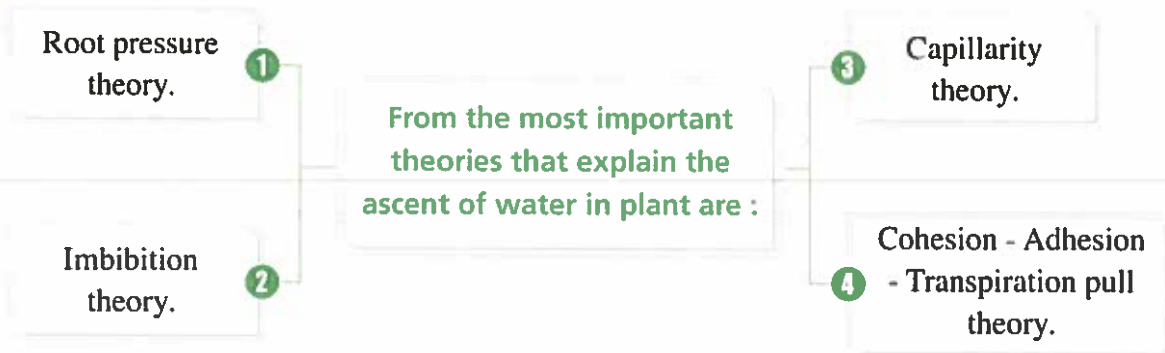
The transport of water and salts from the root to the leaf.

The transport of the manufactured food from the leaf to all the plant parts.

## First Mechanism of water and salts transport from the root to the leaf

- Xylem is responsible for the translocation of water and salts from the root to the leaves by forces acting on the ascent of this sap.

### Forces acting on the ascent of sap in the plant



### 1 Root pressure theory

- If the plant stem is cut very near (close) to the soil level, we can see the exudation (exit) of water from the stump (cut stem). This phenomenon is known as **exudation** which occurs, due to the **force** or **pressure** that is arisen in the root, as a result of its absorption of water by osmosis phenomenon, and this is called "**root pressure**".



Exudation phenomenon

- The root pressure causes water to be forced vertically upward through the xylem vessels, but it stops after a **short distance**, as at this level, the opposing pressure of the water column in xylem vessels has become equal to the root pressure.

#### Defect of the theory

- Experiments had proved that the root pressure theory couldn't explain the ascent of water to high-levels in tall trees, **because** :
  - Root pressure doesn't exceed 2 atm in the best conditions.
  - Gymnosperm plants (Conifers), such as *Pinus* have no root pressure.
  - The root pressure is affected quickly by the external factors.

#### Integration with Physics



The atmospheric pressure is the weight of the air column whose cross-sectional area is the unit area and its height extends from sea level to the top of the atmosphere.

## 2 Imbibition theory

- The walls of xylem vessels consist of cellulose and lignin that have a colloidal nature which has the ability to imbibe water.
- This phenomenon explains the transport of water along the cell walls, until it reaches the walls of xylem vessels and tracheids of the root, and from it to the rest of plant parts.

### Defect of the theory

- Experiments had proved that the imbibition phenomenon has a very limited effect on the ascent of sap, because the sap ascends through the cavities of xylem vessels and not along their walls only.

## 3 Capillarity theory

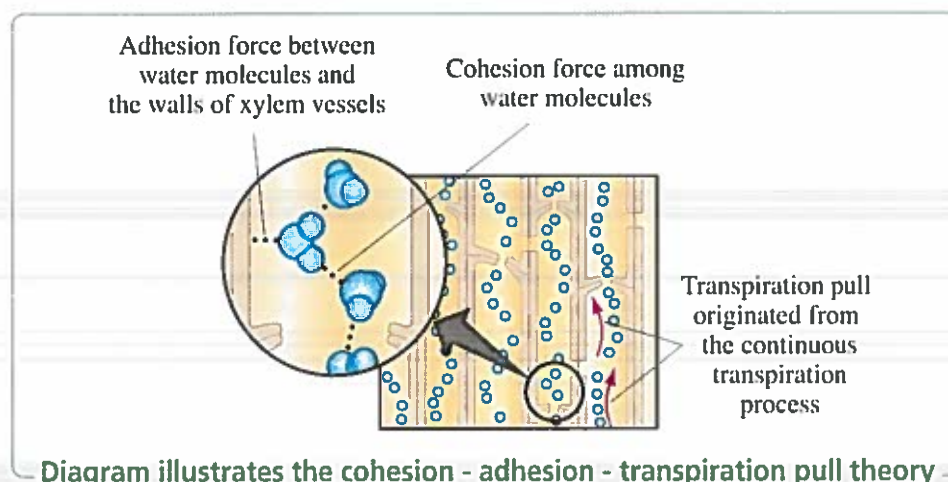
- Water rises by the capillarity phenomenon in the capillary tubes, such as the xylem vessels whose diameter ranges from 0.2 mm to 0.5 mm.

### Defect of the theory

- Capillarity phenomenon is considered a weak secondary force for the ascent of sap, as the finest capillary tube doesn't allow the rise of water more than a height of 150 cm.

## 4 Cohesion - Adhesion - Transpiration pull theory

- The two scientists **H.H. Dixon** and **J. Joly** in 1895 established the principles of the cohesion - adhesion - transpiration pull theory, where they proved that "water is pulled by the leaf, due to the consumption of water in the metabolic processes, transpiration and evaporation in leaves".



- The theory is summarized in that the water column rises in the xylem vessels **depending upon three forces, as shown in the following table :**

The force	The evidence on the presence of this force	The conditions needed for water to have a high pulling force in the xylem vessels
<p>1</p> <p>Cohesion force among the molecules of water inside the xylem vessels and tracheids.</p>	<p>The presence of a continuous column of water inside the vessels.</p>	<p>The tubes must be free of any gases or air bubbles to avoid the break and descend of the water column.</p>
<p>2</p> <p>Adhesion force between the water molecules and the walls of xylem vessels.</p>	<p>Water column is held continuously against the effect of gravity.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Walls of the tubes must possess an adhesion force to attract water (colloidal nature).</li> </ul>
<p>3</p> <p>Transpiration pull which originated from the continuous transpiration in the leaves.</p>	<p>The presence of continuous attraction of the water column upward.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tubes must be capillary.</li> </ul>

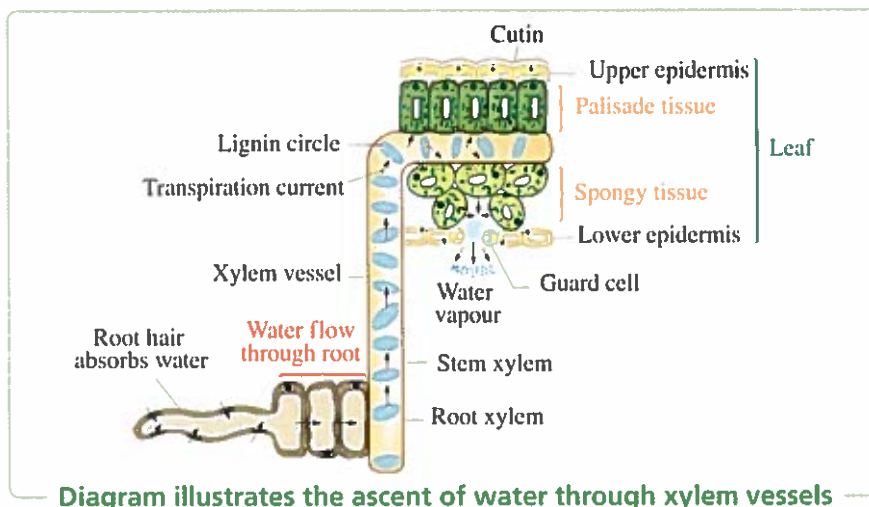
### Proving the theory validation

- The plant physiologists had proved that these forces are the main forces that work on pulling water in the stem for a very high distances which reach about 100 m.

### Note

When some seedlings are transplanted from a nursery to an open soil, they fail to grow, if they exposed to Sun for a long time without planting, because of the entry of gases or formation of air bubbles inside the conducting tubes (xylem vessels and tracheids), causing the break of cohesion of water column molecules inside these tubes, preventing the arrival of sap and finally the seedlings wilt and die.

### Path of sap ascent from the root to the leaves





- 1 Leaves lose the water vapour that is present in the air chambers in the transpiration process through the stomata which lessens the water concentration (humidity) in the air chamber above the stomata in the leaf.
- 2 The air chambers pull water from the cells of mesophyll tissue that surround the stomata to compensate their water loss, as a result of increasing the evaporation process.
- 3 The water content of the mesophyll tissue cells will decrease and their sap concentration will increase.
- 4 The mesophyll tissue's cells will attract water from the surrounding cells, till reaching the xylem vessels in the venules and veins, then finally from the midrib of the leaf.
- 5 Water that is present in the xylem vessels will be subjected to a great pulling force, therefore water will ascend through xylem vessels and tracheids of both stem and root, as they are connected to each other.

**Note**

The transpiration pull that is originated from the transpiration in the leaf will not only pull-up water from the vascular cylinder of root, but it will also help in the lateral pull of water from the root hairs.

### 3 Test yourself

**Answered**

Choose the correct answer :

- 1 What happens to the root pressure rate, on increasing the concentration of salts in soil ?  
 (a) It decreases.      (b) It increases.      (c) It is not affected.      (d) It vanishes.
- 2 Which of the following plants isn't exposed to exudation when its stem is cut close to the soil surface ?  
 (a) Maize.      (b) Bean.      (c) *Pinus*.      (d) Wheat.
- 3 Which of the following statements doesn't agree with the nature of cellulose ?  
 (a) It has a colloidal nature.  
 (b) It is a supportive substance.  
 (c) Its presence is limited on the walls of xylem vessels.  
 (d) It is a permeable substance for water and solutes.
- 4 Water in plant translocates .....  
 (a) faster at noon and slower at night.      (b) slower at noon and faster at night.  
 (c) slowly at noon and night.      (d) very fast at noon and night.
- 5 Which of the following plants would you expect that its leaf stomata found on the upper surface only ?  
 (a) Bean.      (b) Corn.      (c) Water hyacinth.      (d) Camphor.



## Second Transport of the manufactured food from the leaf to all the plant parts

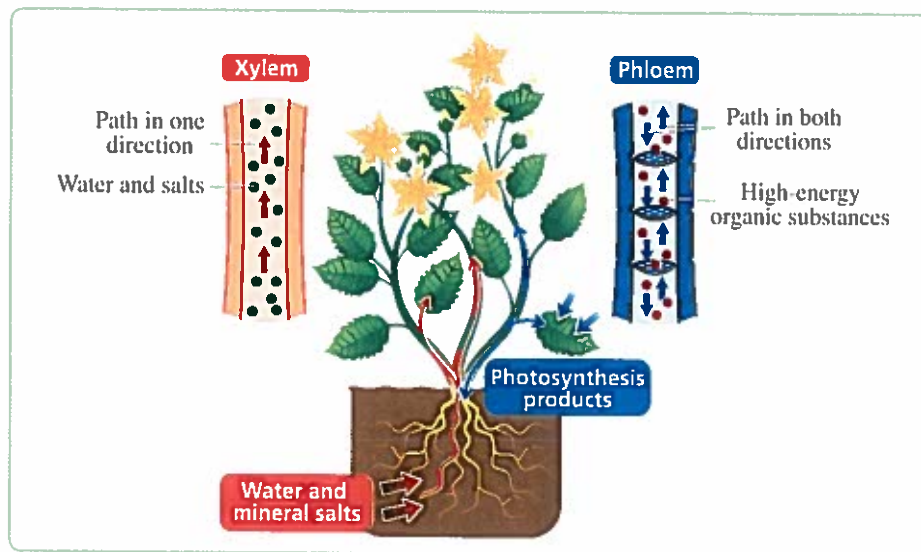
To feed the buds, flowers and fruits.

### Upwards

The phloem translocates the manufactured food "sap" (which consists of high-energy organic substances that are produced by the leaf during photosynthesis) in all directions :

### Downwards

To feed the stem and the root system.



### Role of sieve tubes in the transportation of ready-made food substances

- Experiments had proved the role of sieve tubes in the transport of ready-made food substances to all the plant parts, **as follows** :



### Experiment 1 The two scientists Rapeden and Bohr in 1945

#### 1. Steps :

- (1) They supplied a green bean leaf with  $\text{CO}_2$  containing a radioactive carbon ( $^{14}\text{C}$ ), in order to carry out photosynthesis process.
- (2) They traced the path of the radioactive carbohydrates in the plant.

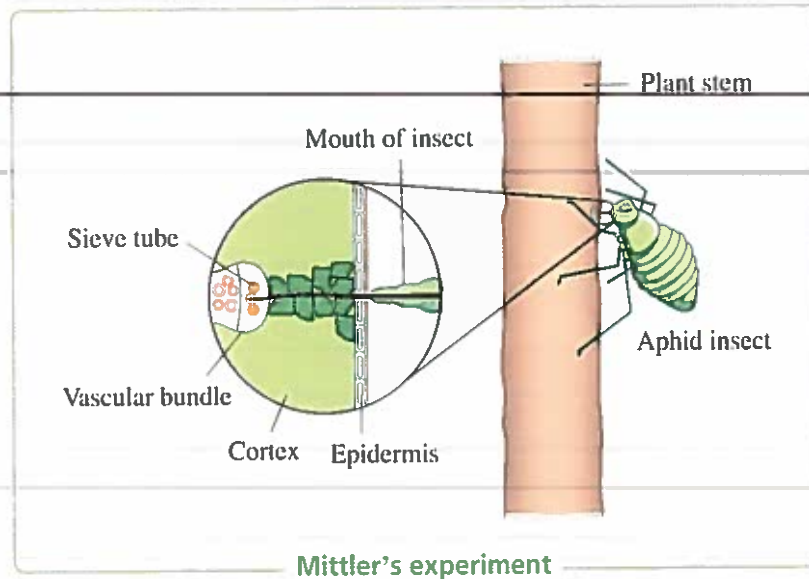
#### 2. Observation :

- (1) The plant produced radioactive carbohydrates.
- (2) Carbohydrates were translocated upwards and downwards in the stem.



## Experiment 2 The scientist Mittler

- He used an aphid insect (that feeds on the ready-made food of plant) to collect the contents of sieve tubes and identify these contents.



### 1. Steps :

- (1) The insect was allowed to insert its piercing mouthpart into the tissues of plant, until it reached the sieve tubes.
- (2) He separated the whole body of insect from its mouthpart during its feeding. So, he managed to collect a sample of the sieve tubes' contents, then he analyzed the sample.
- (3) He sectioned the region of plant tissue where the proboscis of insect was inserted.

### 2. Observation :

- (1) Food passes through the mouth of insect to its stomach.
- (2) The sample of sieve tubes consists of organic substances (sucrose and amino acids) which are manufactured in the leaves.
- (3) The proboscis appeared to be inserted in a sieve tube of the plant phloem.

### 3. Conclusion :

The sap that was absorbed by the insect is the sap of phloem which is transported to all the plant parts through the sieve tubes.

## Mechanism of organic substances transport in the phloem

- In 1961, the two scientists **Thain** and **Canny** could see long cytoplasmic threads which contain organic substances inside the sieve tube, and these threads extend from one tube to another through the tiny pores of sieve plates. The active circular movement of cytoplasm inside the sieve tubes and companion cells that transport the organic food substances is known as "**cytoplasmic streaming**".
- Therefore, we can explain the mechanism of organic substances transport in the phloem on the basis of cytoplasmic streaming, as follows :
 
  - ① The organic substances are translocated from one end of the sieve tube to the other end during the cytoplasmic streaming.
  - ② These substances pass to the neighbouring sieve tube through the **cytoplasmic threads** which pass from one tube to another through the pores of sieve plates.
- They explained that the process of transportation in the phloem is an **active process**, as this activity needs energy carrier (ATP) molecules which are formed abundantly in the companion cells and transport from them through the **plasmodesmata** that connect the cytoplasm of companion cells with the cytoplasm of sieve tubes.

### The evidence of the validity of the cytoplasmic streaming theory is :

- When the temperature is decreased or in case of oxygen deficiency in the cells, the cytoplasm movement and its streaming in the sieve tubes slow down, and the active transport process in the phloem is reduced.



### Key Point

When the soil is saturated with water as a result of the excessive irrigation for the plant, the transport process decreases in phloem, because the excess water replaces the air that is found among the soil particles. Therefore, the oxygen decreases or vanishes in the plant cells, leading to the slowing down of the cytoplasm movement and its streaming in the sieve tubes, and the active transport process decreases.



### Test yourself

Answered

Choose the correct answer :

What is the rate of the occurrence of transport process in the plants that live in moderate regions with respect to the plants which live in cold regions ?

- |                         |                                  |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (a) The rate is higher. | (b) The rate is lower.           |
| (c) The rate is equal.  | (d) The rate can't be predicted. |

# Transport in Plant

To watch videos of  
how to answer  
questions use the App

معك  
Hak App



The questions signed by \* are answered in detail.

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

Interactive test

First

## Multiple Choice Questions

\* Transport in lower (primitive) and higher plants.

\* Structure of the plant stem.

1 In the opposite table :

Which of the following living organisms represent (X), (Y) and (Z) respectively ?

- (a) Hawk – Bean – *Spirogyra*.
- (b) Bean – *Spirogyra* – Hawk.
- (c) *Spirogyra* – Bean – Hawk.
- (d) Hawk – *Spirogyra* – Bean.

Living  
organism

Mechanism of transport

(X)

The raw materials are transferred by diffusion and active transport.

(Y)

Gases are transferred by diffusion, while raw materials are transferred through specialized transport tissues.

(Z)

Gases and food substances are transferred through a specialized transport system.

2 *Chlamydomonas* alga shares *Spirogyra* alga in that each of them .....

- (a) contains specialized transport tissues.
- (b) transfers gases to it from the surrounding medium by diffusion.
- (c) transfers the digested food substances through it by active transport.
- (d) transfers gases and digested food substances through it by diffusion and active transport.

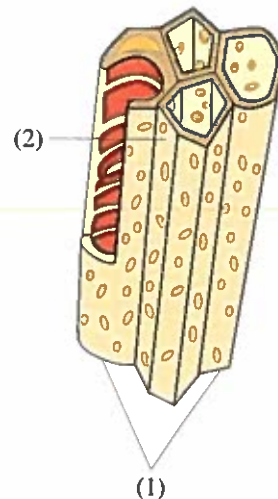
3 On staining a transverse section of a dicot plant stem with iodine solution, which of the following appears with dark blue colour ?

- (a) Xylem vessels.
- (b) Companion cells of phloem.
- (c) Cambium.
- (d) The innermost row of cells in cortex.

4 Each of the xylem tissue and the phloem tissue performs the transport process in plant, which of the following statements represents the best description for this process ?

- (a) Xylem transports water upward, while phloem transports food downward.
- (b) Xylem transports water and salts upward, while phloem transports the ready-made sap downward.
- (c) Xylem transports water and salts, while phloem transports the ready-made sap.
- (d) Xylem transports the ready-made sap upward, while phloem transports water and salts downward.

- 5 Which of the following statements doesn't agree with the cells forming the outer layer of each of the plant stem and leaf ?
- (a) One row of parenchyma cells.
  - (b) Adjacent barrel-shaped cells.
  - (c) Coated cells with a layer that is impermeable to water.
  - (d) Barrel-shaped cells that have a storage function.
- 6 Which of the following participate(s) mainly in the transport of water in the plants stems ?
- (a) Xylem tissue.
  - (b) Vascular bundles.
  - (c) Vessels only.
  - (d) Tracheids only.
- 7 Which of the following describes the structure of the stem in a dicot plant ?
- (a) It contains a ring-shaped vascular bundle.
  - (b) It contains central vascular cells.
  - (c) It contains several layers of xylem that are surrounded by a ring of phloem.
  - (d) It contains vascular bundles that are scattered through the pith tissue.
- 8 The following figure shows a group of cells that are adapted to perform a certain function :
- (1) What do the cells no. (1) and (2) represent respectively ?
- (a) Vessels and tracheids.
  - (b) Sieve tubes and companion cells.
  - (c) Epidermal cells and cortex cells.
  - (d) Sclerenchyma cells and medullary rays.
- (2) What is the function of cells no. (1) and (2) ?
- (a) Transporting food substances.
  - (b) Transporting water.
  - (c) Manufacturing food.
  - (d) Storing food.
- (3) Cells no. (1) share cells no. (2) in .....
- (a) performing photosynthesis process.
  - (b) their transverse section.
  - (c) their thickening with cutin.
  - (d) the stages of their formation.





9 In the opposite figure :

(1) What happens if tissue no. (1) is removed ?

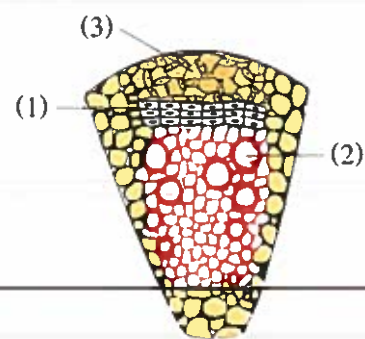
- a Xylem will not be formed.
- b Phloem will not be formed.
- c Nothing will occur.
- d Each of the xylem and phloem will not be formed.

(2) Why is tissue no. (2) considered non-living ?

- a Because it is a xylem tissue.
- b Because its cell walls are thick.
- c Because its cells don't contain nucleus or cytoplasm.
- d Because it can't absorb water.

(3) Which of the following is considered from the functions of tissue no. (3) ?

- a Transporting water and salts only.
- b Transporting high-energy food only.
- c Transporting water, salts and high-energy food to all the plant parts.
- d Storing food.



10 Which of the following doesn't consist of parenchyma cells ?

- a Stem's epidermis.
- b Leaf's epidermis.
- c Cambium tissue.
- d Stem's pith.

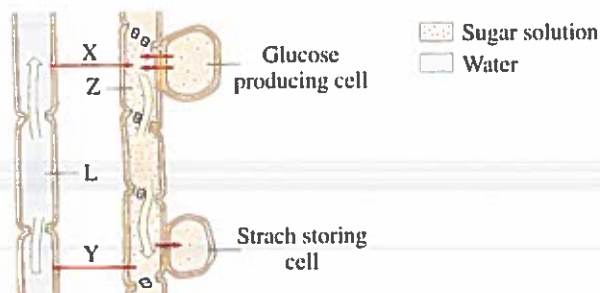
11 From the opposite figure :

(1) What does letter (Z) represent ?

- a Companion cell.
- b Sieve tube.
- c Xylem vessel.
- d Root hair.

(2) What does letter (L) represent ?

- a Companion cell.
- b Sieve tube.
- c Xylem vessel.
- d Root hair.



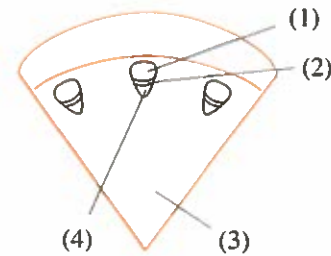
**12** The opposite figure represents a section in a plant stem :

**(1) What is the number of the tissue that is specialized in transporting the organic food substances to the different plant parts ?**

- a (1).                      b (2).
- c (3).                      d (4).

**(2) What is the number of the tissue that shares indirectly in the transport process ?**

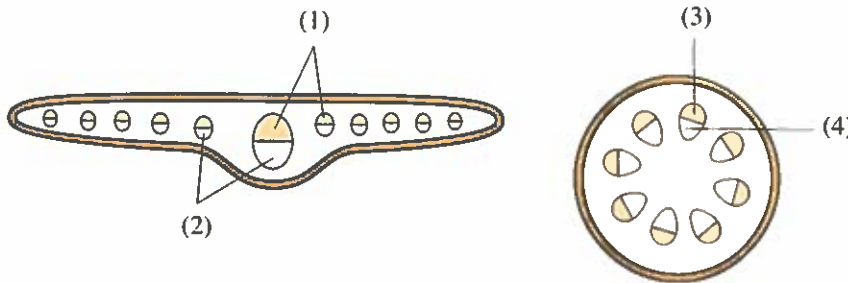
- a (1).                      b (2).
- c (3).                      d (4).



**13** What is the similarity between the xylem tissue and phloem tissue in plants' stems?

- ☐ a The walls of their cells contain cutin.
- ☐ b Each of them is arisen from the same type of cells.
- ☐ c Each of them transports the high-energy substances.
- ☐ d Each of them transports the low-energy substances.

**14** The two following figures illustrate two transverse sections in the tissues that transport water and the tissues that transport sucrose in two plant parts :



**(1) Which of the following tissues transport water ?**

- ☐ a (1) and (3).                      ☐ b (2) and (4).  
☐ c (2) and (3).                      ☐ d (1) and (4).

**(2) Which of the following tissues transport sucrose ?**

- ☐ a (1) and (3).
 ☐ b (2) and (4).
- ☐ c (2) and (3).
 ☐ d (1) and (4).

**15** Which of the following do you expect to happen, when removing the active meristematic cells from a green herbaceous plant stem ?

- (a) Water and salts transport stops.      (b)  $\text{CO}_2$  gas evolving stops.  
 (c) Photosynthesis process stops.  
 (d) Formation of specialized vascular tissues stops.

16 \* How far are these statements "water transport process in plant takes place through a group of living tissues", "organic food substances transport process in plant takes place through a group of non-living tissues" correct ?

- a The two statements are correct.
- b The two statements are wrong.
- c The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.
- d The first statement is wrong and the second statement is correct.

17 \* Which of the following tissues is present in the plant stem and isn't present in the leaf ?

- a Xylem.
- b Phloem.
- c Cambium.
- d Epidermis.

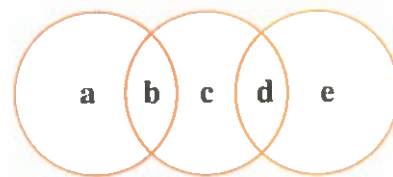
18 \* If you have two plants of the same type, through which of the following sections you can determine which plant is older than the other ?

- a A longitudinal section in the midrib of the leaf.
- b A transverse section in the leaf.
- c A longitudinal section in the stem.
- d A transverse section in the stem.

19 \* Which of the following tissues have the ability to divide ?

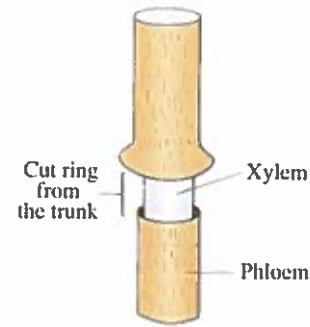
- a Tracheids.
- b Xylem vessels.
- c Sieve tubes.
- d Companion cells.

20 \* The opposite diagram shows the relation between the sieve tubes, xylem vessels and companion cells, which of the following choices in the following table represents the symbols (a : e) ?



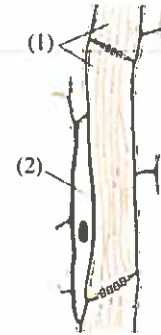
	a	b	c	d	e
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">a</span>	Companion cells	Cytoplasm	Sieve tubes	Absence of nucleus	Xylem vessels
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">b</span>	Companion cells	Nucleus	Sieve tubes	Cytoplasm	Xylem vessels
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">c</span>	Sieve tubes	Mitochondria	Companion cells	Nucleus	Xylem vessels
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">d</span>	Xylem vessels	Absence of cytoplasm	Sieve tubes	Sap vacuole	Companion cells

- 21 \* In the opposite figure, when removing a ring from the plant's trunk, which of the following is expected to happen ?
- Water will not reach the roots.
  - Water will not reach the leaves.
  - Dissolved solutes will not reach the leaves.
  - Amino acids and sugar will not be transported to roots.



### Mechanism of transport in higher plants

- 22 In the opposite figure :



- Which of the following won't happen on removing structure no. (2) ?
    - The tissue will lose its source of energy.
    - The tissue won't be able to divide.
    - The growth of the tissue will stop.
    - The tissue changes into xylem tissue.
  - Structure no. (1) shares structure no. (2) in containing .....
    - ribosomes.
    - cytoplasm.
    - mitochondria.
    - nucleus.
  - Which of the following substances pass(es) from cell no. (1) to cell no. (2) through the cytoplasmic strands ?
    - ATP
    - Salts.
    - Water.
    - Glucose.
- 23 When air bubbles entered in the xylem vessels, the plant loses ..... force.
- adhesion
  - pulling
  - cohesion
  - root pressure
- 24 Which of the following determines the rate of water movement from the roots to the leaves ?
- Water absorption through the root hairs' cells.
  - The low pressure of water fullness in leaves.
  - Water diffusion through stomata.
  - Water evaporation from the mesophyll tissue cells.
- 25 Which of the following substances have the ability to absorb water, but they are insoluble in it ?
- Cellulose and cutin.
  - Pectin and suberin.
  - Pectin and lignin.
  - Cellulose and suberin.

26 Which of the following factors helps in accomplishing the cultivation of a plant in a pot after keeping it in a glass of water for two days ?

- (a) Leaving the plant exposed to the Sun for a longer period of time.
- (b) Planting its roots in a moist soil.
- (c) Planting its roots directly in a dry soil.
- (d) Covering the vegetative system with a bag before its planting.

27 Which of the following statements doesn't agree with the nature of lignin ?

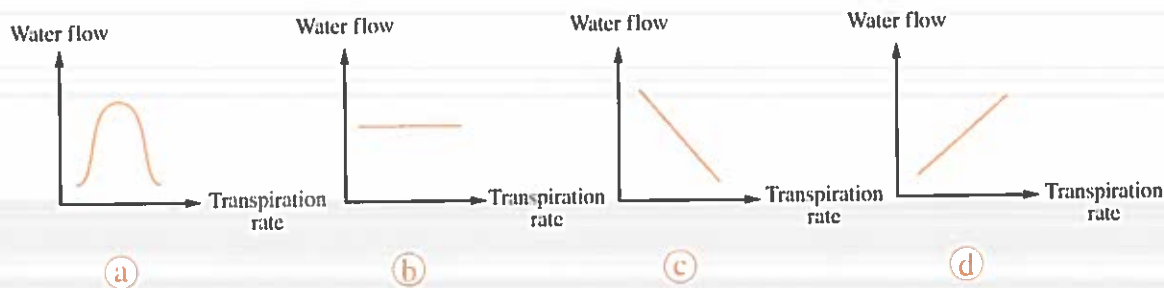
- (a) It is a substance with a colloidal nature that has the ability to imbibe water.
- (b) It may take many shapes, such as spiral and annular inside the xylem vessel.
- (c) It is a supportive substance that strengthens the xylem vessel and prevents its collapse.
- (d) It is a permeable substance to water and solutes.

28 If the following diagram represents the direction of movement of food substances inside a tree, which of the following choices in the table expresses (A), (B) and (C) correctly ?

(A)  $\xrightarrow{\text{Inorganic substance}}$  (B)  $\xrightarrow{\text{Organic substance}}$  (C)

	(A)	(B)	(C)
(a)	Root	Stem	Leaf
(b)	Leaf	Stem	Root
(c)	Leaf	Root	Stem
(d)	Root	Leaf	Stem

29 Which of the following graphs illustrates the relation between the transpiration rate and the water flow in the stem during the first day hours ?





30 Which of the following **doesn't** agree with keeping the water columns held continuously inside the xylem vessels of the plant ?

- (a) The adhesion force among water molecules.
- (b) The presence of cellulose substance in its structure.
- (c) The presence of lignin substance in its structure.
- (d) The xylem vessels are devoid of bubbles.

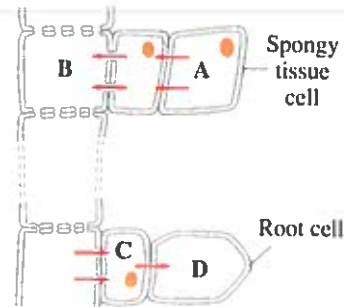
31 From the opposite figure :

(1) Which of the following produces the energy required for the sugar transport through the plant ?

- (a) (A).
- (b) (B).
- (c) (C).
- (d) (D).

(2) Which of the following contain the highest concentration of sucrose ?

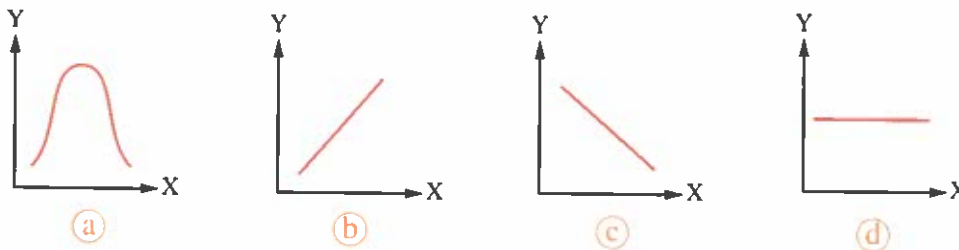
- (a) (A).
- (b) (B).
- (c) (C).
- (d) (D).



32 Which of the following the colloidal nature of xylem vessels' walls **doesn't** play a role in it ?

- (a) The occurrence of imbibition phenomenon.
- (b) The presence of cohesion force.
- (c) The existence of water columns held against the effect of gravity.
- (d) The presence of adhesion force.

33 Which of the following graphs shows the relation between the rate of the sap ascent in plant (Y) and the rate of photosynthesis (X) ?



34 Which of the following elements is/are **not** found in the food of aphid insect, when it is examined ?

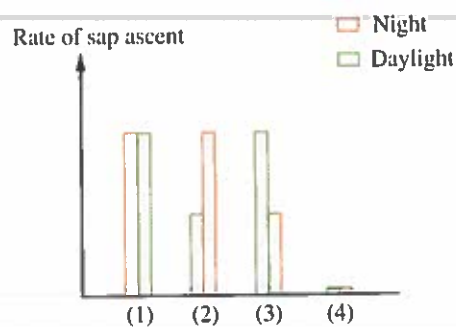
- (a) Amino acids.
- (b) Fatty acids.
- (c) Sucrose.
- (d) Water.

**35** Which of the following works on increasing the active transport process in the phloem ?

- (a) Decreasing the temperature and oxygen deficiency.
- (b) Decreasing the temperature and increasing oxygen.
- (c) Increasing both the temperature and the concentration of oxygen.
- (d) Increasing the temperature and decreasing oxygen.

**36** \* From the opposite graph, what is the letter representing the rate of sap (water and salts) ascent in plant during the day compared to the night ?

- (a) (1).
- (b) (2).
- (c) (3).
- (d) (4).



**37** \* A plant was irrigated using water containing radioactive hydrogen isotope ( $^3\text{H}$ ), and the plant was put in normal conditions with respect to light, after several days where will we find ( $^3\text{H}$ ) ?

- (a) In xylem only.
- (b) In phloem only.
- (c) In xylem and phloem.
- (d) In leaves' air chambers.

**38** \* A farmer sprayed the cotton crop leaves with an insecticide, how can this insecticide reach the roots of this plant after its diffusion into the plant tissues ?

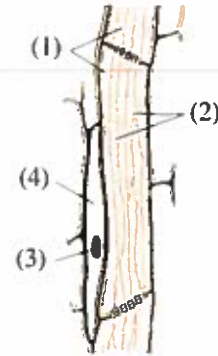
- (a) By diffusion through xylem.
- (b) By active transport through xylem.
- (c) By diffusion through phloem.
- (d) By active transport through phloem.

**39** \* What is the main source of energy that helps in the ascent of water in the plant stem ?

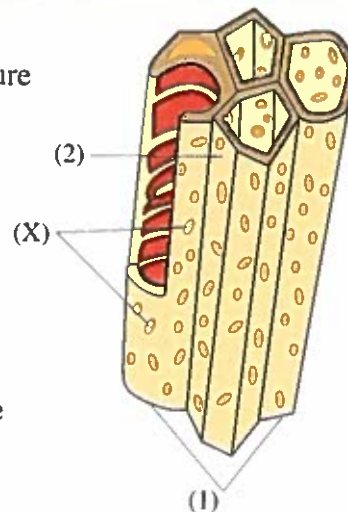
- (a) The difference in osmosis between the sap that is present in the cell and water that is present in the soil.
- (b) The absorbed heat from the Sun.
- (c) The light absorbed by chlorophyll.
- (d) The combustion of sugar that resulted from photosynthesis.

## Second Miscellaneous Questions

- 1 "The *Spirogyra* alga contains developed vascular bundles".  
How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.
- 2 Write what this statement indicates : "Non-living plant structures whose inner surface nature is different from one plant to another".
- 3 From the opposite figure :
  - (a) What is the importance of structures no. (2) and (4) ?
  - (b) What is the role of plasmodesmata between the two structures no. (1) and (4) ?
  - (c) What happens in case of the absence of structure no. (3) ?
- 4 What happens in case of : the absence of meristematic cells from the stem of a new dicot plant ?
- 5 Explain : the root cells obtain their food, although they don't contain chlorophyll and are not exposed to light.
- 6 Explain : although xylem vessels and tracheids are non-living tissues, xylem tissue contains nuclei.
- 7 The opposite figure represents two structures for transporting water and salts in the plant :



- (a) Deduce the reason for non-collapsing of the wall of structure no. (1) inward.
- (b) Determine which of the two structures no. (1) or (2) has a greater role in the transport process in the plant. Explain your answer.
- (c) Structure no. (1) is characterized by several characteristics that had a role in explaining the forces which work on the ascent of sap in the plant. Explain this "two points are enough".
- (d) What happens in case of the absence of structure (X) ?



**8** Deduce how the following structures are suitable for their functions :

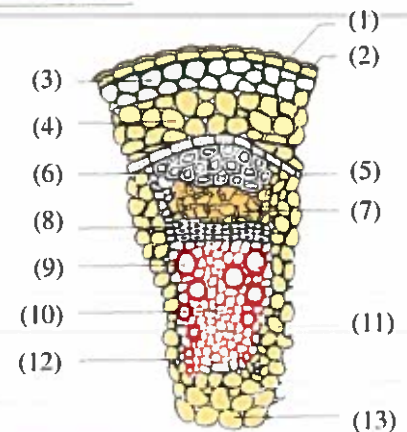
- (a) Xylem vessels, "two points are enough".  
 (b) Tracheids. (c) Phloem.

**9** "In plants, there are tissues that are related to the transport function". Determine :

- (a) The name of these tissues.  
 (b) The type of substances that are transported through these tissues.  
 (c) The transport direction in each of these tissues.

**10** The opposite figure illustrates the internal structure of the plant stem :

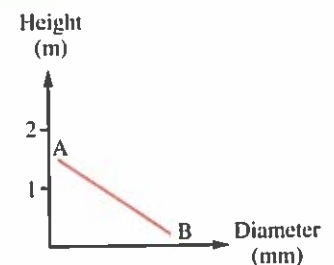
- (a) What is the function of the two structures no. (3) and (5) ?  
 (b) Determine the name and number of the non-living structures that are penetrated by living cells.  
 (c) The presence of the parenchyma tissue sites are numerous in this figure. Illustrate this.



**11** Explain : there are many supportive cells for the cotton plant stem that differ in their sites.

**12** The opposite graph illustrates the relation between the water height in xylem vessels and the diameter of these vessels using a physical property :

- (a) Explain the curve (AB).  
 (b) Why didn't the curve elevate above (A) ?  
 (c) What do you expect to happen if the diameter of the vessels was more than 1 cm ?



**13** Give reason for : the hydrogen bonds that bind the water molecules with each other have a role in the ascent of the sap in plant.

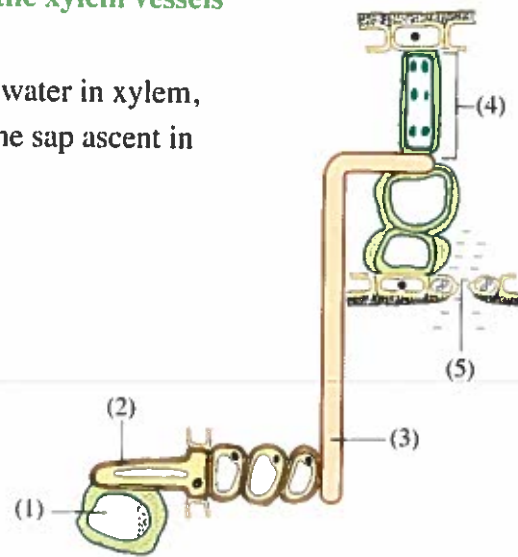
**14** Give reason for : the nature of xylem plays a role in the ascent of water inside the xylem vessels.

**15** "Water is transferred from the root to the leaves, according to the following arrangement : cortex – stomata – mesophyll tissue – root hair – xylem". How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.

**16** Explain : the radioactive elements have an important role in studying the transport process in bean plant.

**17** The opposite figure illustrates a diagram for the xylem vessels in a dicot plant :

- Mention** three forces acting on the ascent of water in xylem, in the light of your study for the theories of the sap ascent in the plant.
- Deduce the functional suitability for :**  
Structures no. (2) and (4).
- What happens in case of cutting** the plant at part no. (3) ?



**18** "Bean plant absorbs water and mineral salts by roots, and obtains carbon dioxide gas through stomata". In the light of this :

- Mention** the site in which carbon dioxide gas diffuses.
- Follow** the route that is passed by water, salts and carbon dioxide, till reaching the site of their consumption in the plant.
- Determine** the type of compounds that are formed as the final products.

**19** "Capillarity phenomenon and transpiration process play an important role in water movement through the plant". Illustrate which of these two processes participates more in the movement of water upward in the tree trunk. Explain your answer.

**20** "The mechanism of transporting organic materials in phloem has been explained on the basis of cytoplasmic streaming". How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.

**21** What is the relation between : companion cells and cytoplasmic streaming movement ?

**22** What is the relation between : obtaining oxygen and transport process in the plant ?

**23** Explain : the transport process in plant is affected by external factors.

**24** Give reason for : the slow movement of cytoplasm and its streaming in the sieve tubes may occur.



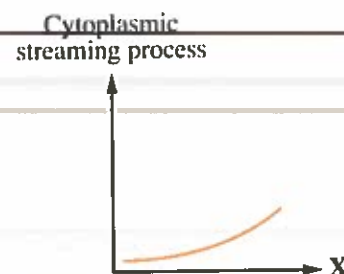
## New Types of questions?

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

**Choose two correct answers for the following questions :**

**1** From the opposite graph, what do you expect that the (X) axis represent ?

- (a) Temperature.
- (b) The soil type.
- (c) The salts concentration in the soil.
- (d) The soil water content.
- (e) The oxygen concentration.



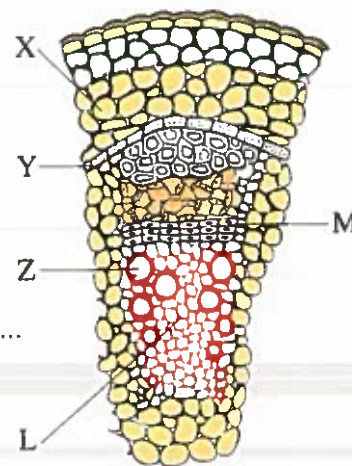
**2** Which of the following statements are correct about transport in plant ?

- (a) Sucrose sugar moves in both directions in phloem.
- (b) Sugars only transfer in phloem.
- (c) Water only transfers in xylem vessels.
- (d) Transport process in phloem needs the presence of ATP molecules.
- (e) Transport process in xylem needs the presence of ATP molecules.

**Choose from the list what suits the spaces :**

**3** From the opposite figure which illustrates the internal structure in a new dicot plant stem :

- The tissue that contains high content of carbohydrates is : ..... (1) .....
- The tissue that has a supporting function is : ..... (2) .....



X
Y
Z
L
M



## Human Transport System (Circulatory System)

- Animals obtain their requirements of energy in the form of food which is digested, then soluble food substances are absorbed, but the problem of their transport and distribution to various tissues which are far away from the surface of absorption still remains.

**- In small animals (as Protozoa and Hydra) :**

Both respiratory gases and food substances are transported by diffusion, therefore these small animals don't need specialized transport systems.

**- In bigger and more complicated animals :**

Diffusion is not sufficient for the transportation of food and oxygen to various tissues. Therefore, the presence of a specialized transport system is essential in these animals.



### Key Point

The transport process in the living organism depends on the degree of its evolution and its body complexity.

**• Transport in human :**

The process of transport in the human body takes place through two systems which are closely connected with each other, **these systems are :**

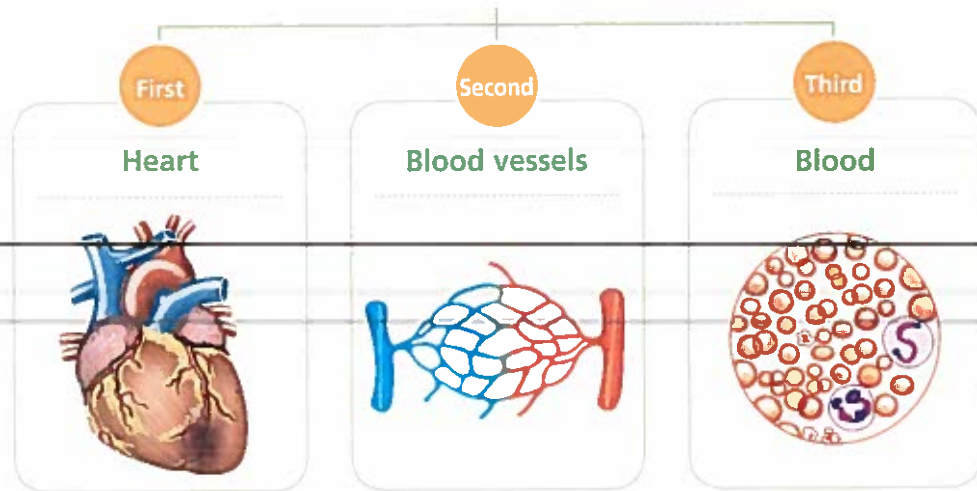
- **Circulatory system (Blood vascular system).**
- **Lymphatic system.**

### Circulatory system



- Circulatory system in human is considered from the closed type, as the heart and blood vessels are connected together in a complete cycle through which the blood passes and never get out from it to the body cavity.

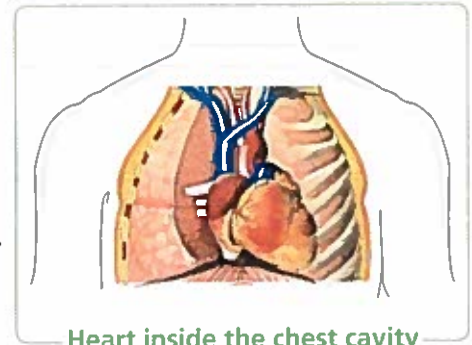
## Structure of the human circulatory system



### First Heart

#### Description

- It is a hollow muscular organ which lies nearly in the middle of the chest cavity (slightly towards the left).
- It is surrounded by the pericardium membrane to protect the heart and facilitate its action (movement).
- The heart beats (contracts and relaxes) regularly throughout the whole lifetime.



Heart inside the chest cavity

#### Structure

- The heart consists of 4 chambers.

The heart is divided

Transversely into

Longitudinally into two sides by means of muscular walls

Atria (Auricles)

Ventricles

Right side

Left side

The upper two thin-walled muscular chambers which receive the blood.

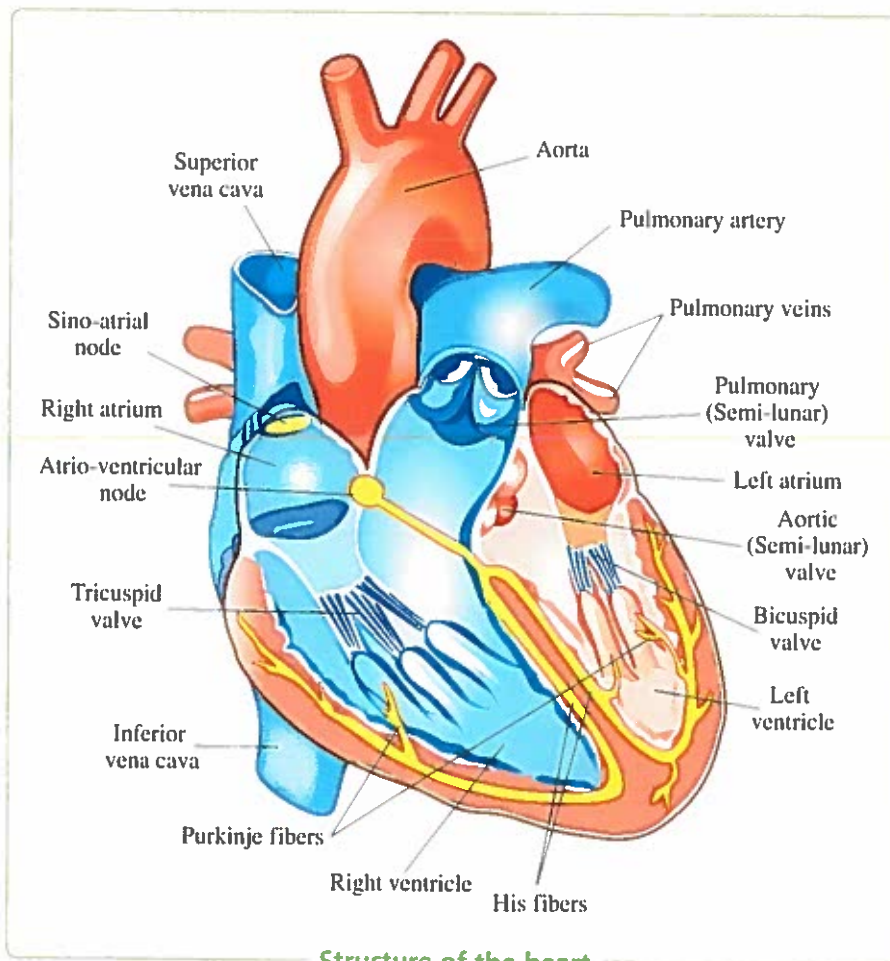
The lower two thick-walled muscular chambers that pump the blood.

Each of them has an atrium and a ventricle that are connected together through an opening which is guarded by a valve with thin flaps.



• Heart valves which include :

Type	Location	Function
<b>1</b> <b>Right tricuspid valve</b> (consists of 3 flaps) :	Lies between the right atrium and right ventricle.	Allows the blood to pass from the atrium to the opposite ventricle in one direction, (i.e. it prevents the blood to return back to the atrium).
<b>2</b> <b>Left bicuspid valve</b> <b>"Mitral valve"</b> (consists of 2 flaps) :	Lies between the left atrium and left ventricle.	
<b>3</b> <b>Semi-lunar valves</b> <b>"Aortic valve &amp; pulmonary valve"</b> :	Present at the connection of the heart with both the aorta and the pulmonary artery.	Allow the blood to pass from the two ventricles to inside the arteries in one direction, (i.e. they prevent the blood to return back to the two ventricles).



Structure of the heart



## Heartbeats



- The rhythmic and regular heartbeats are **originated from** the cardiac tissue itself, **because** the cardiac muscle is **spontaneous**, as well as it had been proven that the heart continues beating regularly, even after it has been disconnected completely from the body and from the nerves that are connected to it.

### Origin of heartbeats

- The regular rhythm of heartbeat is related to the presence of **sino-atrial node** which is :
  - A specialized bundle of muscular fibers that is buried in the right atrial wall and near to the site of its connection with the large veins.
  - **Considered the pacemaker of heart**, as it beats with a regular rate of 70 beat/minute (normal rate), and it is connected with two nerves that affect this normal rate, **which are** :
    - A nerve that **decreases** the rate of heartbeats is known as

#### Note

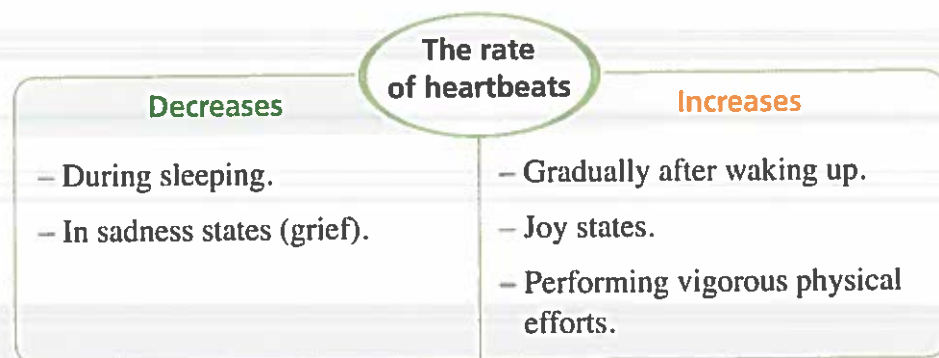
In the human normal age, the heart beats by a range of 70 beat/minute, therefore it pumps 5 liters of blood in each minute which is equal to the total amount of blood in the body.

**"Parasympathetic nerve".**

- A nerve that **increases** the rate of heartbeats is known as

**"Sympathetic nerve".**

So, the number of heartbeats changes according to the physical or psychological states of the body, **for example** :

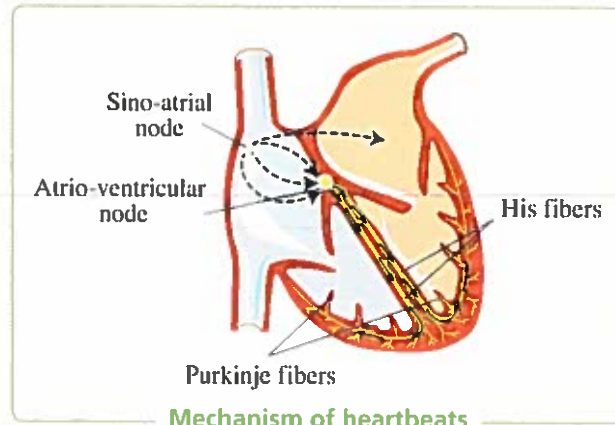




## Mechanism of heartbeats



- ① Sino-atrial node sends the contraction impulse spontaneously, therefore it stimulates the muscles of atria to contract.
- ② The electrical nerve impulse reaches the **atrio-ventricular node** that is present at the site of connection of atria with ventricles.
- ③ The impulse spreads rapidly from the atrio-ventricular node through special fibers (**His fibers**), then spreads from the inter-ventricular septum to the wall of both ventricles through **purkinje fibers**, where it stimulates their muscles to contract.



Mechanism of heartbeats

## Sound of heartbeats

- We can distinguish heartbeats into two sounds, as follows :

- ① **Long and low-pitched (Lubb) sound** : due to the closure of the two valves between the atria and ventricles during the ventricular contraction.
- ② **Short and high-pitched (Dupp) sound** : due to the closure of the aortic and pulmonary valves during the ventricular relaxation.

## 1 Test yourself

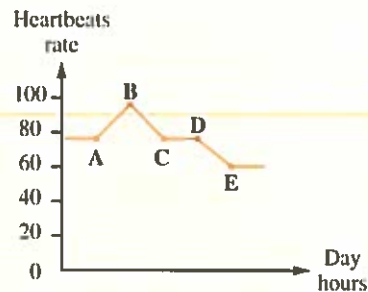
Choose the correct answer :

- 1 Study the opposite graph which illustrates the rate of heartbeats of a person during the day. What is the time period that represents performing that person a physical exercise ?

- (a) AB                      (b) DE                      (c) BC                      (d) CD

- 2 What is the reason for the return back of a part of the blood to the left atrium during the contraction of the ventricles ?

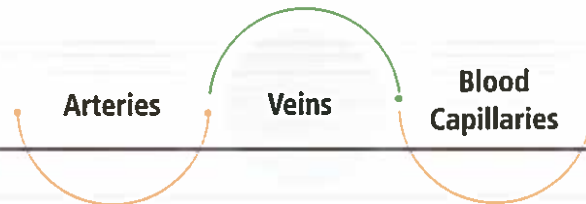
- (a) Narrowing the mitral valve.                      (b) Narrowing the pulmonary valve.  
 (c) The mitral valve regurgitation (backward flow).  
 (d) The pulmonary valve regurgitation (backward flow).



Answered

## Second Blood Vessels

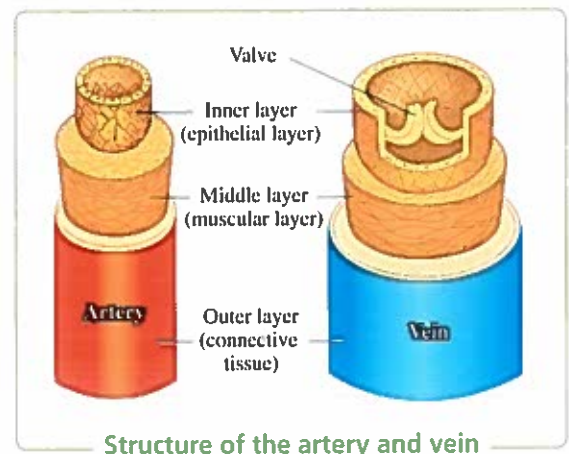
- The blood vessels in the human body include :



### 1 Arteries

- They are vessels that carry the blood from the heart to the other body parts and usually found buried among the body muscles.
- All arteries carry **oxygenated blood**, except **the pulmonary artery** which comes out from the right ventricle to the two lungs, carrying **deoxygenated blood**.
- The artery wall is built up of three layers, as follows :

- **Outer layer** : it consists of a connective tissue.
- **Middle layer** : it is relatively thick and consists of involuntary muscles which contract and relax under the control of nerve fibers, thus it can pulsate.
- **Inner layer (Endothelium)** : it consists of one row of thin epithelial cells that is topped with elastic fibers which provide the artery with the required elasticity to be able to push the blood during the contraction of ventricles.



Structure of the artery and vein

### 2 Veins

- They are vessels that carry the blood from all the body parts to the heart.
- They carry **deoxygenated blood**, except **the pulmonary veins** which open in the left atrium (auricle), carrying **oxygenated blood**.
- The vein wall is composed of the same layers of artery, but :
  - The elastic fibers are rare.
  - The middle layer is less thick. So, the vein wall is thinner than that of the artery, and it doesn't pulsate.

- There are valves in some veins that allow the passage of blood in the direction of the heart and prevent its back flow, such as the limbs veins that are near to the skin surface, and the sites of these valves can be observed in the arm veins, when the arm is tied tightly with a bandage (tourniquet) above the elbow.

This was done by the English doctor

"**William Harvey**" who had studied the blood circulation in the 17<sup>th</sup> century after being discovered by the Arab doctor "**Ibn Al-Nafis**" in the 10<sup>th</sup> century.



William Harvey



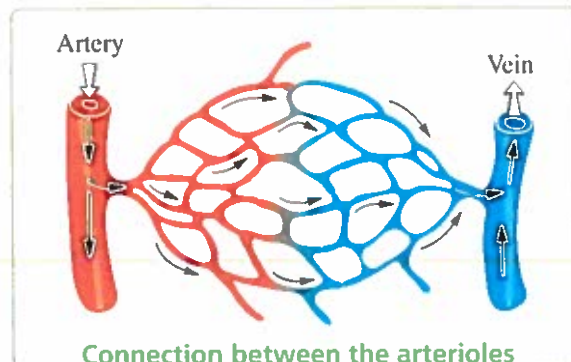
Ibn Al-Nafis

### 3 Capillaries

- They are tiny microscopic vessels which connect the artery branches (arterioles) with the vein branches (venules).
- This fact had been discovered by the Italian scientist "**Malpighi**" at the ends of the 17<sup>th</sup> century, and thus he completed the work of doctor "**Harvey**".
- Blood capillaries spread in the spaces between cells of all the body tissues to be able to reach all the cells and supply them with their requirements of food and oxygen.
- **Its wall** : it is very thin, consists of one cellular layer (whose thickness is about 0.00001 mm), and it is considered one row of thin epithelial cells with tiny pores between them which facilitates the quick exchange of substances between the blood and cells of tissues.
- **Its diameter** : ranges from 7 : 10 micron.



Malpighi



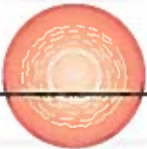
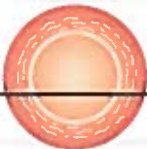

Connection between the arterioles and venules by the blood capillaries



Enlarged blood capillary

🎁 From the previous, we can compare between arteries, veins and blood capillaries, as follows :



P.O.C.	Arteries	Veins	Blood capillaries
			
Structure of the wall :	<b>Consists of three layers :</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>Outer</b> : connective tissue.</li> <li>- <b>Middle</b> : thick and consists of involuntary muscles.</li> <li>- <b>Inner</b> : one row of epithelial cells that is topped with elastic fibers.</li> </ul>	Has <b>the same</b> structure of the arterial wall, but has less elastic fibers (rare) and the middle layer is of lower thickness.	Consists of <b>one row</b> of thin epithelial cells with tiny pores between them.
Wall thickness :	<b>Thicker</b> than veins.	<b>Thinner</b> than arteries.	<b>Very thin.</b>
Ability to pulsate :	<b>Pulsate</b>	<b>Don't pulsate.</b>	<b>Don't pulsate</b>
Valves :	<b>Absent</b> (except in the beginning of the aortic and pulmonary arteries).	The presence of internal valves <b>in some veins</b> , especially those that are present near the skin.	<b>Absent</b>
Direction of blood :	From <b>heart</b> to all the body parts.	From <b>all the body parts</b> to heart.	From the <b>arterioles</b> to the venules.
Type of carried blood:	<b>Oxygenated blood</b> (light red), except the pulmonary artery.	<b>Deoxygenated blood</b> (dark red), except the pulmonary veins.	<b>Oxygenated blood</b> in the arterioles (except the arterioles inside the lung), and <b>deoxygenated</b> blood in the venules (except the venules inside the lung).
Location :	Found <b>buried</b> among the body <b>muscles</b> .	Some of them are present <b>near</b> the skin.	Spread in the <b>spaces</b> among cells of all the <b>body tissues</b> .

### Life application:

\* It is better to withdraw a blood sample from the vein than the artery in most medical tests, due to several reasons, which are :

- The vein is located near the skin surface, while artery is buried and located deeply and far away from the surface.
- The vein is wider than the artery. Therefore, the vein contains a larger amount of blood.
- The pressure in the vein is less than that in the artery. Therefore, the needle prick location during the withdrawal is healed faster than the artery after taking the sample.
- The artery contains the blood that carries oxygen and different nutritive elements, while the vein contains blood with carbon dioxide and the cell's wastes. So, withdrawing from the vein is better than that of artery for estimating the efficiency of the vital organs.

### 2 Test yourself

Answered

Choose the correct answer :

Which of the following blood vessels contains the highest level of  $O_2$  and the lowest level of  $CO_2$  ?

- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) Aorta.              | (b) Pulmonary artery.   |
| (c) Superior vena cava. | (d) Inferior vena cava. |

### Third Blood



- It is considered the principal medium in the transport process.
- **Colour** : red viscous fluid.
- **pH** : equals 7.4 (weak alkaline).
- **Volume** : about 5 - 6 liters of blood are present in the human body.
- **Structure** : fluid connective tissue that consists of :
  - Plasma.
  - Red blood cells (corpuscles).
  - White blood cells (corpuscles).
  - Blood platelets.



## 1 Plasma

- It is the interstitial substance in blood.
- It represents **54%** of the blood volume and **consists of** :
  - **90% water**.
  - **1% inorganic salts**, such as  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and  $(\text{HCO}_3)^-$  salts.
  - **7% proteins**, such as albumin, globulin and fibrinogen.
  - **2% other components**, such as the absorbed food products (sugars and amino acids), hormones, enzymes, antibodies and wastes (urea).

## 2 Red blood corpuscles (Erythrocytes) (RBCs)

- **Number** : they are considered the most abundant blood cells, as the body of :
  - Adult male contains **4 : 5 million cell/mm<sup>3</sup>** of the blood.
  - Adult female contains **4 : 4.5 million cell/mm<sup>3</sup>** of the blood.



RBCs

- **Description** : round-shaped corpuscles and biconcave.
- **Origin** : they are formed in the **bone marrow** of the adult human, where 100 million new red blood cells are produced every minute to replace the old ones.
- **Average age of the cell** : doesn't exceed 4 months, where they spend circulating inside the blood circulation about 172,000 times.
- **Destruction site** : they are destroyed after ending their short age in the liver, spleen and bone marrow.
- **Structure** : enucleated cells (have no nucleus) contain large amounts of "**haemoglobin**" which consists of protein and iron, and it gives the blood its red colour.
- **Functions** :

### Note

After the breaking down of old red blood corpuscles, the body restores the proteins that found in RBCs to use them in the formation of the bile juice which plays an important role in the digestion of fats.

### ① Transporting oxygen from the two lungs to all the body parts, as follows :

- The haemoglobin in the red blood corpuscle combines with the oxygen that is present in the two lungs to form a new light red substance "**oxyhaemoglobin**" (arteries blood).
- The oxyhaemoglobin leaves the oxygen, when it reaches the different body cells and changes into **haemoglobin** again.

### ② Transporting carbon dioxide from all the body parts to the two lungs, as follows :

- The haemoglobin combines with the carbon dioxide that is present inside the body cells to form a new dark red substance "**carbo-aminohaemoglobin**" (veins blood).

- Carbo-aminohaemoglobin leaves carbon dioxide, when it reaches the two lungs and changes into haemoglobin again.

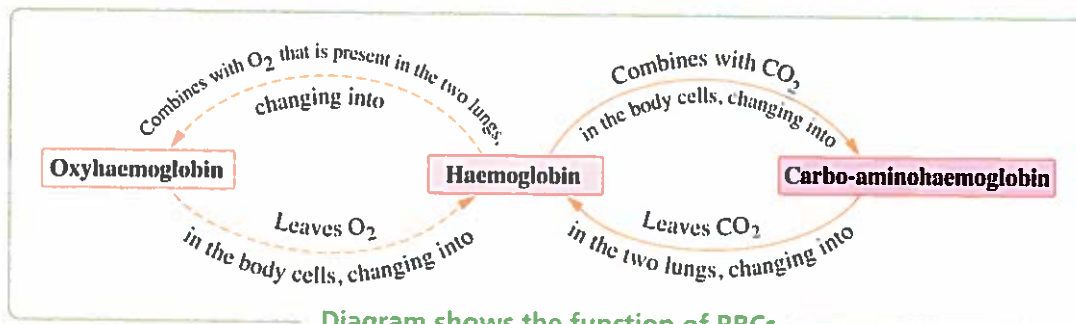


Diagram shows the function of RBCs

### Integration with Physics



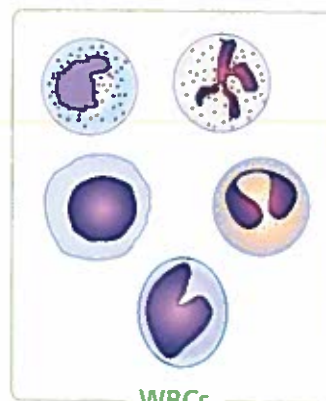
The physical properties of the oxygenated haemoglobin is different from that of the deoxygenated one, where the first passes red light rays and absorbs the infrared radiations more than the other. So, it is the scientific idea that the action of the **pulse oximeter** device based on, where this device allows the passage of two types of radiations around one finger to reach a photoreceptor in the other side that analyzes the ratio of red light

(passing through the oxygenated haemoglobin) to the ratio of infrared radiations (passing through the deoxygenated haemoglobin) to give the reading of the oxygen saturation in blood that ranges between 95% to 100% in people who don't suffer from lung diseases.



### 3 White blood corpuscles (Leucocytes) (WBCs)

- **Number** : they are about  $7000 \text{ cell/mm}^3$  of blood, and this number increases during diseases.
- **Description** : colourless and nucleated corpuscles with many shapes (have no specific shape).
- **Origin** : they are formed in the bone marrow, spleen and lymphatic system.
- **Average age of the cell** : some of their types live for 13 : 20 days.
- **Functions** : there are many types of leucocytes, where each type has a specific function, but their main function is the protection of the body against the infectious diseases, as follows :
  - Attacking microbes (by surrounding, then engulfing them).
  - Stopping the foreign substances that are produced by microbes in blood.
  - Getting rid of dead cells and other wastes.
  - Producing antibodies through specific types of white corpuscles.



WBCs

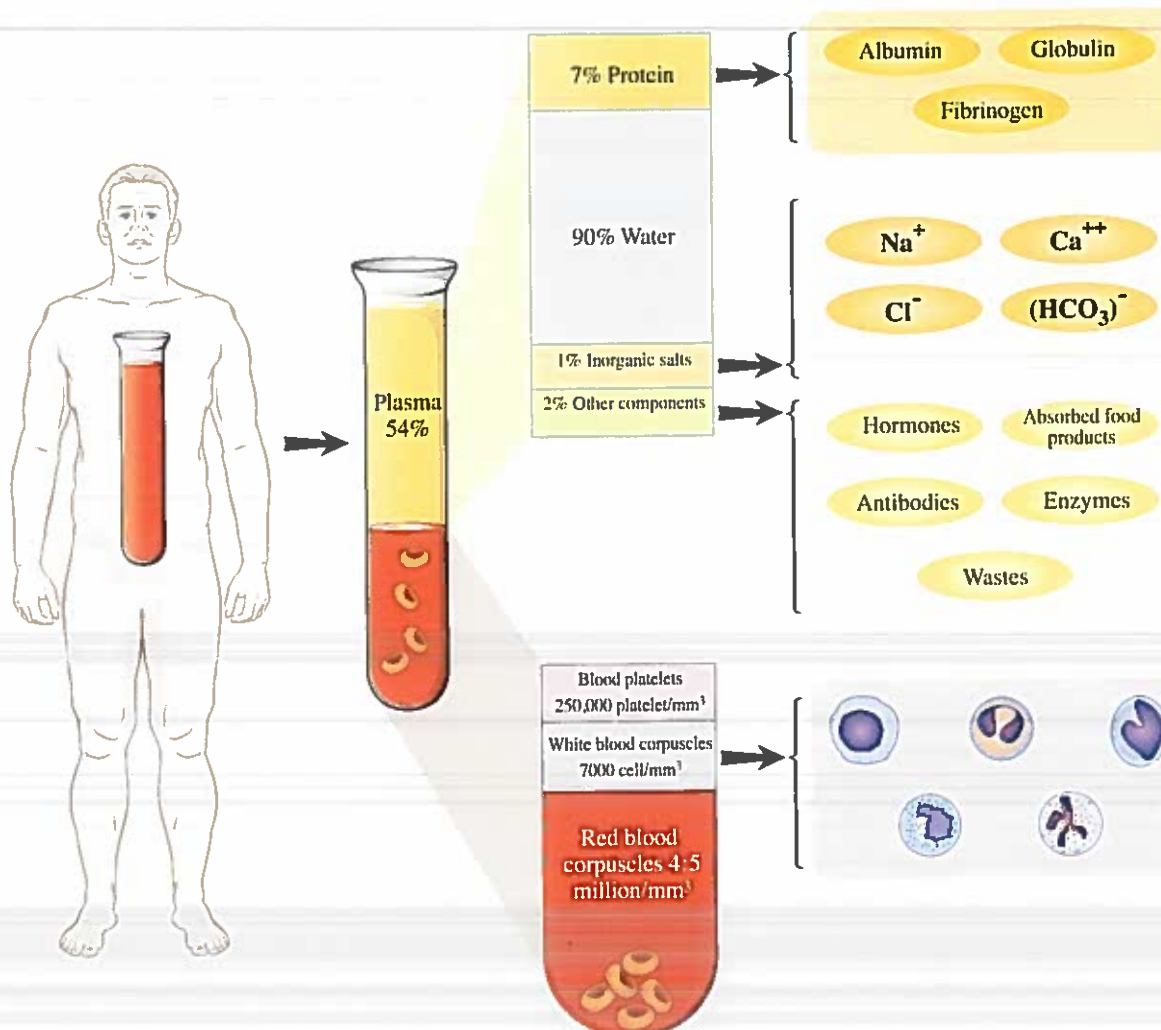
## Note

The white blood corpuscles circulate continuously in the body, streaming along the walls of blood vessels, as well as they have the ability to spread among the cells of blood capillaries walls.


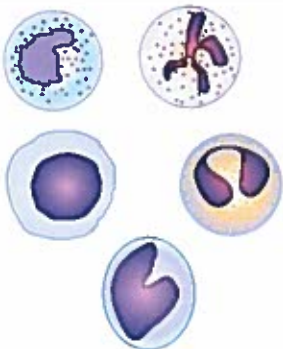

## 4 Blood platelets



- **Number** : 250,000 platelet/ $\text{mm}^3$  of blood.
- **Description** : non-cellular and very small-sized particles.
- **Size** : about one fourth of the RBCs
- **Origin** : produced from bone marrow.
- **Average age of blood platelets** : live nearly for 10 days, as they are regenerated continuously.
- **Function** : play an important role in the blood clotting process after the injury.



🎁 From the previous, we can compare between RBCs, WBCs and blood platelets, as follows :

P.O.C.	RBCs	WBCs	Blood platelets
Origin :	Bone marrow.	Bone marrow, spleen and lymphatic system.	Bone marrow.
Shape :	<p>Biconcave round-shaped cells.</p> 	<p>Don't have a <b>specific shape</b>, as there are many types of them.</p> 	<p><b>Non-cellular</b> and <b>small-sized</b> particles.</p> 
Number/ mm <sup>3</sup> of blood :	<p>Adult male → 4 : 5 million cells. Adult female → 4 : 4.5 million cells.</p>	<p>7,000 cells and this number increases in case of diseases.</p>	<p>250,000</p>
Average age :	<p>120 days (doesn't exceed 4 months).</p>	<p>Some types live for 13 : 20 days.</p>	<p>About 10 days, as they are regenerated continuously.</p>
Function :	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Transport O<sub>2</sub></b> from the two lungs to the different body cells.</li> <li>• <b>Transport CO<sub>2</sub></b> from the different body cells to the two lungs.</li> </ul>	<p>• <b>Protecting the body through :</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Attacking microbes.</li> <li>- Stopping the foreign substances that are produced by microbes.</li> <li>- Getting rid of dead cells and wastes.</li> <li>- Producing antibodies through specific types of white blood corpuscles.</li> </ul>	<p>Play an important role in the <b>blood clotting process</b> after injuries.</p>
Colour :	<p><b>Red</b>, due to the presence of haemoglobin substance.</p>	<p><b>Colourless</b></p>	<p>—</p>
Presence of nucleus :	<p><b>Enucleated</b></p>	<p><b>Nucleated</b></p>	<p>—</p>

### 3 Test yourself

Answered

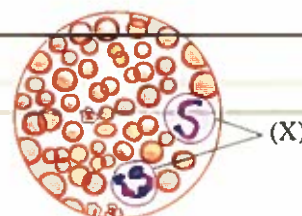
Choose the correct answer :

1 What is the percentage of blood corpuscles and blood platelets in human blood ?

- (a) 10%                      (b) 46%                      (c) 54%                      (d) 90%

2 From the opposite figure, what is the function of cells (X) ?

- (a) Transporting  $O_2$   
 (b) Transporting hormones.  
 (c) Blood clotting.  
 (d) The resistance of diseases.



3 To know the regularity of the glucose level in blood for diabetic patients, the level of glucose that is linked to the haemoglobin (glycated haemoglobin HbA1c test) must be measured every .....

- (a) 10 days.                      (b) 20 days.                      (c) 4 months.                      (d) year.

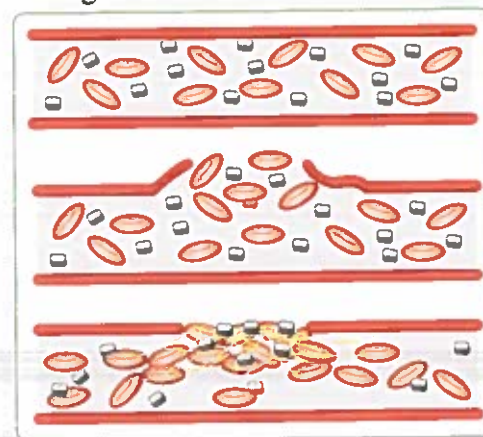
### Blood clot



- It occurs when a blood vessel is cut or teared.
- **Importance of clotting** : protecting blood by preventing bleeding, in order not to lose a large amount of it which may expose the body to a shock that is followed by death.
- **Factors of coagulation (clotting) of blood** :
  - ① Exposure of blood to air.
  - ② Friction of blood with a rough surface, such as destroyed cells and vessels.

### Do you know...?

- Stages of the blood clot formation :



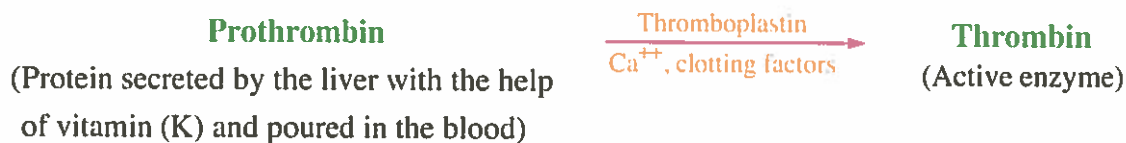
### Mechanism of blood clotting

- In case of the presence of blood clotting factors, its steps are as follows :
  - ① The blood platelets form a protein substance with the destroyed cells (at the injury site) called "**thromboplastin**".

Blood platelets + Destroyed cells  $\xrightarrow[\text{Factors in blood}]{\text{Clotting}}$  Thromboplastin



- ② Thromboplastin stimulates the conversion process of **prothrombin** into **thrombin** in the presence of calcium ions ( $\text{Ca}^{++}$ ) and blood clotting factors in plasma.



- ③ Thrombin catalyzes the conversion of **fibrinogen** into **fibrin**.



- ④ Fibrin precipitates in the form of a network of microscopic interlacing fibers in which the blood cells are aggregated, forming a clot which blocks the cut in the damaged blood vessel to stop the bleeding.

### Reasons for the non-clotting of blood inside the blood vessels

- ① Blood flows normally inside the blood vessels without slowing down.
- ② Blood platelets slide easily and smoothly inside the blood vessels without being broken.
- ③ The presence of **heparin** substance that is secreted by the liver and prevents the conversion of prothrombin into thrombin.

### 4 Test yourself

Answered

Choose the correct answer :

- 1 Which of the following is expected to be a reason for haemophilia (blood liquidity) disease ?
  - (a) Increasing the calcium level in blood.
  - (b) Increasing the level of vitamin (K) in blood.
  - (c) Increasing the blood platelets level in blood.
  - (d) The absence of one of the blood clotting factors from blood.
- 2 Which of the following substances can be used to prevent the clotting of blood samples in the tubes, during carrying out the laboratory tests ?
 

(a) Thromboplastin.	(b) Prothrombin.
(c) Fibrinogen.	(d) Heparin.

### Functions of blood

- The blood has several functions, due to its unique structure, which are as follows :

#### 1 Transportation

- It transports the digested food substances, excretory nitrogenous compounds, hormones and some enzymes (active or inactive) by the plasma.
- It transports oxygen and carbon dioxide by RBCs.

#### 2 Regulation

- It regulates the processes of metabolism.
- It keeps the body temperature at 37°C.
- It regulates the internal environment (homeostasis) of body, such as (osmotic potential, amount of water and the value of pH in the tissues).

#### 3 Protection

- It protects the body against the invasion of microbes and pathogenic organisms through the white blood corpuscles.
- It protects the blood itself against bleeding by the help of blood platelets which play an important role in the formation of blood clot.

### Blood pressure



- Blood circulates within the arteries, veins and minute blood capillaries by the heartbeats, but :
  - It passes smoothly and easily in the arteries and veins.
  - It doesn't pass smoothly and easily in the minute blood capillaries, due to their resistance against this heavy viscous fluid. So, it needs a pressure which is called "**blood pressure**".

#### The blood pressure increases

On the contraction of the two ventricles (heartbeats). So, the highest blood pressure is measured in the arteries that are near to the heart.

#### The blood pressure decreases

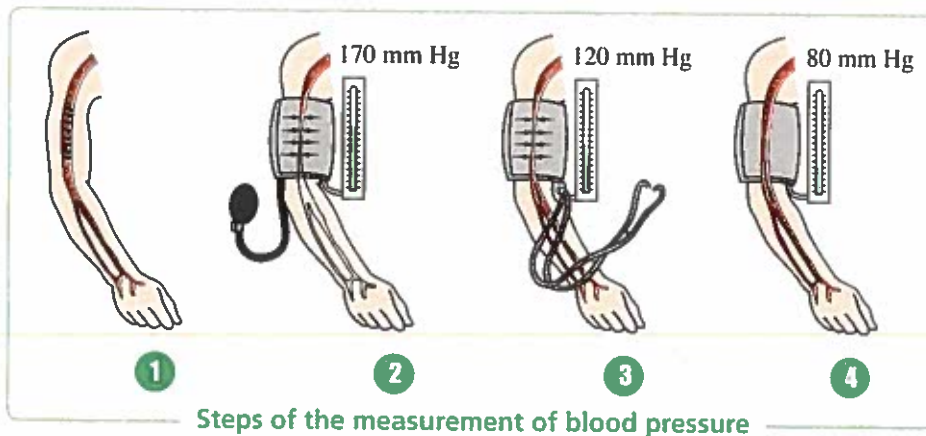
On the relaxation of two ventricles, and the blood pressure decreases as we go far from the arteries that are near to the heart, till reaching its minimum value in the venules and blood capillaries (about 10 mm Hg). So, the returning back of the blood in veins to the heart depends on the skeletal muscles that surround the veins and the valves that are present in these veins.

## Measurement of blood pressure

- The blood pressure is measured by means of mercuric instruments called "sphygmomanometers", which give two numbers :
  - **Upper number** : measured during the **ventricular contraction** (systolic) which represents the **maximum** blood pressure.
  - **Lower number** : measured during the **ventricular relaxation** (diastolic) which represents the **minimum** blood pressure.
- **Example** : the normal value of blood pressure in a healthy youth is **120/80** mm Hg. So, the number of **120** mm Hg represents the blood pressure during ventricular contraction (**systolic**), and **80** mm Hg represents the blood pressure during ventricular relaxation (**diastolic**).

## Sphygmomanometer

- **Structure** : a mercuric tube and a scale board.
- **Idea of working** : blood pressure can be measured according to the elevation of mercury level inside the tube and it is represented by a number on the scale board.



### Method of measurement :

The blood pressure can be measured by listening to the heartbeats, and also between one beat and another, **as follows** :

- The doctor listens to the sound of heartbeats by the stethoscope.
- On hearing the sound of heartbeat, the doctor can determine the number, referring to the ventricles contraction (**systolic**).
- When the sound disappears, the doctor can determine the number, referring to the ventricles relaxation (**diastolic**).



## Notes

- (1) The blood pressure increases gradually by aging, and it may reach a dangerous case, if it is not cured under medical control.
- (2) There are some digital devices to measure the blood pressure, but they are not accurate as the mercuric device.

### 5 Test yourself

Answered

Choose the correct answer :

- 1 The lowest value of the blood pressure in human is on .....
  - (a) contracting the left atrium.
  - (b) relaxing the right atrium.
  - (c) the closure of the bicuspid valve.
  - (d) the closure of the tricuspid valve.
- 2 The following figures illustrate the upper view of the heart valves, which one expresses what happens in the heart and that is represented by the upper number during the measurement of blood pressure ?



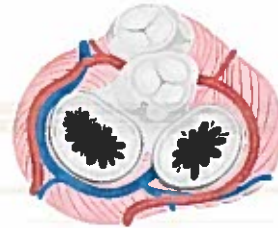
a



b



c



d

# Human Transport System

## (Circulatory System)

To watch videos of  
how to answer  
questions use the App

معك  
Me3ak App



Interactive test

The questions signed by \* are answered in detail.

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

First

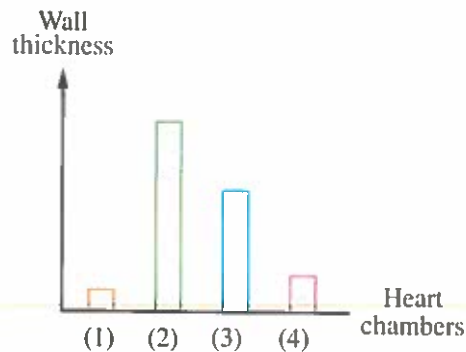
Multiple Choice Questions

### The heart and blood vessels

- 1 Which of the following is considered the correct path for the transfer of the contraction impulse to the muscles of ventricles ?
- (a) Sino-atrial node → His fibers → Purkinje fibers → Wall of ventricles.
  - (b) Purkinje fibers → Sino-atrial node → His fibers → Wall of ventricles.
  - (c) Sino-atrial node → His fibers → Atrio-ventricular node → Wall of ventricles.
  - (d) Atrio-ventricular node → His fibers → Purkinje fibers → Wall of ventricles.

- 2 Study the opposite graph that illustrates the difference in the thickness of the human heart chambers walls, what is the heart chamber that pumps the blood to the two lungs ?

- (a) (1).
- (b) (2).
- (c) (3).
- (d) (4).



- 3 Which of the following figures expresses the highest activity of the sino-atrial node in this healthy person when he performed these activities ?



(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)



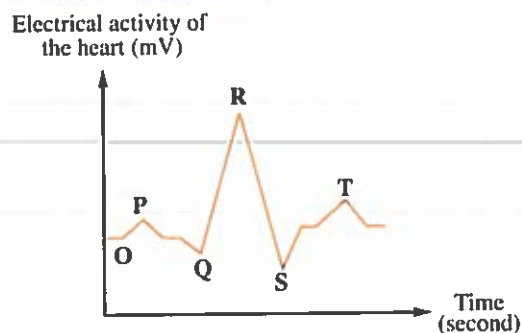
4 Which of the following blood vessels contains the lowest percentage of carbon dioxide and the highest percentage of oxygen ?

- (a) Pulmonary vein. 
 (b) Superior vena cava. 
 (c) Pulmonary artery. 
 (d) Inferior vena cava.

5 Which of the following statements isn't applied to the valves ?

- (a) They are present at the connection of the heart with the pulmonary and aortic arteries. 
 (b) They are present at the connection of the heart with the superior and inferior venae cavae. 
 (c) They allow the passage of blood from the atrium to its opposite ventricle. 
 (d) They allow the passage of blood from the two ventricles to inside the arteries in one direction.

6 The opposite graph illustrates the electrical activity of the cardiac muscles during one heartbeat, which choice in the following table expresses the symbols illustrated in the graph ?



	O	P	QRS	T
(a)	Contraction of two atria	Opening of atrio-ventricular valves	Relaxation of two atria	Contraction of two ventricles
(b)	The transfer of the contraction impulse from atrio-ventricular node	Contraction of two ventricles	Relaxation of two atria	The closure of atrio-ventricular valves
(c)	The release of the contraction impulse from the sino-atrial node	Contraction of two atria	Contraction of two ventricles	Relaxation of two ventricles
(d)	Relaxation of two ventricles	Contraction of two atria	The closure of atrio-ventricular valves	Relaxation of two ventricles

7 Which of the following statements is correct about the veins of the left leg ?

- (a) Blood vessels carry blood at high pressures.
- (b) Pulsating blood vessels.
- (c) Blood vessels contain valves.
- (d) Blood vessels carry blood away from the heart.

8 Which of the following characteristics allows the artery to adapt with the change in the blood pressure during the passage of blood through it ?

- (1) Thinning of the inner layer wall.
- (2) Presence of elastic fibers.
- (3) The thickening of the muscular layer wall.
- (a) (1), (2) & (3).
- (b) (1) & (2) only.
- (c) (1) & (3) only.
- (d) (2) & (3) only.

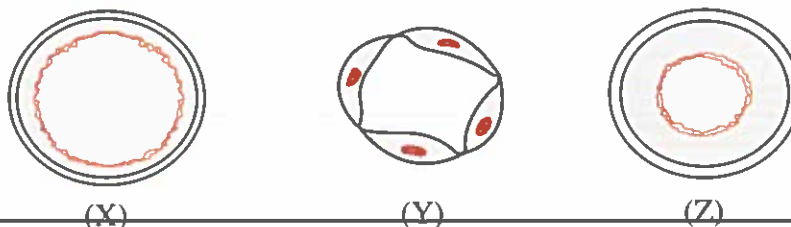
9 Which choice in the following table is applied to the pulmonary artery ?

	Carried blood	Muscular layer in the wall	The size of the internal cavity
(a)	Deoxygenated	Thick	Small
(b)	Deoxygenated	Thin	Large
(c)	Oxygenated	Thick	Small
(d)	Oxygenated	Thin	Large

10 Which of the following doesn't agree with the characteristics of the pulmonary vein ?

- (a) It carries oxygenated blood.
- (b) It has a wider lumen than that of the pulmonary artery.
- (c) The thickness of its wall is thinner than that of the pulmonary artery's wall.
- (d) It carries deoxygenated blood.

- 11 The following figures show transverse sections in three blood vessels :

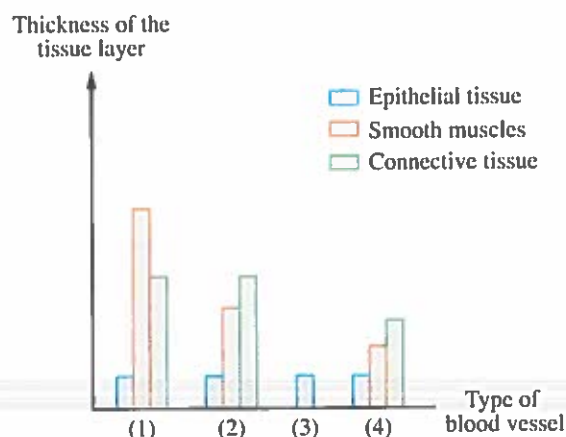


Which of the following refers to the correct arrangement for each of (X), (Y) and (Z) respectively ?

- (a) Artery – Blood capillary – Vein.                      (b) Blood capillary – Vein – Artery.  
 (c) Vein – Blood capillary – Artery.                      (d) Vein – Artery – Blood capillary.
- 12 Which of the following is considered from the characteristics of the blood vessels that connect between the artery and vein ?
- (a) They contain valves.  
 (b) Their wall consists of several cellular layers.  
 (c) Their wall consists of connective tissue.  
 (d) Their wall contains tiny pores.

- 13 The opposite graph illustrates the relation between the thickness of the tissue layer that forms different types of blood vessels in the human body, which one transfers the oxygenated blood to the kidney ?

- (a) (1).  
 (b) (2).  
 (c) (3).  
 (d) (4).

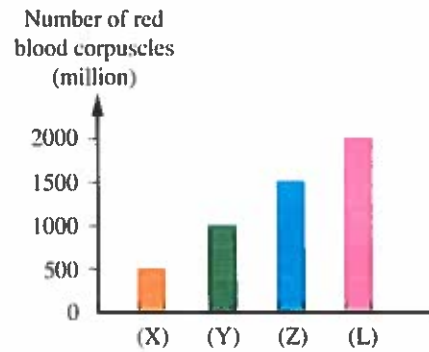


- 14 The pulmonary artery contains .....

- (a) a bicuspid valve.  
 (b) blood with high pressure.  
 (c) blood moving towards the heart.  
 (d) oxygenated blood.

- 15 In the opposite graph, which column represents the red blood corpuscles number that are formed through 15 minutes ?

- a (X).
- b (Y).
- c (Z).
- d (L).

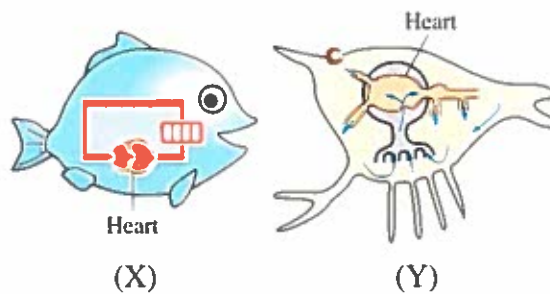


- 16 Which of the following groups represents the blood vessels carrying oxygenated blood ?

- a Aorta – Pulmonary artery – Renal artery.
- b Aorta – Pulmonary vein – Renal artery.
- c Venae cavae – Pulmonary artery – Renal vein.
- d Venae cavae – Pulmonary vein – Renal vein.

- 17 \* The type of the human circulatory system .....

- a resembles its type in animal (X).
- b resembles its type in animal (Y).
- c resembles its type in both animals (X) and (Y).
- d is different from its type in both animals (X) and (Y).



- 18 \* Which of the following statement is correct ?

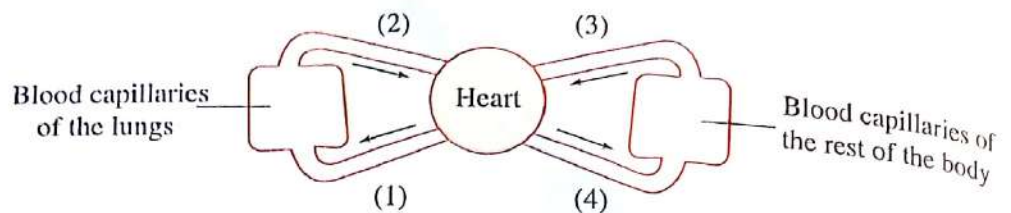
- a The contraction of the right side of heart is delayed than that of the left side.
- b The contraction of the left side of heart is delayed than that of the right side.
- c The contraction of the upper side of heart is delayed than that of the lower side.
- d The contraction of the lower side of heart is delayed than that of the upper side.

- 19 \* The opposite figure illustrates the passage of blood in a blood vessel from .....

- a foot to heart.
- b liver to intestine.
- c heart to kidney.
- d heart to the two lungs.



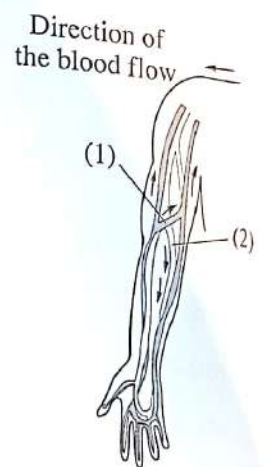
- 20 \* In the following figure, which blood vessels carry deoxygenated blood ?



- (a) (1) & (2).  
 (b) (1) & (3).  
 (c) (2) & (3).  
 (d) (2) & (4).

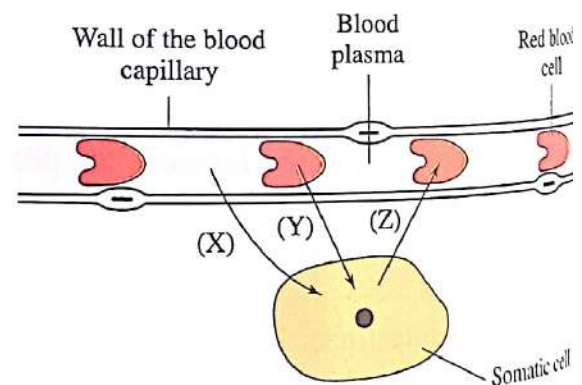
- 21 \* In the opposite figure :

- (1) Which of the following statements doesn't agree with structure no. (1) ?
- (a) Its wall contains valves.  
 (b) It carries blood to the heart.  
 (c) It is not a pulsating blood vessel.  
 (d) It carries oxygenated blood.
- (2) Which of the following doesn't agree with the characteristics of structure no. (2) ?
- (a) It carries oxygenated blood.  
 (b) It carries deoxygenated blood.  
 (c) It carries blood away from the heart.  
 (d) The blood pressure in it is higher than no. (1).



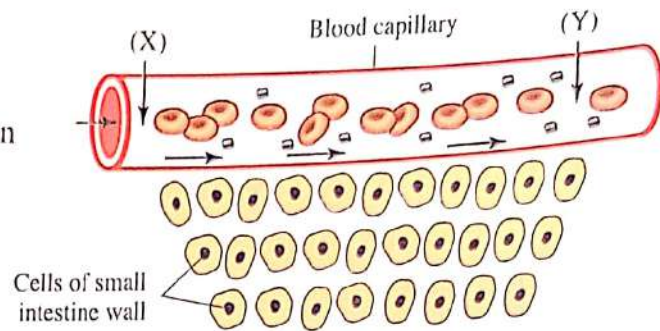
- 22 \* In the opposite figure,  
 symbols (X), (Y) and (Z)  
 represent ..... respectively.

- (a) oxygen, carbon dioxide and glucose  
 (b) glucose, oxygen and carbon dioxide  
 (c) carbon dioxide, oxygen and glucose  
 (d) oxygen, glucose and carbon dioxide



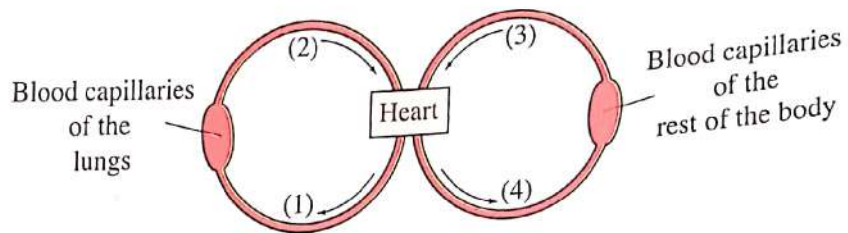


- 23 \* In the opposite figure, which of the following substances its/their concentration at point (Y) is higher than that at point (X) ?



- (a) Oxygen. (b) Starch.  
(c) Amino acids. (d) Urea.

- 24 \* In the following figure, which of the following blood vessels carry blood at low pressures ?



- (a) (1) & (2).  
(b) (1) & (4).  
(c) (2) & (3).  
(d) (2) & (4).

## Blood

- 25 Which of the following substances may be present dissolved in the blood plasma ?  
(a) Glucose, hormones and urea. (b)  $\text{CO}_2$  gas,  $\text{O}_2$  gas and haemoglobin.  
(c)  $\text{CO}_2$  gas, haemoglobin and glucose. (d)  $\text{O}_2$  gas, urea and starch.
- 26 In which of the following places is haemoglobin expected to change into oxyhaemoglobin ?  
(a) Heart. (b) Two kidneys.  
(c) Liver. (d) Two lungs.
- 27 Which of the following don't have an immunization role in the human body ?  
(a) Red blood corpuscles. (b) White blood corpuscles.  
(c) Blood platelets. (d) Blood plasma.
- 28 The patient with liver fibrosis is exposed to .....  
(a) decrease in vitamin (K).  
(b) the blood liquidity (haemophilia).  
(c) increase in the formation of thrombin substance.  
(d) increase the percentage of blood proteins.

- 29 Which of the following blood components has an important role in healing a superficial wound ?



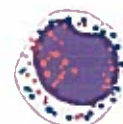
a



b



c



d

- 30 If the blood of a person contains a number of blood platelets less than the normal level, which of the following processes will be affected ?

- a The transport of oxygen from the two lungs to the heart.
- b The rate of coagulation occurrence when exposed to blood bleeding.
- c The production of antibodies.
- d The attacking of microbes.

- 31 Which of the following is present in the plasma during the absence of blood clotting factors from a blood sample ?

- a Thromboplastin.
- b Thrombin.
- c Fibrin.
- d Fibrinogen.

- 32 To clot blood quickly when a wound is found, it's advised to eat food that contains .....

- a lipids.
- b carbohydrates.
- c vitamin (K).
- d vitamin (A).

- 33 Why does increasing the percentage of some types of lipids in blood represent a risk of forming clots inside the blood vessels ?

- a Because they increase the speed of blood inside the vessel.
- b Because they prevent the secretion of heparin substance.
- c Because they stimulate the conversion of fibrin into fibrinogen.
- d Because they obstruct the movement of blood in normal manner.

- 34 Which of the following leads to the formation of a blood clot ?

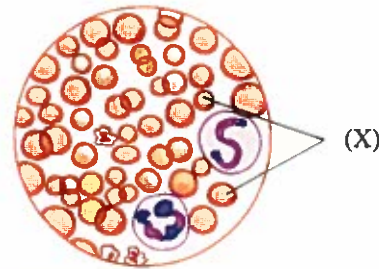
- a Shortage of vitamin (K).
- b Shortage of calcium ions in blood.
- c Malformation of thrombin substance in its appropriate time.
- d Breaking down of blood platelets inside the blood vessel.

- 35 Which of the following substances are secreted by the liver in blood ?

- a Fibrin and heparin.
- b Prothrombin and thromboplastin.
- c Prothrombin and heparin.
- d Fibrin and fibrinogen.

36 From the opposite figure, what is the function of cells (X) ?

- (a) Transferring of oxygen.
- (b) Transferring of hormones.
- (c) Blood coagulation.
- (d) Resistance against diseases.



37 Which of the following proteins is **not** present in the blood plasma normally ?

- (a) Albumin.
- (b) Globulin.
- (c) Fibrinogen.
- (d) Fibrin.

38 Which of the following vessels has the maximum blood pressure ?

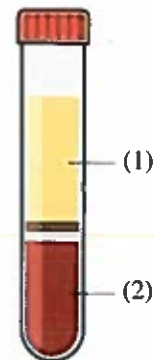
- (a) Veins of the left arm.
- (b) Arteries of the right arm.
- (c) Renal nourishing arteries.
- (d) Nourishing artery of the left leg.

39 Which of the following **isn't** effective on the blood pressure ?

- (a) The diameter of the blood vessels.
- (b) The number of WBCs.
- (c) The systolic pressure of the two ventricles.
- (d) The volume of the blood returning back to the heart with each pulse.

40 \* The opposite figure illustrates the separation of a blood sample components of a normal person by using centrifugation, which of the following represents the blood components in no. (1) and (2) respectively ?

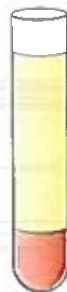
	(1)	(2)
(a)	Red and white blood corpuscles	Plasma and blood platelets
(b)	White blood corpuscles and blood platelets	Red blood corpuscles and plasma
(c)	Plasma	Red and white blood corpuscles and blood platelets
(d)	Blood platelets	Red and white blood corpuscles and plasma



41 \* How far are these statements "the blood contains various group of soluble proteins in its normal state", "and some insoluble proteins are formed in the abnormal state" correct ?

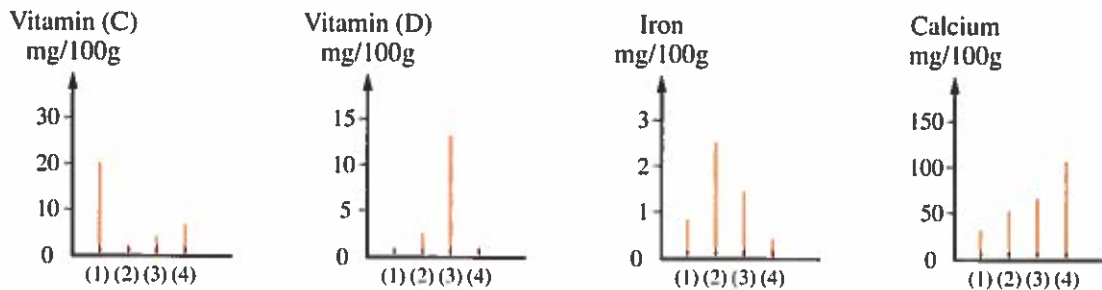
- (a) The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.
- (b) The first statement is wrong and the second statement is correct.
- (c) The two statements are correct.
- (d) The two statements are wrong.

- 42 \* Which of the following characterizes the blood of the heights inhabitants ?
- (a) The increase in the number of RBCs.
  - (b) The increase in the number of WBCs.
  - (c) The decrease in the number of RBCs.
  - (d) The decrease in the number of WBCs.
- 43 \* To know the saturation degree of oxygen accurately for a patient who suffers from severe pneumonia a blood gases test was done, where the blood sample should be taken from .....
- (a) the artery and mixing with heparin substance.
  - (b) the vein and mixing with heparin substance.
  - (c) the artery and mixing with a substance that helps in coagulation.
  - (d) the vein and mixing with a substance that helps in coagulation.
- 44 \* Which of the following their number increases in blood, when a human suffers from an inflammation in the appendix ?
- (a) Enzymes.
  - (b) Blood platelets.
  - (c) White blood corpuscles.
  - (d) Red blood corpuscles.
- 45 \* How far are these statements "the liver helps in the formation of blood clot", "the liver prevents the occurrence of blood clot" correct ?
- (a) The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.
  - (b) The first statement is wrong and the second statement is correct.
  - (c) The two statements are correct.
  - (d) The two statements are wrong.
- 46 \* The opposite test tube contains a centrifuged blood sample, in your opinion the owner of this sample .....
- (a) drinks too much water.
  - (b) loses too much water.
  - (c) suffers from anemia.
  - (d) is a healthy person.
- 47 \* What is the normal volume of water in the blood of a person who has 6 liters of blood ?
- (a) 2.4 L
  - (b) 2.7 L
  - (c) 2.9 L
  - (d) 3.2 L





- 48 \* The following graphs represent the amount of vitamins and minerals in four food substances :



(1) Which of the following food substances is considered the best source for transporting oxygen by the blood ?

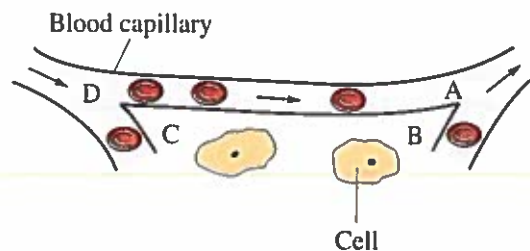
- (a) (1). (b) (2).  
(c) (3). (d) (4).

(2) What is the food substance that is rich in a necessary element for protecting the blood from bleeding ?

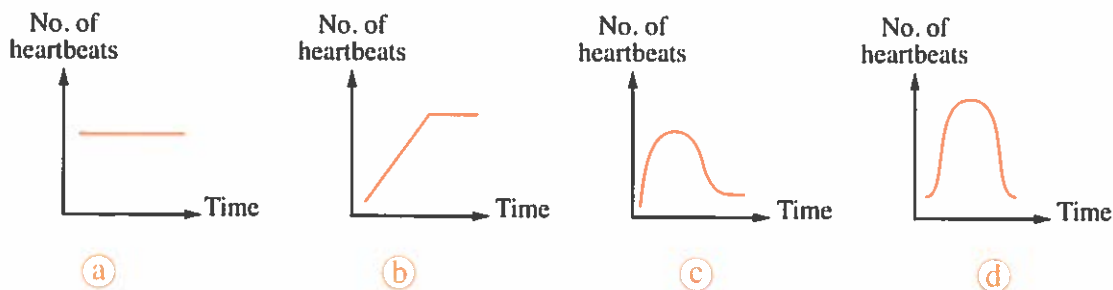
- (a) (4). (b) (3).  
(c) (2). (d) (1).

- 49 \* In the opposite figure, at which point the blood pressure is maximum ?

- (a) (A). (b) (B).  
(c) (C). (d) (D).



- 50 \* Which of the following graphs illustrates the change in the number of heartbeats with passing time after waking up ?





- 51** \* The opposite graph illustrates the change in the blood pressure in the left side of heart during a complete heartbeat :

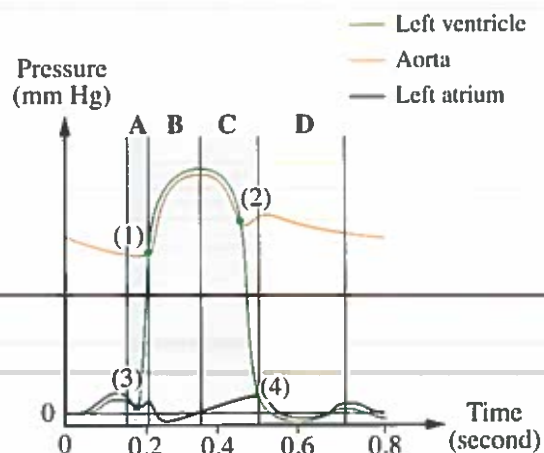
(1) At which time period end does the ventricle become empty from blood ?

- a (A). b (B). c (C). d (D).

(2) At which time period end does the ventricle become full of blood ?

- a (A). b (B). c (C). d (D).

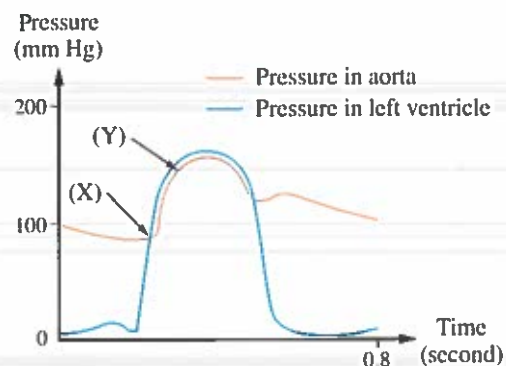
(3) What happens to the aortic and mitral valves at the points that are illustrated in the graph ?



	Aortic valve		Mitral valve	
	Opens	Closes	Opens	Closes
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">a</span>	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">b</span>	(1)	(2)	(4)	(3)
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">c</span>	(2)	(3)	(1)	(4)
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">d</span>	(2)	(3)	(4)	(1)

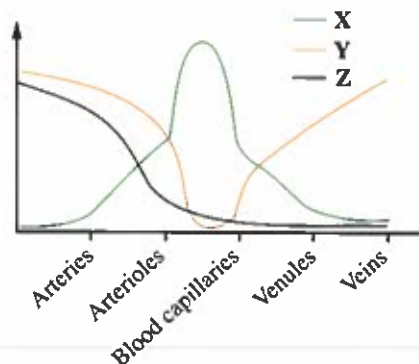
- 52** \* The opposite graph illustrates the change in the blood pressure in aorta and left ventricle, during a complete heartbeat. Which of the following causes the increase of blood pressure between points (X) and (Y) ?

- a The contraction of left atrium.  
b The relaxation of left atrium.  
c The contraction of left ventricle.  
d The relaxation of left ventricle.



- 53 \* Study the following graph, which choice expresses the curves that are found in it ?

	The speed of blood flow	Blood pressure	Total surface area
(a)	X	Y	Z
(b)	X	Z	Y
(c)	Y	Z	X
(d)	Z	X	Y



## Second Miscellaneous Questions

- 1 "The human body contains a group of internal membranes that differ in their functions". Illustrate this by using two different examples in the light of your study.

- 2 "The human heart contains valves with specific fixed function". How far this statement is correct ? With explanation.

- 3 What happens in case of : the absence of valves from the heart muscle ?

- 4 What happens in case of : the absence of sino-atrial node ?

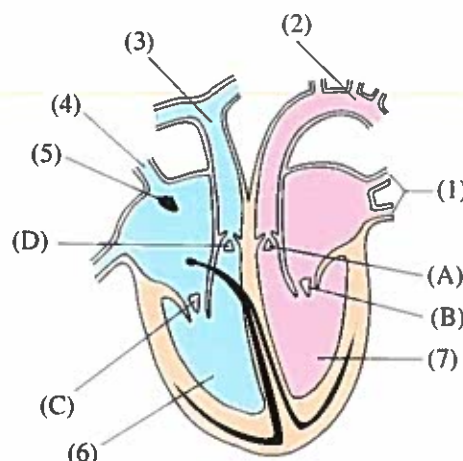
- 5 The following figure shows a diagrammatic figure for the human heart :

(a) Mention the names of each of the valves (A), (B), (C) and (D).

(b) What is the type of blood that is present in the structures from no. (1) : (4) "oxygenated or deoxygenated", "under low pressure or high pressure" ?

(c) Mention the difference between the structures no. (6) and (7) ?

(d) Describe how the structure no. (5) can be stimulated which causes an increase in the rate of heartbeats.



- 6 What is the relation between : the heart valves and heartbeats ?

7 **Give reason for :** the presence of arteries usually buried among the body muscles.

8 **Give reason for :** the artery wall is thicker than the vein wall.

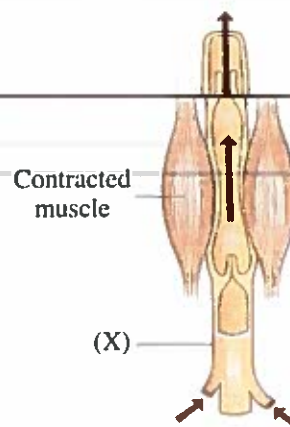
9 **The opposite figure illustrates the blood flow in a human leg during walking :**

(a) **What does the label (X) represent ? Mention two reasons for your answer.**

(b) **Illustrate how the blood flow, when the two muscles contract.**

(c) **How does the contraction of the two muscles affect the rate of heartbeats ? Explain your answer.**

(d) **What are the factors upon which the blood flow in this direction depends ?**



10 **Give reason for :** the bleeding from artery is more dangerous than the bleeding from vein.

11 **The opposite figures represent two types of blood vessels :**

(a) **What is the type of vessel (X) and vessel (Y) ?**

(b) **In which layer are the elastic fibers present ? And in which vessel their presence is rare ?**



(X)



(Y)

12 **Give reason for :** although the blood pressure is low in veins, blood returns back to the heart through them.

13 **What is the difference between :** pulmonary vein and pulmonary artery ?

14 **What happens in case of :** the absence of valves inside the cavity of some veins ?

15 **The following figure represents a network of the blood vessels in the body :**

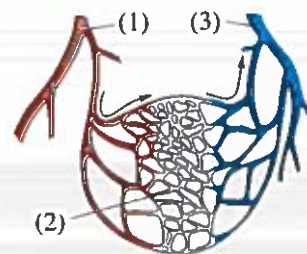
(a) **What is the functional suitability of structure no. (2) ?**

(b) **Where is structure no. (2) in the human body ?**

(c) **Which of these structures contains :**

1. The highest percentage of oxygen.
2. Valves that control the passage of blood.

(d) **What is the value of the blood pressure in structure no. (3) ?**



16 "The presence of valves is restricted on one type of blood vessels only outside the heart".  
How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.

17 What is the similarity between : root hairs and blood capillaries ?

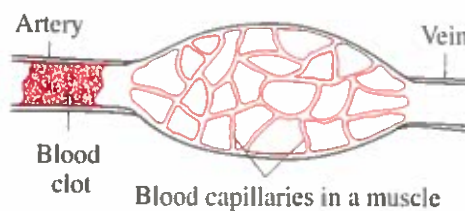
18 What happens in case of : decreasing the level of haemoglobin that is present in the red blood corpuscles than the normal range ?

19 What happens in case of : the shortage of iron element in the human food ?

20 "The role of prothrombin differs from that of fibrinogen, when human exposed to a wound".  
Explain this.

21 What is the relation between : the blood clotting and vitamin (K) ?

22 The opposite figure illustrates the formation of a blood clot inside an artery of a muscle, suggest the name of one substance that is useful and doesn't reach the blood capillaries in the muscle.



23 Explain : the nature of fibrin protein suits its function.

24 Explain : fibrin filaments play an important role in maintaining the human's life.

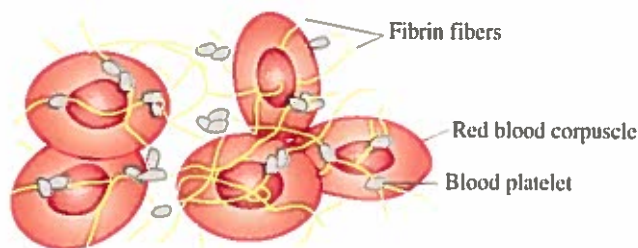
25 What is the relation between : liver and the formation of blood clot ?

26 The following figure shows a blood clot in a cut blood vessel :

(a) Mention the role of fibrin fibers in the formation of blood clot.

(b) Suggest two functions for the blood clot.

(c) What are the most important enzymes needed to form the clot ?  
And what is their role ?

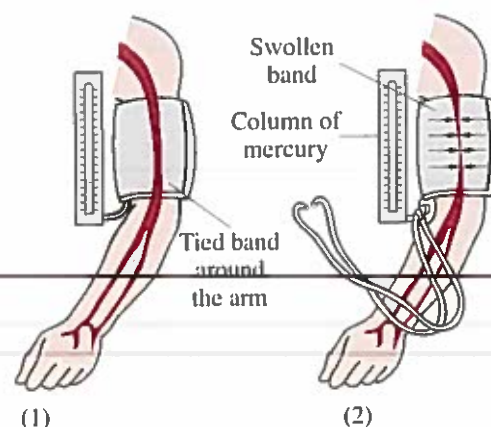


27 Explain : we shouldn't eat too much food rich in fats.

- 28** The two opposite figures illustrate the mechanism of measuring the blood pressure in human :

Which one of them represents the systolic blood pressure ? And which one of them represents the diastolic blood pressure ?

Giving reason.



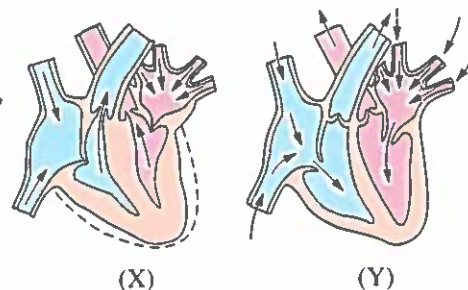
- 29** "The maximum blood pressure is in the veins that are close to the heart, during the relaxation of ventricles". How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.

- 30** What does it mean when saying that "your blood pressure is 110 / 70 mm Hg" ?

- 31** From the two opposite figures :

- (a) Which one of the two figures (X) or (Y) represents the maximum value of blood pressure, and which one of them represents the minimum value ?

- (b) What is the sound produced by the heart in each of the two figures ?



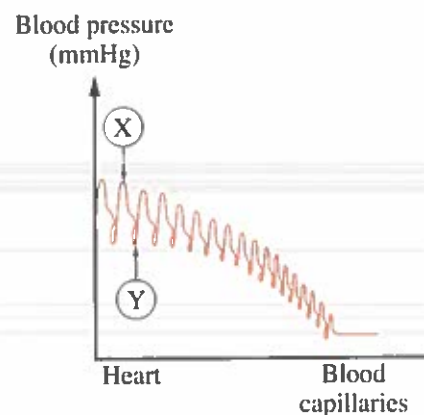
- 32** In the opposite graph :

- (a) What do you expect to happen at each of the two points (X) and (Y) ?

- (b) Explain the reason for decreasing the blood pressure during the coming out of blood from the heart till reaching the blood capillaries.

- (c) Explain the necessary for blood to pass very slowly in the blood capillaries.

- (d) Why is the blood pressure in the blood capillaries equal to (10 mm Hg) ?



- 33** Explain : the human blood pressure decreases in case of the occurrence of bleeding.



## New Types of questions?

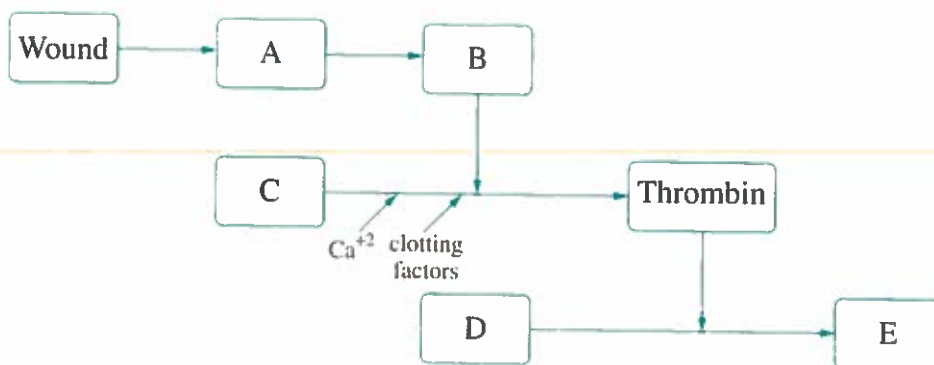
● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

### Choose two correct answers for the following questions :

- 1 Which of the following characterize the blood vessels that carry blood from arterioles to venules ?
- (a) They don't pulsate.
  - (b) They are one cell thickness.
  - (c) Their walls are thick.
  - (d) Their middle layer has elastic tissue.
  - (e) They contain valves.
- 2 Which of the following aren't the reasons for preferring blood withdrawal from the vein than the artery ?
- (a) Artery has a higher blood pressure.
  - (b) The middle layer in the artery is thicker.
  - (c) The vein carries deoxygenated blood.
  - (d) The vein lumen is wider.
  - (e) The vein contains valves.

### Choose from the list what suits the spaces :

- 3 The following diagram shows the steps of blood clotting :



Determine the symbol which refers to :

- Protein dissolved in plasma and its nature changes by the complete formation of blood clot : ..... (1) .....
- Protein insoluble in plasma : ..... (2) .....

A
B
C
D
E



Chapter **2**  
Lesson Three

## Continue : Human Transport System (Blood Circulation and Lymphatic System)

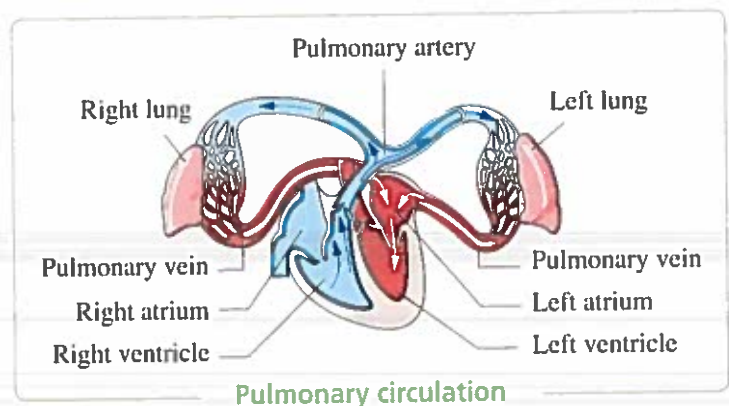
### Blood circulation

- Blood circulation in human can be divided into three main pathways which are :
  - Pulmonary circulation.
  - Systemic circulation.
  - Hepatic portal circulation.



### First Pulmonary circulation

- It starts from the right ventricle and ends in the left atrium, and it takes place as follows :
  - 1 When the **right ventricle** contracts, the tricuspid valve closes the opening of the right atrium.
  - 2 The **deoxygenated blood** rushes through the **pulmonary artery** and the pulmonary (semi-lunar) valve prevents the backflow of blood to the right ventricle.
  - 3 The pulmonary artery gives rise to two branches (a branch in each **lung**), where each branch of them branches in its tissues to form several arterioles which end with blood capillaries spread around the alveoli.
  - 4 The exchange of gases takes place, where carbon dioxide gas and water vapour diffuse from the blood, and oxygen gas will move towards the blood. So, the blood becomes **oxygenated**.



- 5 The **oxygenated blood** returns from the two lungs through **four pulmonary veins** (two veins from each lung) to open into the **left atrium**.



- At the end of the pulmonary circulation, the walls of the left atrium contract, pushing the blood to the left ventricle and the bicuspid valve prevents the backflow of blood to the left atrium.

## 1 Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

The relaxation of the right ventricle is synchronized with .....

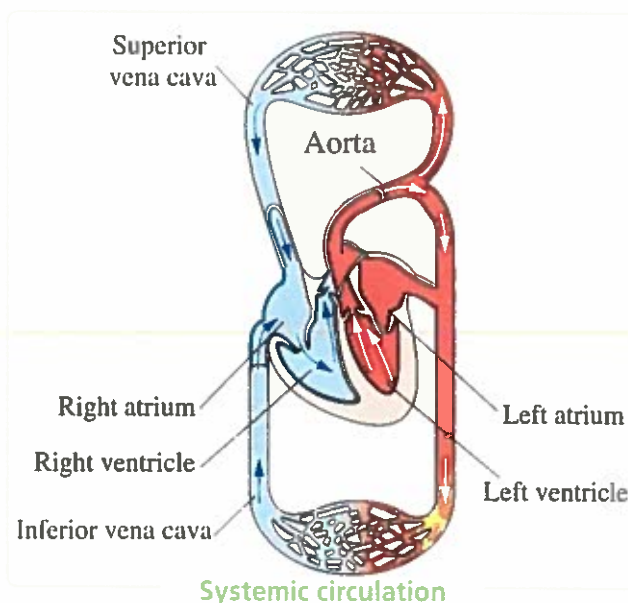
- (a) the closure of the mitral valve.                      (b) the opening of the mitral valve.  
(c) the closure of the tricuspid valve.                  (d) the opening of the pulmonary valve.

Answered

## Second Systemic circulation

- It starts from the left ventricle and ends in the right atrium, **and it takes place as follows :**

- The **left ventricle** contracts after being filled with the **oxygenated blood**, so that the bicuspid (mitral) valve closes the opening of the left atrium.
- Blood will rush to the **aorta**, and the aortic (semi-lunar) valve prevents the backflow of blood to the left ventricle.
- Aorta** gives rise to several arteries, where some of them move to the **upper part of the body**, while the others go to the **lower part**.



Then, arteries branch to form smaller and smaller arterioles which end by the blood capillaries that spread through the tissues among the cells, transporting oxygen, water and dissolved food substances from blood to them.

- Products of catabolism, such as carbon dioxide gas (resulting from the oxidation of fats and sugar) diffuse through the walls of blood capillaries and reach the blood, changing its colour from light red to dark red (deoxygenated blood).

- 5 Blood capillaries gather to give rise to a larger and larger blood vessels which are "veins".
- 6 Veins pour the deoxygenated blood into the **superior and inferior venae cavae** which pour the blood into the **right atrium**.

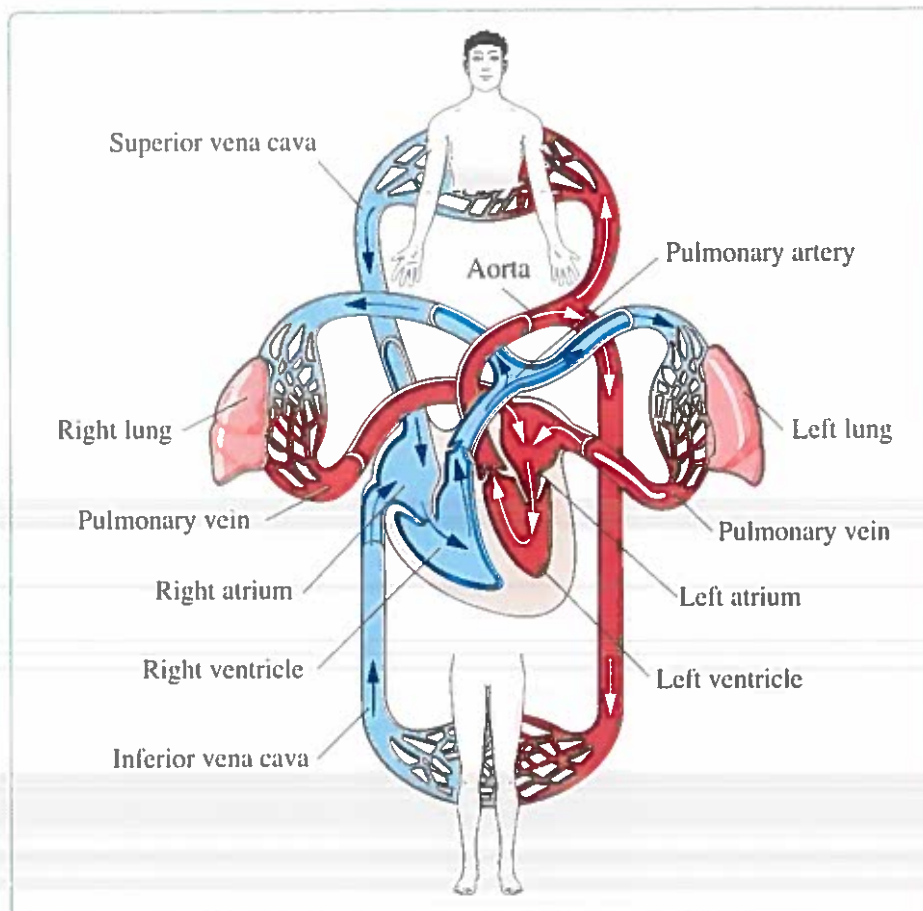


- At the end of the systemic circulation, the walls of the right atrium contract (when it is filled with blood), pushing the deoxygenated blood to the right ventricle and the tricuspid valve prevents the return back of blood to the right atrium.

#### Note

The contraction of the right side of heart occurs at the same time of the left side contraction. Therefore, pumping the deoxygenated blood from the right ventricle and pumping the oxygenated blood from the left ventricle take place at the same time.

❏ We can summarize the plumonary and systemic circulations together in the following diagram :



## 2 Test yourself

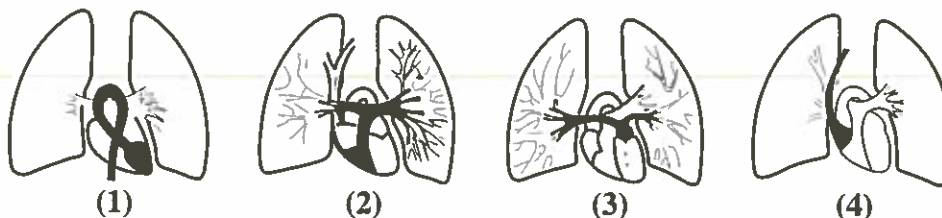
Answered

Choose the correct answer :

1 Which of the following blood vessels is **not** connected with the right side of the heart ?

- (a) Superior vena cava. (b) Inferior vena cava.  
(c) Pulmonary vein. (d) Pulmonary artery.

2 Study the following figures, then determine :



What is the correct arrangement, if the blood circulation starts with the return of the oxygenated blood from the two lungs ?

- (a) (2) → (1) → (4) → (3). (b) (3) → (1) → (4) → (2).  
(c) (1) → (3) → (2) → (4). (d) (4) → (2) → (3) → (1).

From the previous we can hold the following comparison :

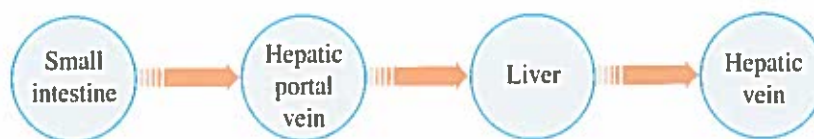
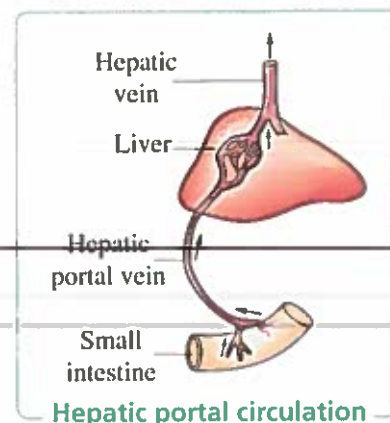
	Pulmonary circulation	Systemic circulation
1 The most important blood vessels that it includes	Pulmonary artery and the four pulmonary veins.	Aorta and superior and inferior venae cavae.
2 The heart valves that determine its route	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pulmonary valve (when the blood rushes from the heart).</li> <li>• Bicuspid valves (when the blood enters into the heart).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aortic valve (when the blood rushes from the heart).</li> <li>• Tricuspid valve (when the blood enters into the heart).</li> </ul>
3 The blood that is carried outside the heart	It carries the deoxygenated blood from the right ventricle to the two lungs through the pulmonary artery.	It carries the oxygenated blood from the left ventricle to all the body parts through aorta.
4 The blood that is carried inside the heart	It carries the oxygenated blood from the two lungs to the left atrium through the four pulmonary veins.	It carries the deoxygenated blood from the body to the right atrium through the superior and inferior venae cavae.
5 Its importance	Helping the blood to get rid of carbon dioxide and supplying it with oxygen.	Supplying the body cells with oxygen and dissolved food substances.



### Third Hepatic portal circulation

- It starts from the blood capillaries of the small intestine villi and ends by the blood capillaries inside the liver, and it takes place as follows :

- 1 The **small intestine's villi** absorb glucose and amino acids which are transported to the blood capillaries that are present inside the villi.
- 2 These blood capillaries aggregate into larger and larger veins, and finally they pour their contents into the **hepatic portal vein** which is connected with veins from the spleen, pancreas and stomach.
- 3 The hepatic portal vein branches into **venules** (when it enters into the liver) which end with minute blood capillaries, through their walls the excess food substances which exceed the body needs are filtered and passed to the liver where they undergo certain changes.
- 4 The blood capillaries gather to form the **hepatic vein** which leaves the liver and pours its contents into the upper part of the inferior vena cava which pours the blood into the **right atrium**.



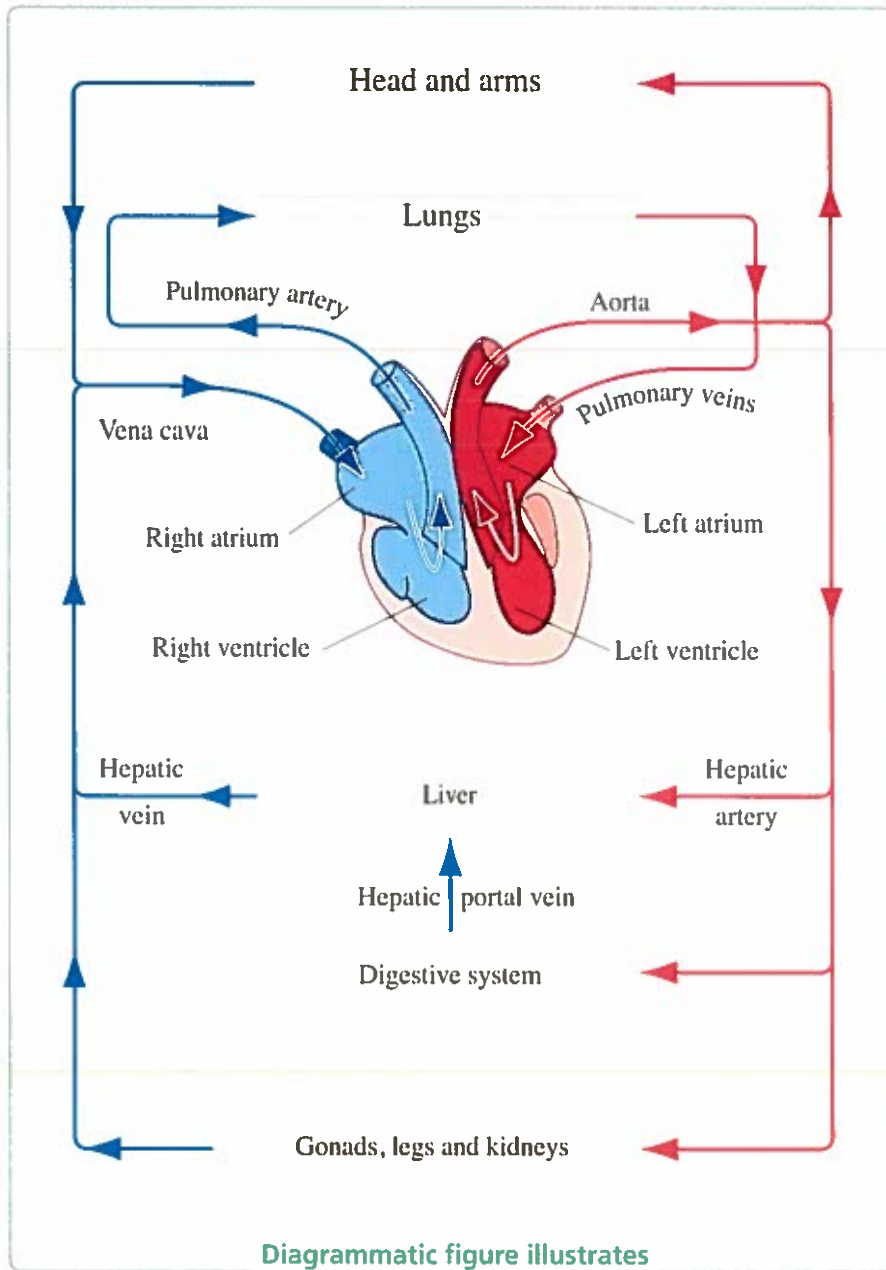
### 3 Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

Answered

- 1 Which of the following pathways illustrates the transfer of a glucose molecule from the small intestine till reaching the heart ?
  - (a) Small intestine → Hepatic vein → Liver → Hepatic portal vein → Superior vena cava.
  - (b) Small intestine → Hepatic portal vein → Liver → Hepatic vein → Superior vena cava.
  - (c) Small intestine → Hepatic vein → Liver → Hepatic portal vein → Inferior vena cava.
  - (d) Small intestine → Hepatic portal vein → Liver → Hepatic vein → Inferior vena cava.
- 2 The organ that receives blood from two main blood vessels, then the blood comes out from it through one blood vessel is/are the .....
  - (a) heart.
  - (b) liver.
  - (c) kidney.
  - (d) two lungs.

🎁 We can summarize the blood circulation in the following diagram :



#### For illustration only

There is a fourth blood circulation that is called the **cardiac circulation** which includes the movement or the flow of blood inside the four chambers of heart, according to the contraction and relaxation of the heart chambers.



## Lymphatic system

- The lymphatic system is considered the immune system of the body, due to its defensive ability, where it produces the antibodies that are responsible for providing the body its immunity.
- The **spleen** is considered one of the most important lymphatic organs in the body.
- The lymphatic system consists of :

### ① Lymph :

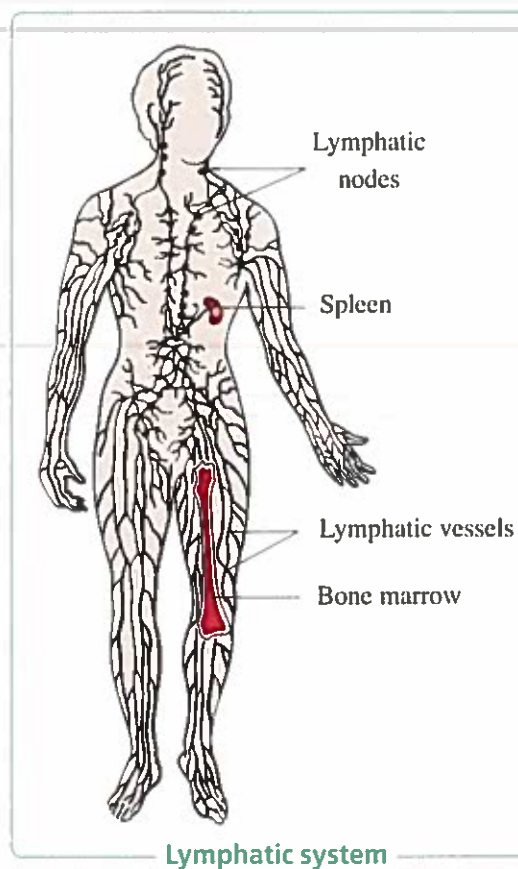
- It is a fluid that is filtered from the blood plasma during its passage through the blood capillaries.
- It contains nearly most of the plasma constituents, in addition to a large number of leucocytes (WBCs).

### ② Lymphatic capillaries (vessels) :

They work on collecting the lymph to return it into the circulatory system through the superior vena cava.

### ③ Lymphatic nodes :

- They are sieves (filters) that are found at certain points along the lymphatic vessels through which the lymph passes.
- They trap and destroy the microbes by the white blood cells produced by them.



## 4 Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

Answered

1 Which of the following is/are **not** from the components of lymph ?

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| (a) Amino acids. | (b) Antibodies.   |
| (c) Prothrombin. | (d) Sodium salts. |

2 Which of the heart's chambers is responsible for receiving the lymph ?

- |                   |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| (a) Right atrium. | (b) Right ventricle. |
| (c) Left atrium.  | (d) Left ventricle.  |

# Continue : Human Transport System

(Blood Circulation and Lymphatic System)

To watch videos of  
how to answer  
questions use the App

Interactive test

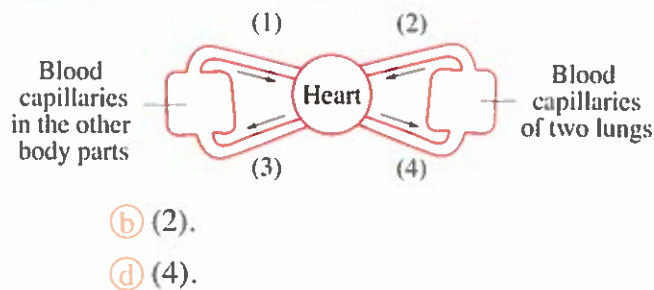
The questions signed by \* are answered in detail.

Understand Apply Higher Order Thinking Skills

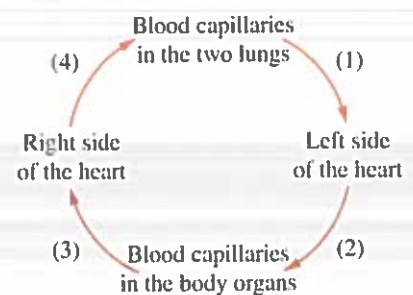
## First

## Multiple Choice Questions

- 1 The blood that reaches the brain cells leaves the heart from the .....  
 (a) left atrium. (b) right atrium.  
 (c) left ventricle. (d) right ventricle.
- 2 Which of the following valves allows the passage of blood under high pressure ?  
 (a) Mitral valve. (b) Aortic valve.  
 (c) Tricuspid valve. (d) Bicuspid valve.
- 3 Which of the following blood vessels in the opposite figure passes the oxygenated blood under low pressure ?  
 (a) (1). (b) (2).  
 (c) (3). (d) (4).
- 4 Which of the following happens when the two ventricles contract ?  
 (a) The pressure of aorta increases.  
 (b) The atrio-ventricular valves open.  
 (c) The semi-lunar valves close.  
 (d) The pressure decreases in these ventricles.
- 5 Which of the following antagonizes with the contraction of the two ventricles ?  
 (a) The passage of blood through the aortic valve.  
 (b) The closure of the mitral valve.  
 (c) The closure of the tricuspid valve.  
 (d) The closure of the pulmonary valve.
- 6 What is the number of the major blood vessels that carry oxygenated blood and come out from the heart ?  
 (a) 1 (b) 2 (c) 3 (d) 4

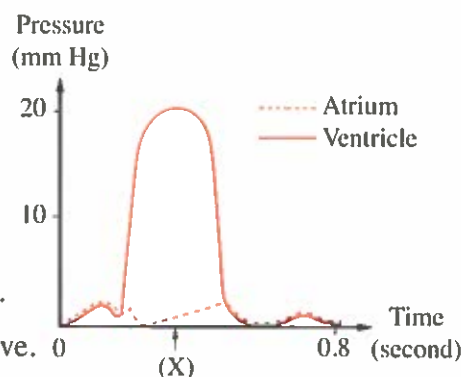


- 7 Which of the following statements is correct ?
- The right ventricle is filled with blood before the left ventricle.
  - The left ventricle is filled with blood before the right ventricle.
  - The left atrium is filled before the right atrium.
  - The two ventricles are filled with blood at the same time.
- 8 Which of the following happens at the ventricles relaxation ?
- Opening of semi-lunar valves.
  - Opening of atrio-ventricular valves.
  - Pressure of aorta becomes higher than that of the two ventricles.
  - Pressure of left atrium becomes higher than that of right atrium.
- 9 How many times does the blood pass through the heart during its passage from the two kidneys till reaching the aorta ?
- One time.
  - Two times.
  - Four times.
  - More than four times.
- 10 On the arrival of blood to the heart through the venae cavae, through which of the following blood vessels will the blood pass after that ?
- Pulmonary vein.
  - Pulmonary artery.
  - Hepatic vein.
  - Hepatic portal vein.
- 11 In which of the following blood vessels is the blood pressure the highest ?
- Pulmonary artery.
  - Superior vena cava.
  - Aorta.
  - Inferior vena cava.
- 12 Which of the following occur when the blood passes from the right ventricle to the two lungs ?
- The closure of mitral valve and the opening of tricuspid valve.
  - The opening of mitral valve and the closure of tricuspid valve.
  - The opening of semi-lunar valve and the closure of tricuspid valve.
  - The closure of semi-lunar valve and the opening of tricuspid valve.
- 13 In the opposite diagram :
- Which of the following blood vessels contain the highest percentage of oxygen gas ?
- (1) & (2).
  - (2) & (3).
  - (3) & (4).
  - (1) & (4).





- 14** The opposite graph shows the changes that occur in each of the left atrium and left ventricle during heart beating :

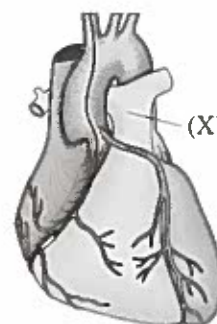


- Which of the following represents the state of valves at time (X) ?
- (a) The closure of each of the mitral and aortic valves.
  - (b) The closure of mitral valve and opening of aortic valve.
  - (c) The opening of mitral valve and closure of aortic valve.
  - (d) The opening of each of the mitral and aortic valves.

- 15** From the opposite figure :

- (1) Which of the following represents the function of structure (X) ?

- (a) Transporting the oxygenated blood from the heart to all the body parts.
- (b) Transporting the oxygenated blood from the two lungs to the heart.
- (c) Transporting the deoxygenated blood from the heart to the two lungs.
- (d) Returning the deoxygenated blood from all the body parts to the heart.



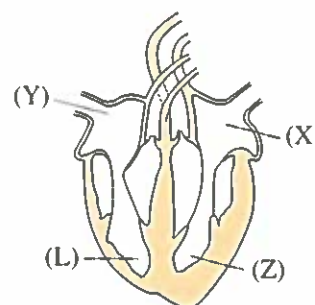
- (2) Which of the following vessels is connected to the heart, but it is not observed in the figure ?

- (a) Aorta.
- (b) Superior vena cava.
- (c) Pulmonary artery.
- (d) Inferior vena cava.

- 16** In the opposite figure :

Which of the following pathways shows the transfer of blood from the two lungs to the heart, then its pumping to the body parts and its return back to the heart again ?

- (a) (X) → (Z) → (L) → (Y).
- (b) (X) → (Z) → (Y) → (L).
- (c) (Y) → (L) → (X) → (Z).
- (d) (Y) → (L) → (Z) → (X).



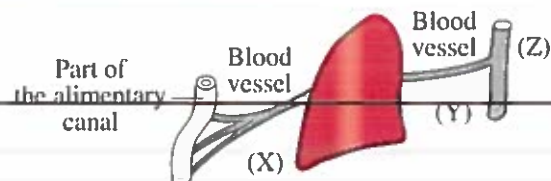
17 What are the main blood vessels that carry blood from and to the head respectively ?

- (a) Superior vena cava / Aorta. (b) Superior vena cava / Inferior vena cava.  
 (c) Inferior vena cava / Pulmonary artery. (d) Inferior vena cava / Pulmonary vein.

18 In the opposite figure :

(1) Which of the following is transported in blood vessel (X) ?

- (a) Glucose. (b) Bile juice.  
 (c) Glycogen. (d) Urea.



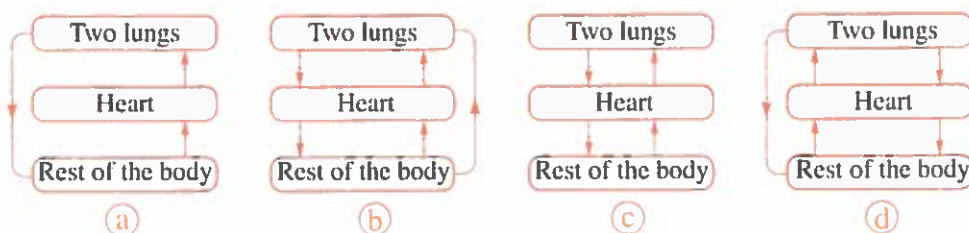
(2) The blood that flows in blood vessel (Y) contains a high level of .....

- (a) haemoglobin. (b) carbo-aminohaemoglobin.  
 (c) oxyhaemoglobin. (d) fatty acids.

(3) The blood vessel (Z) represents the .....

- (a) upper part of superior vena cava. (b) lower part of superior vena cava.  
 (c) upper part of inferior vena cava. (d) lower part of inferior vena cava.

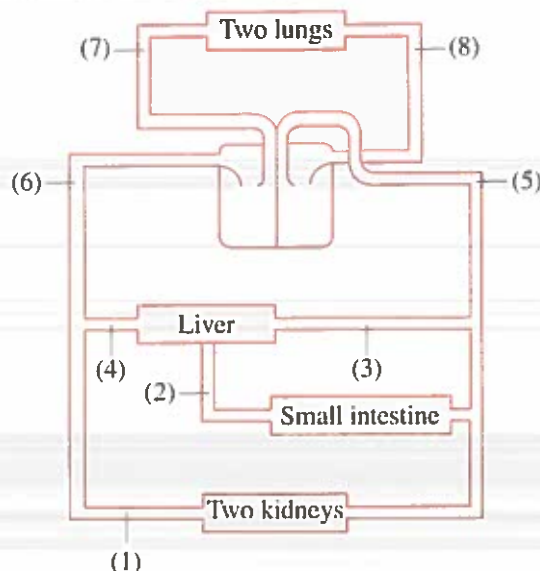
19 Which of the following diagrams illustrates the blood circulation in the human body ?



20 In the opposite figure :

(1) Through which of the following pathways the blood must pass to be transferred from the blood vessel no. (6) to the blood vessel no. (5) ?

- (a) (6) → (4) → (1) → (5).  
 (b) (6) → (4) → (3) → (5).  
 (c) (6) → (7) → (8) → (5).  
 (d) (6) → (2) → (3) → (5).



(2) Which of the following organs is/are connected with three blood vessels ?

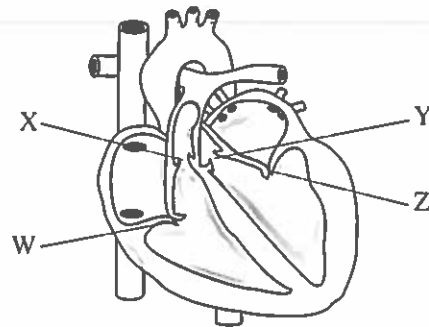
- (a) Two lungs.
- (b) Liver.
- (c) Small intestine.
- (d) Two kidneys.

21 Which of the following blood vessels contains the highest level of glucose after having a balanced meal ?

- (a) Aorta.
- (b) Pulmonary artery.
- (c) Hepatic portal vein.
- (d) Hepatic vein.

22 Using the opposite figure, which of the following pathways represents the correct arrangement for the journey of a red blood corpuscle from the brain to a leg ?

- (a) (X) → (W) → (Z) → (Y)
- (b) (Z) → (Y) → (X) → (W)
- (c) (W) → (X) → (Z) → (Y)
- (d) (Y) → (Z) → (X) → (W)



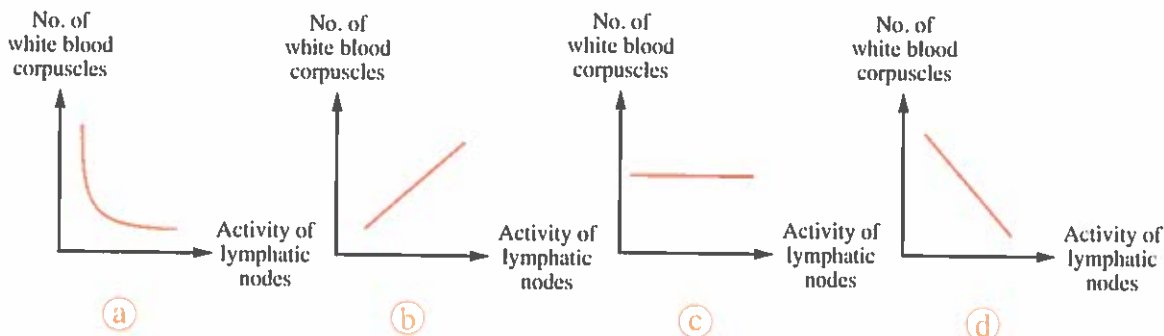
23 How far are these statements "the lymphatic vessels work on collecting the fatty acids and lymph", "both are directed to the heart by the superior vena cava" correct ?

- (a) The first statement is wrong and the second statement is correct.
- (b) The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.
- (c) The two statements are correct.
- (d) The two statements are wrong.

24 Which of the following organs has a great importance for the circulatory and lymphatic systems together ?

- (a) Villi.
- (b) Pancreas.
- (c) Bone marrow.
- (d) Lymphatic nodes.

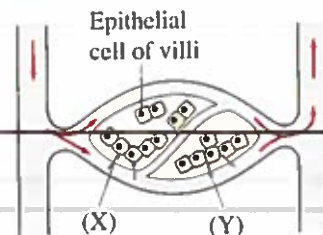
25 Which of the following graphs illustrates the relation between the activity of lymphatic nodes and the number of white blood corpuscles, when infecting with influenza virus ?



- 26 How many heart valves through which a red blood corpuscle passes during its journey from the brain to the lungs ?

(a) 2                      (b) 4                      (c) 6                      (d) 8

- 27 From the opposite figure :  
Which choice represents what passes in each of (X) and (Y) pathways ?



	(X)	(Y)
(a)	Amino acids	Glucose
(b)	Oxygen	Fatty acids
(c)	Carbon dioxide	Glucose
(d)	Oxygen	Carbon dioxide

- 28 Which component of the lymph fluid can be contributed in the formation of the blood clot ?

(a) Calcium ions.    (b) Sodium ions.    (c) Vitamin (D).    (d) Vitamin (A).

- 29 Which of the following are present in blood and lymph ?

(1) Glucose.    (2) Antibodies.    (3) White blood corpuscles.    (4) Globulin.

(a) (1), (2) and (4) only.                      (b) (1), (2) and (3) only.  
(c) (3) and (4) only.                      (d) (1), (2), (3) and (4).

- 30 Which choice in the following table expresses the lymph components ?

	Water	Antibodies	Lipids
(a)	✓	✓	✓
(b)	✓	✓	×
(c)	✓	×	✓
(d)	✓	✓	×

- 31 How many major blood vessels connected to the liver ?

(a) 1                      (b) 2                      (c) 3                      (d) 4

- 32 \* Which of the following represents the correct arrangement of heart chambers from the thinner to the thicker ?

(a) Left ventricle / Right ventricle / Two atria.  
(b) Right ventricle / Left ventricle / Two atria.  
(c) Two atria / Left ventricle / Right ventricle.  
(d) Two atria / Right ventricle / Left ventricle.

- 33 \* Which of the following is considered the first receiver for the nicotine for a smoker ?  
 (a) Left atrium. (b) Right atrium. (c) Left ventricle. (d) Right ventricle.
- 34 \* Which of the following represents the pathway of a red blood corpuscle from the heart to the left kidney ?  
 (a) Left ventricle → Pulmonary vein → Renal vein.  
 (b) Left ventricle → Aorta → Renal artery.  
 (c) Right ventricle → Pulmonary artery → Renal vein.  
 (d) Right ventricle → Pulmonary vein → Renal artery.
- 35 \* What is the blood vessel where the blood passes under low pressure and contains high level of  $\text{CO}_2$  ?  
 (a) Aorta. (b) Pulmonary artery. (c) Vena cava. (d) Renal artery.
- 36 \* What are the two valves that allow the passage of blood at the same time ?  
 (a) Bicuspid and pulmonary valves. (b) Pulmonary and aortic valves.  
 (c) Tricuspid and aortic valves. (d) Tricuspid and pulmonary valves.
- 37 \* Which of the following valves determine the pathway of the oxygenated blood through the heart ?  
 (a) Mitral and tricuspid valves. (b) Mitral and aortic valves.  
 (c) Pulmonary and aortic valves. (d) Tricuspid and pulmonary valves.
- 38 \* The following figures illustrate four different stages during a heartbeat :



(X)



(Y)



(Z)



(L)

Which of the following represents the correct arrangement of stages that occur after stage (Y) ?

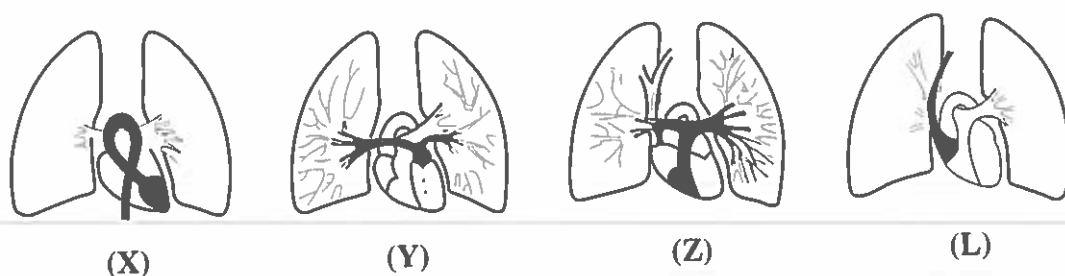
- (a) (X) → (L) → (Z). (b) (L) → (X) → (Z).  
 (c) (L) → (Z) → (X). (d) (Z) → (L) → (X).



- 39 \* Which of the following expresses the pathway of a red blood corpuscle from the foot till reaching the arm ?

- (a) Foot  $\rightarrow$  Two lungs  $\rightarrow$  Heart  $\rightarrow$  Alimentary canal  $\rightarrow$  Arm.  
 (b) Foot  $\rightarrow$  Heart  $\rightarrow$  Two lungs  $\rightarrow$  Kidney  $\rightarrow$  Arm.  
 (c) Foot  $\rightarrow$  Kidney  $\rightarrow$  Heart  $\rightarrow$  Two lungs  $\rightarrow$  Arm.  
 (d) Foot  $\rightarrow$  Heart  $\rightarrow$  Two lungs  $\rightarrow$  Heart  $\rightarrow$  Arm.

- 40 \* The following figures illustrate the stages of blood flow inside the human heart :



- (1) If the blood circulation starts with the return of the deoxygenated blood from all the body parts, which of the following represents the correct pathway for that ?

- (a) (X)  $\rightarrow$  (Y)  $\rightarrow$  (Z)  $\rightarrow$  (L).  
 (b) (Y)  $\rightarrow$  (Z)  $\rightarrow$  (L)  $\rightarrow$  (X).  
 (c) (L)  $\rightarrow$  (Z)  $\rightarrow$  (Y)  $\rightarrow$  (X).  
 (d) (Z)  $\rightarrow$  (Y)  $\rightarrow$  (L)  $\rightarrow$  (X).

- (2) The strongest stage of heart to pump blood is stage .....

- (a) (X). (b) (Y). (c) (Z). (d) (L).

- 41 \* The following table shows some changes that happened in the blood components' concentration during its passage through an organ, from which of the following organs does this blood come out ?

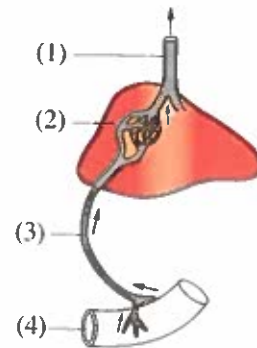
Blood components	The change in concentration
CO <sub>2</sub>	Increases
Glucose	Increases
O <sub>2</sub>	Decreases
Amino acids	Increases

- (a) Brain. (b) Kidney. (c) Small intestine. (d) Liver.

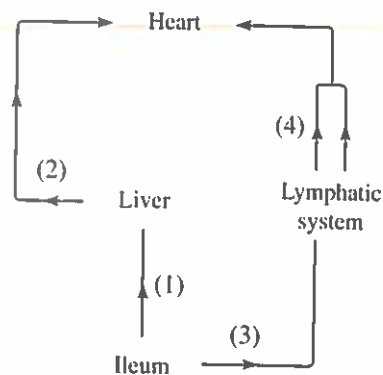
## Second

## Miscellaneous Questions

- 1 **Explain** : the blood pressure is different in each of the aorta and pulmonary artery, although both of them are arteries.
- 2 **Compare between** : the bicuspid valve and tricuspid valve.
- 3 **Explain** : liver is called the gate of food in the body.
- 4 **Follow by arrows only** : the pathway of a red blood cell that is present in the blood accompanied by the absorption of the digested food, till reaching the right atrium of the heart.
- 5 **From the opposite figure** :
  - (a) **What would happen** to the excess food substances when passing through structure no. (2) ?
  - (b) **Determine** three organs whose veins pour their contents in structure no. (3).
  - (c) After eating a meal, **which** blood vessel will contain the highest concentration of sugar ?
- 6 **Follow by arrows only** : the pathway of a glucose molecule, since its passing from the intestine till reaching the foot.



- 7 **In the opposite figure** :
  - (a) **What** is the name of the pathway (1) → (2) ? **And what** are the digested substances that pass through it ?
  - (b) **What** is the name of the pathway (3) → (4) ? **And what** are the digested substances that pass through it ?
  - (c) **Which** of the two blood vessels (1) or (2) contains the greatest amount of digested food during the food absorption process ?
  - (d) **What** are the final blood vessels where the two vessels no. (2) and (4) pour the fluid that is present in them ?



**8** Study the following figure, then answer :

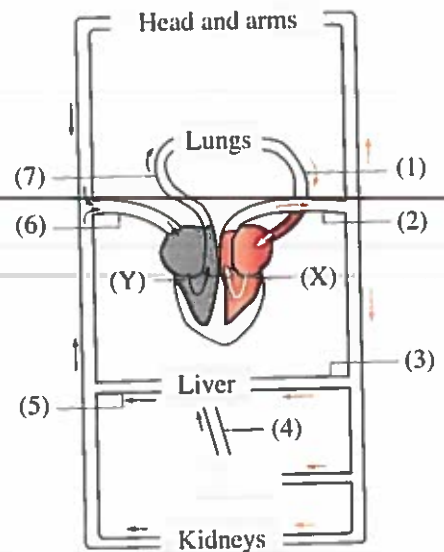
(a) Mention the number of the blood vessel that :

1. The blood vessels of pancreas, spleen and stomach return back to it.
2. Carries the highest level of oxyhaemoglobin.
3. Contains the highest level of amino acids after eating a meal.

(b) Which of them (X) or (Y) contains the bicuspid valve ?

(c) What is the side of heart that contains oxygenated blood (X) or (Y) ?

(d) Mention the type of blood in the two blood vessels no. (2) and (7).



**9** What happens in case of : the absence of lymphatic nodes that are present along the lymphatic vessels ?

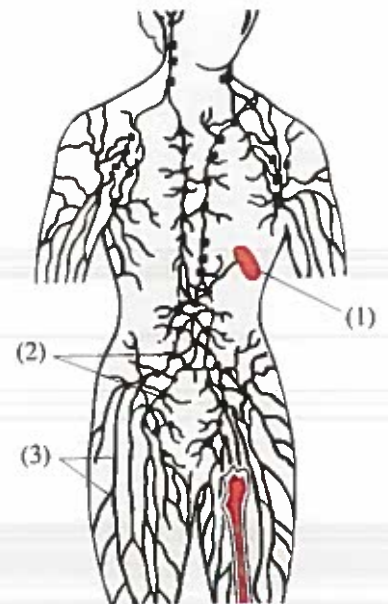
**10** Explain : spleen has a great importance for the circulatory and lymphatic systems.

**11** The following figure represents the most important defensive systems in the human body :

(a) What would happen in case of the removal of structure no. (1) ?

(b) Illustrate the relation between structure no. (2) and the number of white blood corpuscles, on the exposure to an infection.

(c) What is the difference between the fluid that is present in structure no. (3) and blood plasma ?

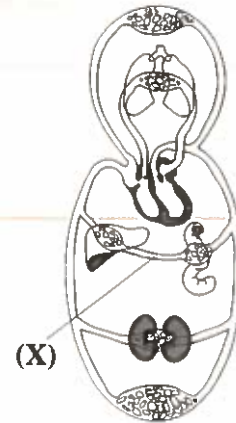


# New Types of questions?

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

**Choose two correct answers for the following questions :**

- 1 In the opposite figure, which of the following describe structure (X) correctly ?
- (a) Vein transports blood rich in glucose.
  - (b) Vein transports oxygenated blood to the heart.
  - (c) Artery transports blood to small intestine.
  - (d) Artery transports nutrients to all body parts.
  - (e) Blood vessel carries blood under low pressure.

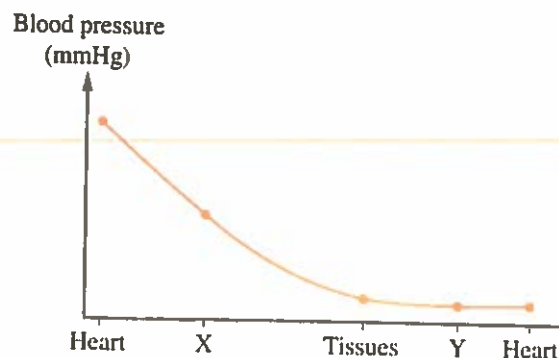


- 2 Which of the following **aren't** correct about inferior vena cava and lymphatic vessel ?
- (a) Both contain nucleated cells.
  - (b) Both are devoid of oxyhaemoglobin.
  - (c) Both are devoid of carbo-aminohaemoglobin.
  - (d) Both pour their contents directly in the right atrium.
  - (e) Both are thicker than aorta.

**Choose from the list what suits the spaces :**

- 3 During one of the blood pathways, blood pressure was measured in five blood vessels of a person and the results recorded as shown in the opposite graph :

- The reading at point (X) refers to : ..... (1) .....
- The reading at point (Y) refers to : ..... (2) .....



Renal artery
Renal vein
Superior vena cava
Nephric tubules blood capillaries
Hepatic portal vein



Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

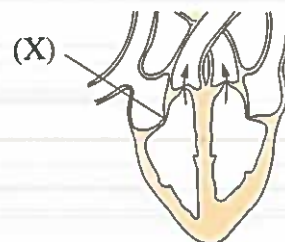
1 In the opposite figure, what happens during this stage ?

- (a) The bicuspid valve will close.
- (b) The semi-lunar valves will open.
- (c) The ventricles relax.
- (d) The ventricles contract.



2 From the opposite figure, when a disturbance occurs in the structure (X), the blood returns back again to the .....

- (a) right atrium.
- (b) left atrium.
- (c) right ventricle.
- (d) left ventricle.



3 Which of the following doesn't agree with the characteristics of the inferior vena cava ?

- (a) It carries the blood at low pressure.
- (b) It carries the blood to the heart.
- (c) It carries deoxygenated blood.
- (d) Its wall is thick.

4 *Chlamydomonas* alga shares *Amoeba* in that each of them .....

- (a) contains specialized transport tissues.
- (b) transfers gases to it from the surrounding medium by diffusion.
- (c) transfers the absorbed food substances through it by active transport.
- (d) transfers the absorbed food substances and gases through it by diffusion and active transport.

5 The following diagram represents a step in the formation of blood clot :

Damaged cells,  
blood platelets and  
blood clotting factors

Compound (Y)

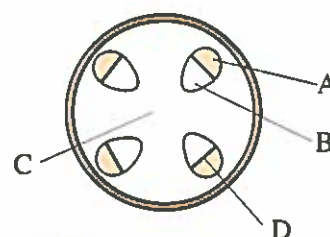
Prothrombin

Which of the following activates compound (Y) ?

- (a) Thrombin.
- (b) Heparin.
- (c) Fibrin.
- (d) Vitamin (K).



The opposite figure illustrates a diagrammatic section in the stem of a dicot plant, examine it, then answer :



6 What is the tissue that participates indirectly in increasing the efficiency of the transport process in the plant ?

- (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D

7 What is the tissue that contributes in supporting the plant ?

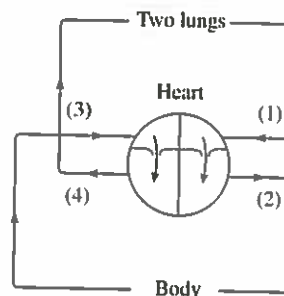
- (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D

8 Which of the following tissues doesn't contain parenchyma cells ?

- (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D

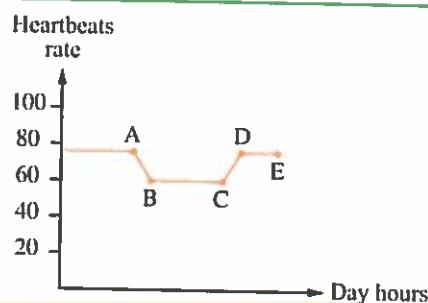
9 From the opposite figure, which blood vessel has the highest blood pressure ?

- (a) (1).  
(b) (2).  
(c) (3).  
(d) (4).

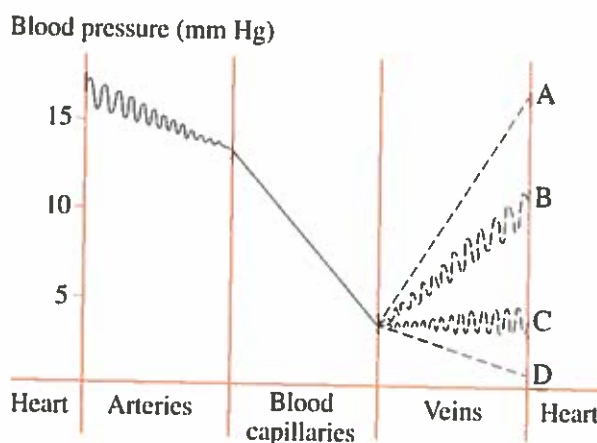


10 Study the opposite graph which shows the rate of heartbeats of a person during the day, what is the phase that represents the time of sleeping ?

- (a) CD (b) AB  
(c) BC (d) DE

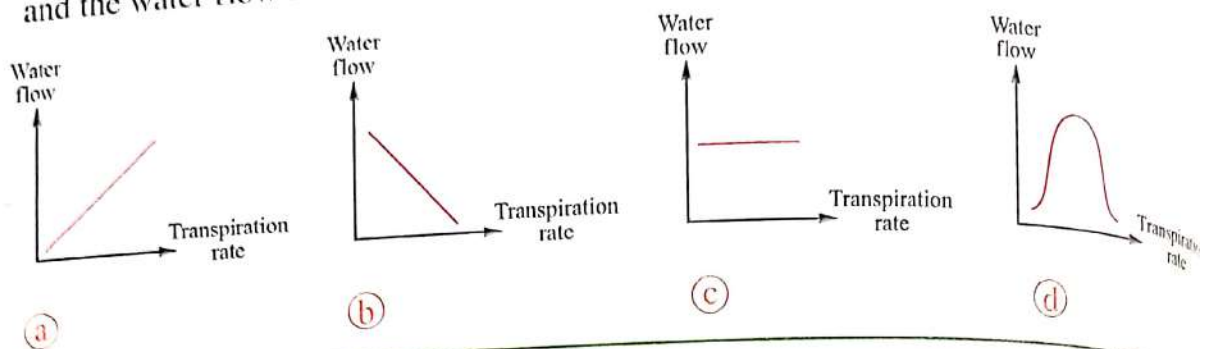


11 The opposite graph shows the blood pressure of a person at rest, where blood comes out from the heart and passes through arteries to the blood capillaries. Which of the following illustrates the blood pressure during its passage in the veins, before returning back to the heart ?



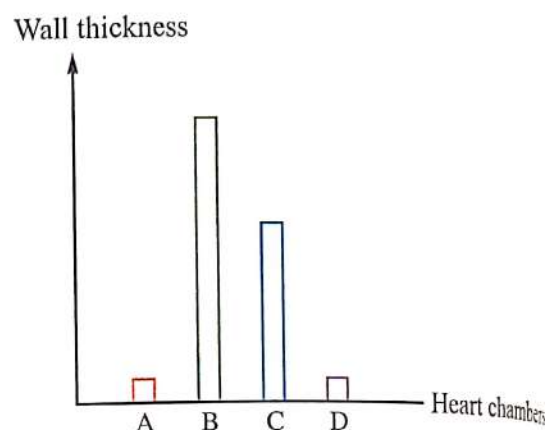
- (a) (A). (b) (B). (c) (C). (d) (D).

- 12 Which of the following graphs illustrates the relation between the rate of transpiration and the water flow in the stem within 24 hours ?



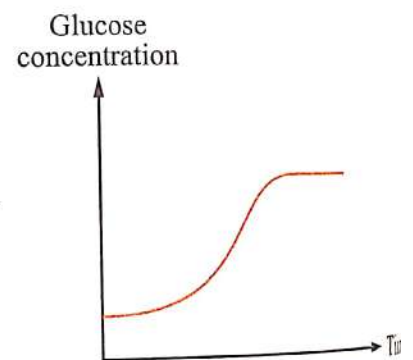
- 13 Study the opposite graph which expresses the difference in the thickness of muscular fibers which form the human heart chambers, then determine which column represents the right ventricle .....

- (a) (A).                      (b) (B).  
(c) (C).                      (d) (D).



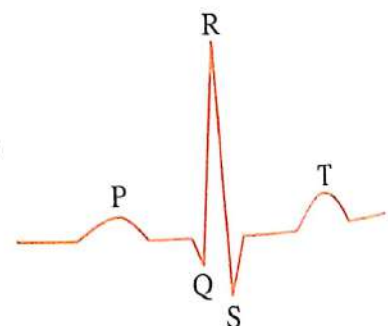
- 14 Study the opposite graph, which blood vessel is represented by the graph ?

- (a) Hepatic vein.                      (b) Pulmonary artery.  
(c) Hepatic portal vein.                      (d) Hepatic artery.



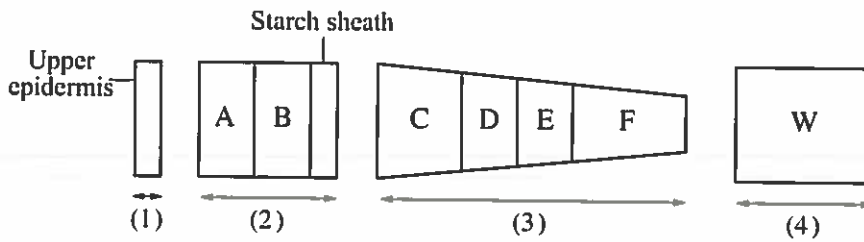
- 15 The opposite figure shows the normal electrical impulses for the human heart during a heartbeat, which of the following shows the pathway of a nerve impulse from the two atria till the contraction of ventricles' walls ?

- (a) P & R                      (b) P & T  
(c) Q & R                      (d) Q & S





- 16 Study the following diagram which shows 4 parts in the structure of a dicot plant's stem which are arranged from outside to inside, then determine :



What is the function of (B) and (W) tissues ?

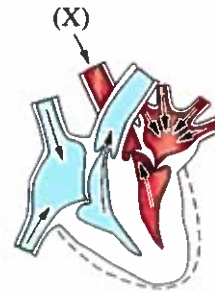
- ☐ a Transporting inorganic substances.      ☐ b Elasticity and support.  
☐ c Aeration and storage.      ☐ d Transporting organic substances.

- 17 Study the opposite figure, then determine :

The value of the blood pressure in blood vessel (X)

is ..... mm Hg.

- ☐ a 10  
☐ b 60  
☐ c 80  
☐ d 130



- 18 When the precipitation of lignin increases in the xylem vessels, the ascent of the sap increases, which phenomenon represents this relation ?

- ☐ a Cohesion force.      ☐ b Adhesion force.  
☐ c Capillarity phenomenon.      ☐ d Osmotic pressure.

- 19 Which of the following transfers prothrombin to its activation site ?

- ☐ a Blood platelets.      ☐ b WBCs  
☐ c Blood plasma.      ☐ d RBCs

- 20 Which of the following salts play an important role in regulating blood PH value ?

- ☐ a Sodium.      ☐ b Chloride.  
☐ c Bicarbonate.      ☐ d Calcium.

**21** Which of the following occurs to the plant during cold winter days ?

- (a) Transpiration process increases and transporting of ready-made food decreases.
- (b) Transpiration process decreases and transporting of ready-made food increases.
- (c) Transpiration process and transporting of ready-made food decreases.
- (d) Transpiration process and transporting of ready-made food increases.

Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

**22** What is the relation between : the number of white blood corpuscles and the exposure to an injury ?

---



---

**23** Explain : the lymphatic system is considered a transport and immune system at the same time.

---



---

**24** What is the similarity between : pericycle and medullary rays ?

---

**25** The opposite figure represents the movement of blood inside the blood vessels, examine it, then answer :

(a) What is the difference between the blood components in each of the blood vessel no. (1) and no. (2) ?

---



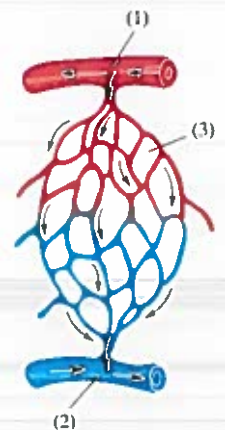
---

(b) Determine the direction of the blood flow in each of blood vessel no. (1) and no. (2) "with respect to the heart".

---

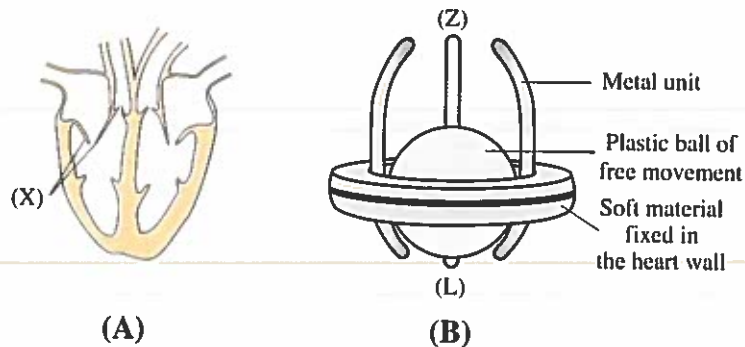


---





- 26** The following figure (A) represents a diagrammatic section in the human heart when a damage occurred in part (X), where it is replaced by an artificial part represented in figure (B) (enlarged image), study the two figures, then answer :



(a) What does figure (B) represent ? And what is its role ?

(b) Determine the direction of each of (Z) and (L) when fixing this part in the heart.

- 27** What happens if : the concentration of the dissolved ions in the root cells is equal to their concentration in the soil solution ? And what is the effect of this on the root pressure ?



**Exercise on  
Chapter**

**2**

**From the Questions  
of the Previous Year Exams**



Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

**1** What is the consequent of presence of cambium in monocotyledon plant stem ?

- ☐ (a) Decreases of stem support.
- ☐ (b) Increasing of transporting rate.
- ☐ (c) Increasing length of phloem.
- ☐ (d) Dilation of primary xylem.

**2** The first valve that receives the nicotine from the lung is ..... valve.

- ☐ (a) tricuspid
- ☐ (b) bicuspid
- ☐ (c) semi lunar valve that connects to pulmonary artery
- ☐ (d) semi lunar valve that connects to aorta

**3** Increasing the size of the plant stem due to the presence of .....

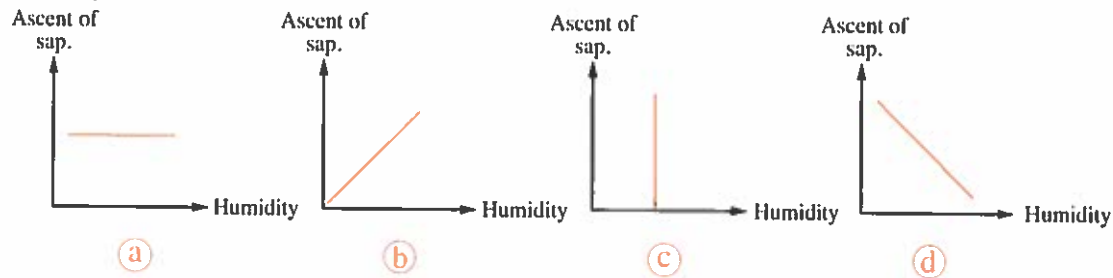
- ☐ (a) xylem tissue.
- ☐ (b) phloem tissue.
- ☐ (c) cambium tissue.
- ☐ (d) pericycle.

**4** The figure illustrates the passage of blood in a blood vessel from .....

- ☐ (a) left atrium to left ventricle.
- ☐ (b) liver to small intestine.
- ☐ (c) brain to heart.
- ☐ (d) heart to kidney.



5 Which graph represents the relation between ascent of sap in plant and increasing humidity ?



6 If the atrio-ventricle node stopped one second only, .....

- (a) the hearts beats would stop completely.
- (b) the 2 ventricles would stop the contracting.
- (c) the 2 auricles would stop the contracting.
- (d) the heartbeats would decrease one beat.

7 In a plant stem, the function of the cortex is mainly to support the stem only. How far is this statement correct ?

- (a) The statement is incorrect, because the stem cortex also can take part in photosynthesis process.
- (b) The statement is correct, because the stem cortex is made up of supportive woody tissues.
- (c) The statement is incorrect, because the function of the stem cortex is protecting the plant from external conditions only.
- (d) The statement is incorrect, because the function of the stem cortex is storing starches only.

8 Which of the following can help blood capillaries to carry out their function ?

- (a) Having three layers that facilitate the exchange of small molecules between blood and cells of tissues.
- (b) Having valves that facilitate the exchange of blood between arteries and veins.
- (c) Having thick walls that facilitate the exchange of large molecules between blood and tissues.
- (d) Having small pores that facilitate the exchange of substances between blood and cells of tissues.

9 The thickness of ..... wall helps the exchange of  $O_2$  between the blood and the nerve cell.

- (a) artery
- (b) vein
- (c) alveoli
- (d) blood capillaries

10 There is no relation between blood pressure and .....

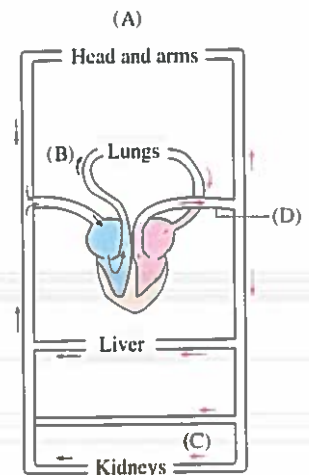
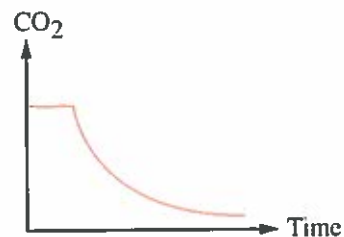
- (a) the level of glucose in the blood.
- (b) the type of blood vessel (artery or vein).
- (c) the age.
- (d) the distance between the heart and organ.

11 How are companion cells adapted for their role of active transporting substances in and out of the sieve tube members ?

- (a) They contain many mitochondria that provide energy via cellular respiration.
- (b) They contain many mitochondria that provide energy via photosynthesis.
- (c) They contain a large vacuole to keep them turgid and more stable.
- (d) They contain many nuclei that provide energy via photosynthesis.

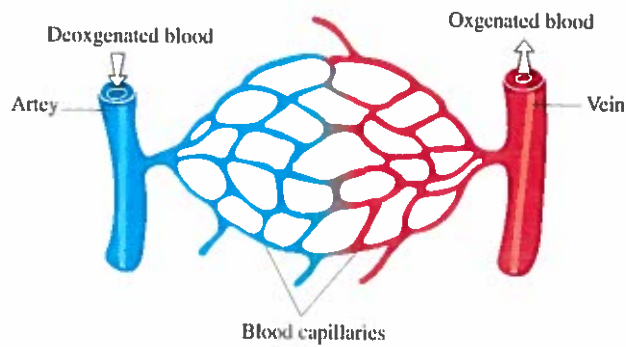
12 What is the letter of the blood vessel that is shown in the figure and is represented by this graph ?

- (a) (A).
- (b) (B).
- (c) (C).
- (d) (D).





- 13 The opposite figure represents the direction of blood through blood capillaries, where are these blood capillaries found ?



- (a) In the liver.
- (b) In the small intestine.
- (c) In the two lungs.
- (d) In the two kidneys.

- 14 On staining a transverse section of a dicot plant stem with iodine solution, which of the following appear(s) with dark blue colour ?

- (a) Xylem vessels.
- (b) Companion cells of phloem.
- (c) Cambium.
- (d) The innermost row of cells in cortex.

- 15 What are the two valves which allow the blood to pass nearly at the same time ?

- (a) Mitral valve and pulmonary valve.
- (b) Pulmonary valve and aortic valve.
- (c) Mitral valve and aortic valve.
- (d) Tricuspid valve and aortic valve.

- 16 Which of the hearts chambers is responsible for receiving the lymph ?

- (a) Right atrium.
- (b) Right ventricle.
- (c) Left atrium.
- (d) Left ventricle.

- 17 In plants, what is the main process that root hair cells use to take in water from the soil ?

- (a) Active transport.
- (b) Osmosis.
- (c) Photosynthesis.
- (d) Translocation.

- 18 What is the blood vessel that contains the highest percentage of fats after digestion and absorption processes ?

- (a) Superior vena cava.
- (b) Inferior vena cava.
- (c) Hepatic portal vein.
- (d) Hepatic vein.

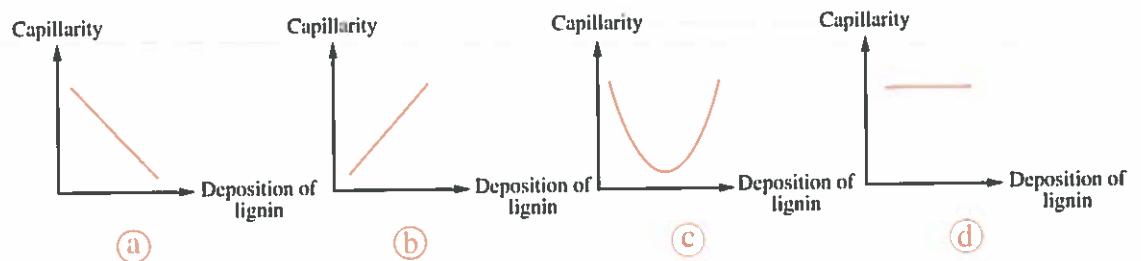
19 Which of the following tissues has the ability to divide mitotically in the plant ?

- (a) Xylem. (b) Phloem.  
(c) Palisade tissue. (d) Cambium.

20 After performing a muscular effort, which of the following blood vessels carries the lowest concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$  ?

- (a) Hepatic vein.  
(b) Pulmonary artery.  
(c) Pulmonary vein.  
(d) Inferior vena cava.

21 Increasing deposition of lignin on xylem vessel affects water transport by capillarity. Which of the following represents that ?



Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

22 The shape of RBCs adapts with the function. **Explain.**

---



---

23 Give two reasons for : blood non-clotting inside blood vessels ?

---



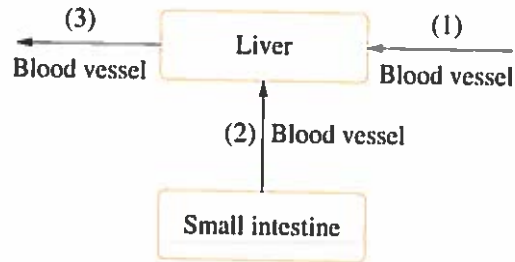
---





**24** Study the opposite diagram, then answer :

- (a) Determine the number of blood vessel which is responsible for transferring the highest level of amino acids.
- (b) Determine the number of blood vessel which is responsible for transferring vitamin (K) to the liver.



**25** Trace the path of blood cell from small intestine to lungs using the following data :  
Hepatic portal vein - lung - right ventricle - pulmonary artery - hepatic vein - inferior vena cava - right atrium.

---



---



---



---

**26** "Liver is considered as a double edged weapon in each of blood liquidity and blood clotting". How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.

---



---



---

**27** Both lymph and blood have an immunization function. Explain.

---



---



---

# Chapter Three

---

## Respiration in Living Organisms



Lesson **1** **Cellular Respiration.**

Lesson **2** **Respiration in Living Organisms.**

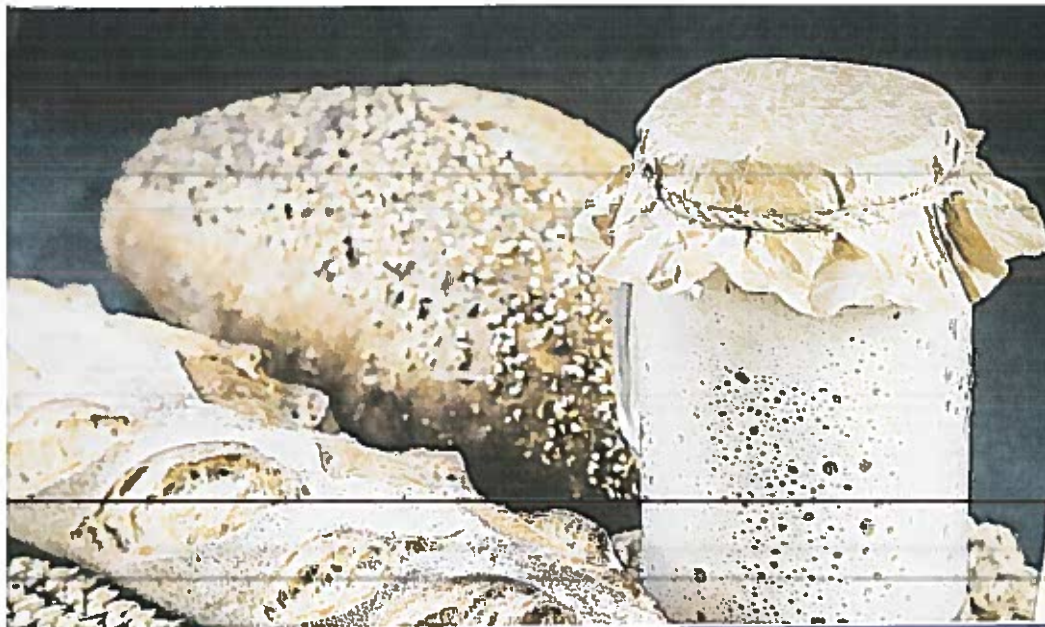
- ▶ Test on Chapter 3
- ▶ Exercise from the Questions of the Previous Year Exams on Chapter Three

## Objectives of the chapter

**By the end of this chapter, the student should be able to :**

- Identify the concept of cellular respiration.
- Understand the steps of glycolysis and its importance.
- Identify the steps of aerobic respiration and where it takes place.
- Distinguish between the aerobic and anaerobic respiration.
- Identify the role of lungs in the respiration mechanism in man.
- State the importance of cellular respiration.
- Link between photosynthesis and respiration in plants.





## Chapter

# 3

## Lesson One

# Cellular Respiration

- Before studying the cellular respiration, we must differentiate between the gas exchange and cellular respiration :

### Gas exchange

The process in which the living organism obtains **oxygen directly** from the atmospheric air, as in the **unicellular organisms** or by a **respiratory system**, as in the **multicellular organisms**, and releases **carbon dioxide** as a final product of respiration.

### Cellular respiration

The vital process by which the living organism's cells extract the **energy stored** in the chemical bonds of food molecules, especially sugars (glucose) that are manufactured by the plant or eaten by the animal, then this energy is stored in the form of **ATP molecules** to be used in performing different activities.

### Cellular respiration

- The cellular respiration process starts by the oxidation of a **glucose molecule**, where the molecule of food is expressed usually by the glucose molecule, on illustrating the steps of its breaking down, as the majority of living organisms' cells use it to produce energy more than their use for any other molecules of the available food.
- Most stages of the glucose molecule oxidation occur inside the mitochondria.
- The energy released from cellular respiration is stored in ATP molecules (adenosine triphosphate).

### Note

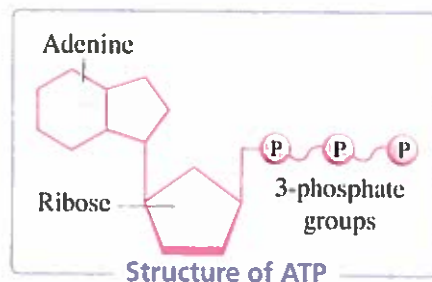
Glucose and other carbohydrates are considered to be forms of stored energy, also they are forms by which the energy transfers from one cell to another and from one living organism to another.



## ATP molecules

- A molecule of ATP is built up of three sub-units which are :

- Adenine** : a nitrogenous base (has basic properties).
- Ribose** : a 5-carbon (pentose) sugar.
- Three phosphate groups**.



- ATP molecules are considered the universal currency of energy in the cell, as any energy required by the cell needs the presence of ATP molecules which are easily transferred, and when they change into ADP (adenosine diphosphate) molecules, an amount of energy is released from them (which is about 7–12 kcal/mol).

### Integration with Chemistry



- Kilocalorie (C or kcal) is estimated by the amount of energy required to raise the temperature of 1 kg of water one degree Celsius, while the calorie (c or cal) is estimated by the amount of energy required to raise the temperature of 1 g of water one degree Celsius, from that we can conclude :

1 kilocalorie (1 kcal) equals 1000 calories.

- Mole is the atomic or molecular mass of the substance expressed in grams.

## 1 Test yourself

Answered

Choose the correct answer :

How can ADP molecule be converted into ATP molecule ?

- By breaking down a bond between two phosphate groups with releasing energy.
- By breaking down a bond between two phosphate groups in the presence of energy.
- By forming a bond between two phosphate groups with releasing energy.
- By forming a bond between two phosphate groups in the presence of energy.

## First Aerobic cellular respiration



- It is the main route for obtaining energy in the majority of living organisms, and it takes place in the presence of oxygen.
- The oxidation of one mole of glucose ( $C_6H_{12}O_6$ ) produces an amount of energy that is about 38ATP molecules , and this can be illustrated by the following equation :

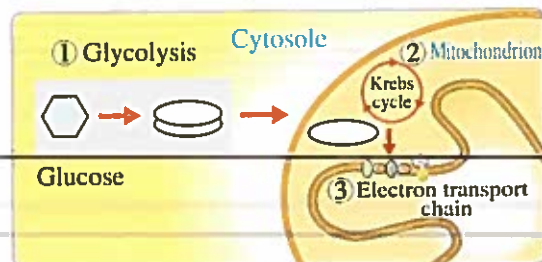




### Stages of glucose molecule oxidation

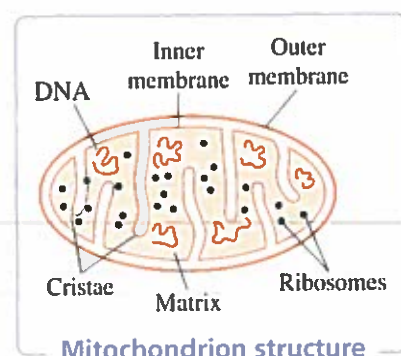
- The oxidation of glucose molecule takes place in three major stages, as follows :

- Glycolysis occurs in the cytosole (non-organelle part of cytoplasm) of the cell.
- Krebs cycle occurs inside the mitochondria.
- Electron transport chain occurs inside the mitochondria.



As the mitochondria contain :

- The respiratory enzymes.
- Water.
- Coenzymes.
- Phosphate groups.
- Electron carrier molecules (Cytochromes) that carry the electrons at different energy levels, where the hydrogen atoms are removed during the reaction to be passed to the coenzymes.



From the most important coenzymes

**NAD<sup>+</sup>** which is **reduced** into NADH :



**FAD** which is **reduced** into FADH<sub>2</sub> :



*Do you know... ?*

- In human body, NAD molecules are synthesized from vitamin (B<sub>3</sub>) and FAD molecules are synthesized from vitamin (B<sub>2</sub>). So, both vitamins have a great importance in the food substances that we eat.

### 2 Test yourself

Choose the correct answer :

What is the amount of energy produced from the aerobic oxidation of one molecule of glucose ?

- (a) 12 kcal/mol.      (b) 38 kcal/mol.      (c) 360 kcal/mol.      (d) 3800 kcal/mol.

Answered

# 1 Glycolysis



- It takes place in both the aerobic and anaerobic respirations to produce energy, where glycolysis stage occurs in the absence or lack of oxygen.

- Site of its occurrence :**

It occurs in the **cytosole**.

- Steps of glycolysis :**

One molecule of glucose (6-carbon) is broken down into two molecules of pyruvic acid (3-carbon) through a group of reactions, **as follows :**

① **Glucose molecule** is converted into glucose 6-phosphate, then fructose 6-phosphate, then fructose 1,6-diphosphate.

② Fructose 1,6-diphosphate (6C) is broken down into two molecules of phosphoglyceraldehyde (3C).

③ Each molecule of phosphoglyceraldehyde (PGAL) is oxidized into pyruvic acid molecule, therefore **two molecules of pyruvic acid** are produced.

- These reactions are accompanied by : (for each molecule of glucose)

- Reducing two molecules of the coenzyme  $2\text{NAD}^+ \longrightarrow 2\text{NADH}$
- Producing two molecules of ATP in the cytosole of the cell.

- The equation of the reaction :**



- The produced energy :**

Two molecules of ATP which are not enough to perform all the vital activities in the living organisms, therefore in case of the presence of oxygen, pyruvic acid passes into the mitochondria to produce more energy, and this takes place in two stages, **which are :**

- **Krebs cycle.**
- **Electron transport chain.**

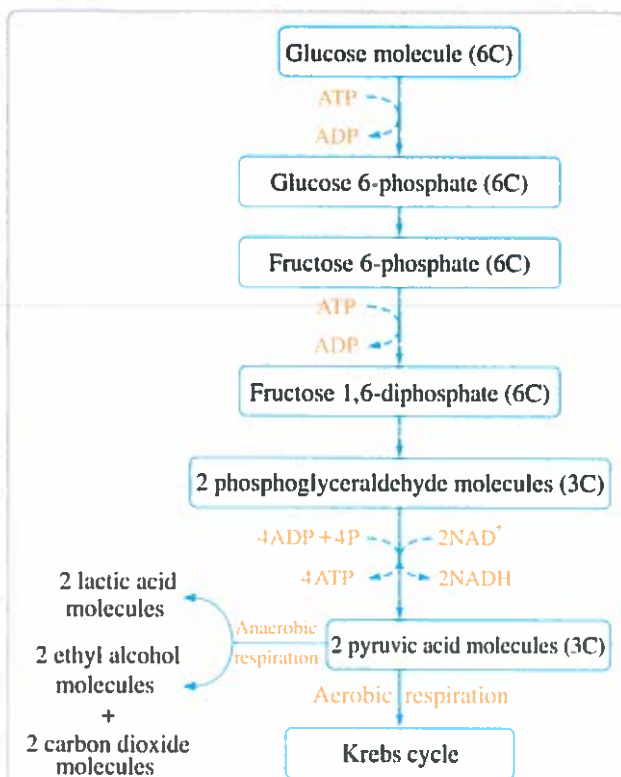


Diagram illustrates the steps of glycolysis

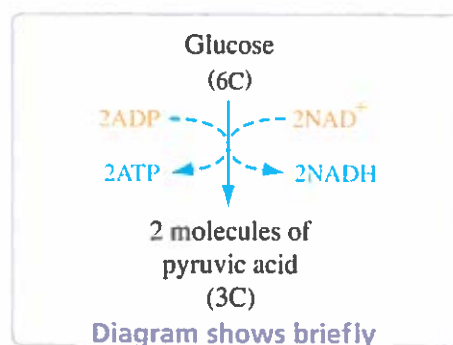


Diagram shows briefly the steps of glycolysis

• The importance of glycolysis :

- The production of two molecules of ATP
- Obtaining pyruvic acid which is used in both aerobic and anaerobic respiration.

**3 Test yourself**

Answered

Choose the correct answer :

Which of the following is required in order to start the glycolysis process ?

- (a) 2 molecules of ATP                      (b) 2 molecules of  $\text{NAD}^+$   
(c) 4 molecules of ADP                      (d) 4 phosphate groups

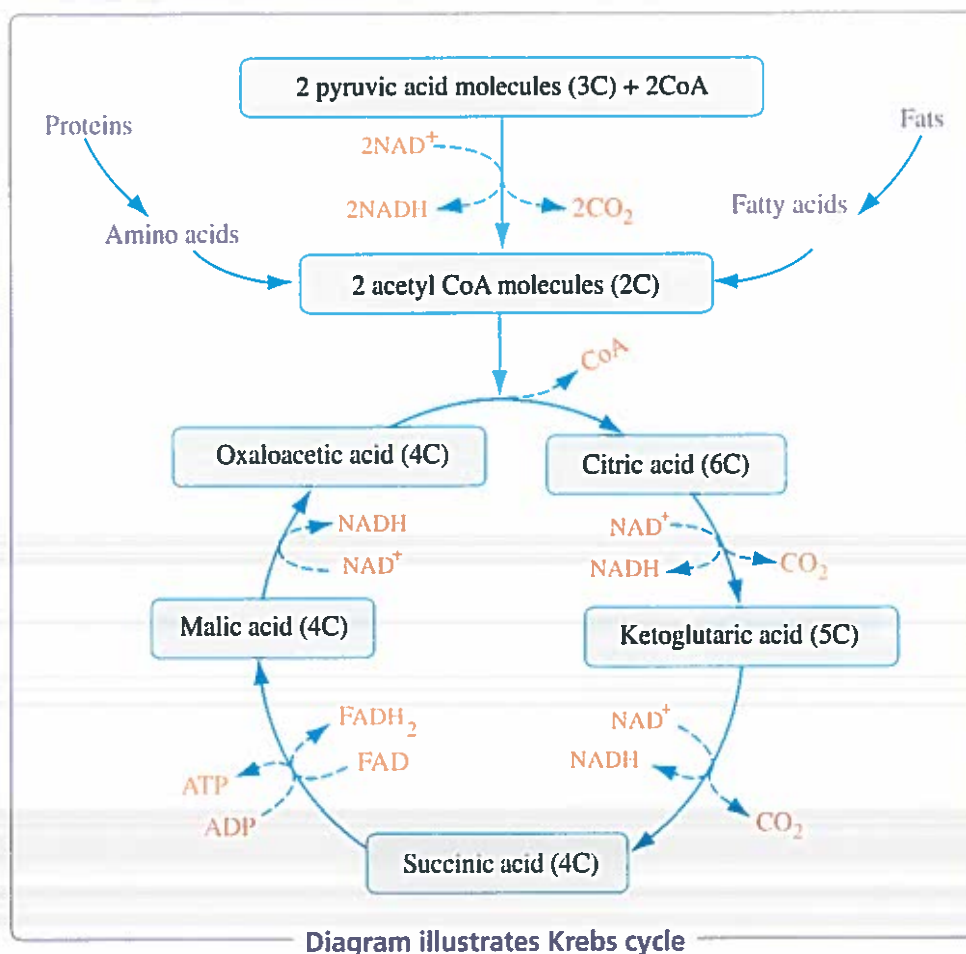
**2 Krebs cycle**

- The first scientist who described this cycle was **Sir Hans Krebs** in 1937, and he won Nobel prize for that in 1953



Hans Krebs

- Site of its occurrence : it occurs inside the **mitochondria**.





• **Before entering into Krebs cycle, the following occurs :**

Each molecule of pyruvic acid is oxidized to change into acetyl group that combines with the coenzyme (A) "CoA", forming acetyl coenzyme (A) "Acetyl CoA", and this produces :

- 2 molecules of NADH
- 2 molecules of  $\text{CO}_2$

**Note**

The other acetyl groups resulting from the breaking down of fatty acids and amino acids molecules can combine with the CoA to join the Krebs cycle.

• **Krebs cycle steps :**

- ① Each molecule of acetyl CoA joins the Krebs cycle, where the CoA splits off the acetyl group to repeat its role in another cycle.
- ② The acetyl group (2C) combines with the oxaloacetic acid (4C) to form citric acid (6C).
- ③ The citric acid passes through three intermediate compounds which **start** by the ketoglutaric acid (5C), **then** succinic acid (4C), **then** malic acid (4C), and **at the end** of the reactions citric acid is formed again (**therefore Krebs cycle is called the citric acid cycle**).

• **During one Krebs cycle, the number of the released molecules :**

- Two molecules of  $\text{CO}_2$
- Three molecules of NADH
- One molecule of  $\text{FADH}_2$
- One molecule of ATP



**Key Point**

The produced  $\text{CO}_2$  molecules from Krebs cycle enter into the blood circulation by their combination with haemoglobin of RBCs and after gas exchange in lungs, they are expelled out with the exhaled air.

- Krebs cycle is repeated twice for each molecule of the acetyl group, (**i.e.** it is repeated twice for one glucose molecule).

• **The importance of Krebs cycle :**

The oxidation of carbon atoms through a group of reactions by removing the electrons which are received by the coenzymes ( $\text{NAD}^+$  and FAD), and then these coenzymes transfer them to the cytochromes to release the energy required to form ATP molecules.

- Krebs cycle doesn't require the presence of oxygen, because the oxidation of carbon atoms during the Krebs cycle reactions is occurred by losing electrons that are received by  $\text{NAD}^+$  and FAD

4

**Test yourself**

**Choose the correct answer :**

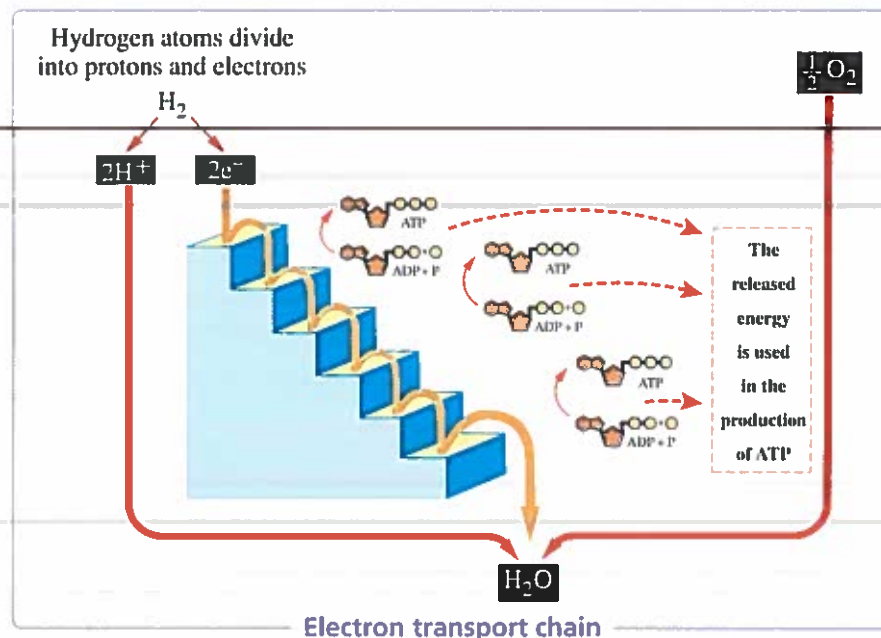
Which of the following acids is formed from the acid that precedes it in Krebs cycle, without the reduction of coenzymes ?

- (a) Citric acid.      (b) Ketoglutaric acid.      (c) Malic acid.      (d) Oxaloacetic acid.

Answered

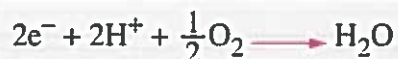
### 3 Electron transport chain

- The terminal (last) stage of aerobic respiration that starts with the end of Krebs cycle.
- **Site of its occurrence** : it occurs inside the **mitochondria**.



#### • Electron transport chain steps :

- ① Hydrogen and high-energy electrons that are carried on each of  $NADH$  and  $FADH_2$  are passed through a certain sequence of coenzymes called "**cytochromes**" (electrons carriers) that are present in the inner membrane of mitochondria.
- ② The cytochromes carry the electrons at different energy levels. During the passage of these high-energy electrons from one molecule of cytochrome to another, a sufficient energy is released to form ATP molecules from ADP molecules, which is called "**oxidative phosphorylation**".
- ③ A pair of electrons combines with a pair of  $H^+$ , then with one oxygen atom to form a water molecule, **according to the following equation** :



**So, oxygen is considered the last receptor in the electron transport chain.**

#### Note

In the electron transport chain, each  $NADH$  molecule produces three molecules of ATP, while each  $FADH_2$  molecule produces two molecules of ATP



### • The importance of electron transport chain :

Releasing the energy stored in NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub> molecules through the passage of electrons over a sequence of cytochromes and using the produced energy to form ATP molecules from ADP molecules.

### Key Points

- A molecule of NADH that carries two electrons, loses them when converted into NAD<sup>+</sup> molecule and vice versa, depending on the following reaction :

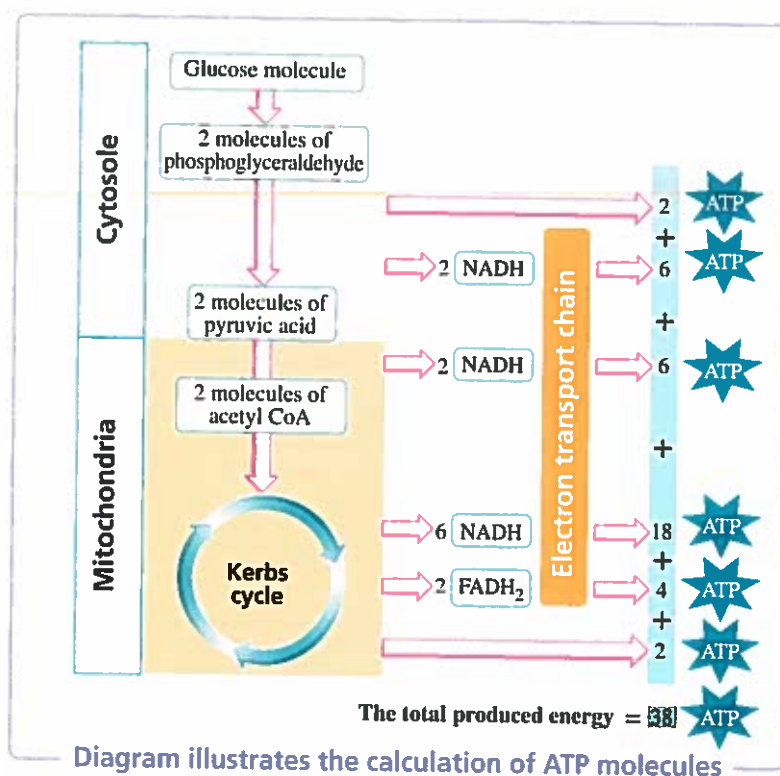


- A molecule of FADH<sub>2</sub> that carries two electrons, loses them when converted into FAD molecule and vice versa, depending on the following reaction :



### Calculating the number of ATP molecules

- In aerobic respiration (the presence of oxygen), the oxidation of one molecule of glucose produces **38** ATP molecules, **where** :
  - 2 molecules in the cytoplasm of the cell (produced during glycolysis).
  - 36 molecules in the mitochondria (during the respiration stage).
- This is illustrated in the following diagram :



### 5 Test yourself

Answered

Choose the correct answer :

- 1 What is the indication of the presence of 6 molecules of water in the following equation :  $(C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 \longrightarrow 6CO_2 + 6H_2O)$  ?
  - (a) Glycolysis of a glucose molecule.
  - (b) Occurrence of Krebs cycle twice.
  - (c) Occurrence of complete oxidative phosphorylation process.
  - (d) Storage of energy in NADH and  $FADH_2$  molecules.
- 2 If the stored energy is not released from the coenzymes during the electron transport chain, what is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted from the oxidation of one glucose molecule aerobically ?
  - (a) 2 ATP molecules.
  - (b) 4 ATP molecules.
  - (c) 8 ATP molecules.
  - (d) 16 ATP molecules.

## Second Anaerobic cellular respiration

### The anaerobic respiration (Fermentation) :

It is a process by which the living organism obtains energy from the food molecule (glucose) in the absence or lack of oxygen by the help of a group of special enzymes, producing a small quantity of energy (2 ATP molecules).

### Stages of anaerobic respiration (Fermentation)

- 1 Glucose molecule is decomposed into two molecules of pyruvic acid, **resulting in the production of :**
  - Two molecules of NADH
  - Two molecules of ATP
- 2 Pyruvic acid is converted into lactic acid or ethyl alcohol, according to the type of cell in which it was formed, and this is called "**fermentation**".

### Types of fermentation

1 Acidic fermentation

2 Alcoholic fermentation

① **Acidic fermentation** : as in animal cells (especially the muscular cells) and bacteria, where :

- **In the muscle cells**, when the muscles exert vigorous efforts or exercises, they resort to the anaerobic respiration, where they consume most of the oxygen that is present in them and tend to reduce the pyruvic acid into lactic acid ( $C_3H_6O_3$ ) through its combination with the electrons that are carried on NADH, causing what is known by the "**muscle fatigue**".
- **In bacteria**, the pyruvic acid is reduced into lactic acid in the absence of oxygen, and many dairy industries depend on this type of fermentation, such as cheese, butter and yoghurt.

#### Notes

- If oxygen is available, lactic acid is oxidized into pyruvic acid again, then into acetyl CoA to complete the stages of aerobic respiration and produce energy.
- Seeds of seed plants have the ability to respire anaerobically, if they are kept in anaerobic conditions.



② **Alcoholic fermentation** : as in yeast and some plant tissues, where pyruvic acid is reduced into ethyl alcohol (ethanol) and carbon dioxide is released. This is used in the industry of some products, such as alcohol and bread industries.

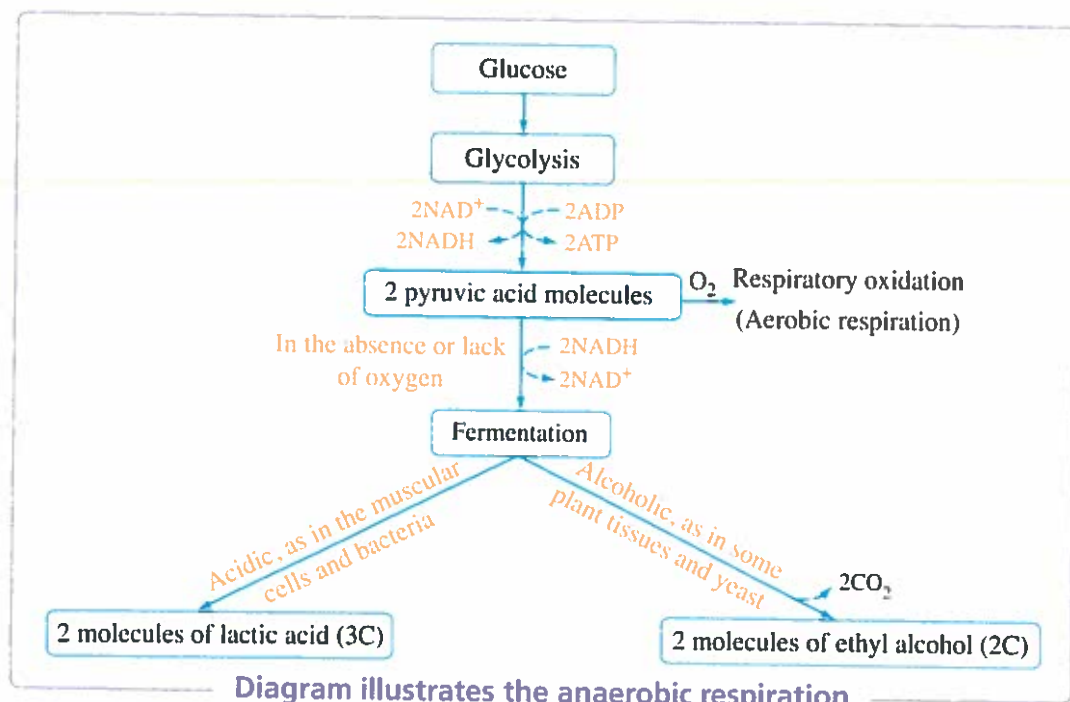


Diagram illustrates the anaerobic respiration



### Key Point

Although the ATP molecules are not produced on the fermentation of pyruvic acid, it is an important step after glycolysis during the anaerobic respiration, where two molecules of  $\text{NAD}^+$  are re-produced to continue the glycolysis process and obtaining more ATP molecules.



### Test yourself

Answered

Choose the correct answer :

Which of the following should be provided with a sufficient amount, to remove the muscle fatigue ?

- (a) Glucose.      (b) Oxygen.      (c) Glycogen.      (d) Glucose and oxygen.

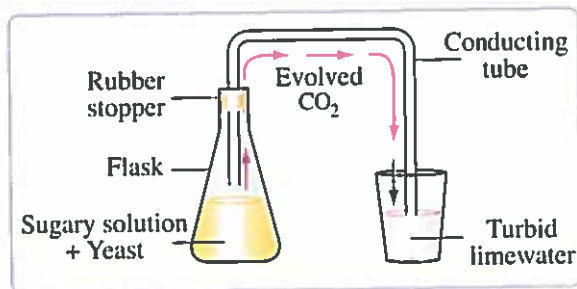


### Experiment

The proof of anaerobic respiration process  
(The proof of alcoholic fermentation process)

#### 1. Steps :

- (1) Put a sugary solution (or molasses that is diluted with water by a ratio of 1 : 2 respectively) in a conical flask.
- (2) Add a piece of yeast into the flask and mix it with the solution thoroughly.
- (3) Close the flask with a stopper of rubber through which a conducting tube passes and dip the free end of the tube into a beaker containing limewater.
- (4) Leave the apparatus in a warm place for several hours.



#### 2. Observation :

- (1) Gas bubbles are seen on the surface of the solution in the flask.
- (2) The release of alcohol odour from the flask.
- (3) Limewater becomes turbid.

#### 3. Conclusion :

- (1) Yeast performs an anaerobic respiration process. So,  $\text{CO}_2$  gas is evolved that causes the turbidity of limewater, as well as the sugary solution turns into an alcohol.
- (2) Yeast performs the anaerobic respiration (in the absence of oxygen) and this is called alcoholic fermentation.

🎁 From the previous, we can make the following comparisons :

1

### Aerobic respiration

- It requires the presence of oxygen for the combination of electrons and protons together, then with oxygen to form water.
- A part of it occurs in the **cytoplasm** and the rest in the **mitochondria**.
- The pyruvic acid molecule is converted into a **molecule of acetyl CoA**
- The **whole** energy that is present in glucose molecule is released.
- It produces a **high** amount of energy (38 ATP).
- The final products are **simple substances** with low-energy ( $H_2O$  and  $CO_2$ ).

### Anaerobic respiration

- It doesn't require the presence of oxygen, but it occurs by the help of a group of enzymes.
- All of it occur in the **cytoplasm**.
- The pyruvic acid molecule is converted into either **ethyl alcohol** (as in yeast) or **lactic acid** (as in bacteria and muscle cells).
- A **part** of the energy that is present in glucose molecule is released.
- It produces a **low** amount of energy (2 ATP).
- The final products are **organic substances** (ethyl alcohol or lactic acid).

2

### Acidic fermentation

- It results from the reduction of pyruvic acid into **lactic acid**.
- It occurs in the **animal cells** (especially muscular cells) and **bacteria**.
- The acidic fermentation :
  - In muscles : causes their fatigue.
  - In bacteria : many dairy industries depend on it, such as cheese, butter and yoghurt.

### Alcoholic fermentation

- It results from the reduction of pyruvic acid into **ethyl alcohol** (ethanol) and  $CO_2$
- It occurs in yeast and some plant tissues.
- It has many important uses in industries, such as alcohol and bread industries.



## Cellular Respiration

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

To watch videos of  
how to answer  
questions use the App

معك  
Me3ak App



Interactive test

First

## Multiple Choice Questions

- \* The difference between the gas exchange and cellular respiration.
- \* The structure of ATP molecule.
- \* Glycolysis and Krebs cycle.

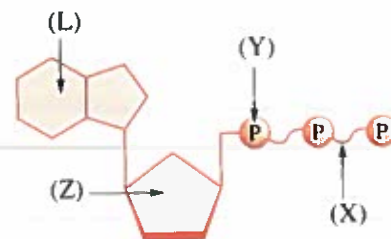
1 In the following compound :

(1) Which of the following is produced, when bond (X) is broken down?

- (a) Energy. (b) ATP  
(c) Water. (d) Carbon dioxide.

(2) Which part is specialized in storing energy ?

- (a) (X). (b) (Y). (c) (Z). (d) (L).



2 Which of the following is the reason that ATP molecules represent the energy currency in the cell ?

- (a) They are the smallest molecules of energy in the cell.  
(b) They store the least amount of energy in the cell.  
(c) They transfer the energy easily to perform the function of the cell.  
(d) They can save their energy for a long period.

3 What is the difference between the structure of ATP molecule and ADP molecule ?


- (a) Type of sugar. (b) Type of nitrogenous base.  
(c) Number of phosphate groups. (d) Number of carbon atoms.

4 Which of the following molecules is splitted during glucose oxidation ?

- (a) Glucose. (b) Phosphoglyceraldehyde.  
(c) Fructose 1,6-diphosphate. (d) Glucose 6-phosphate.

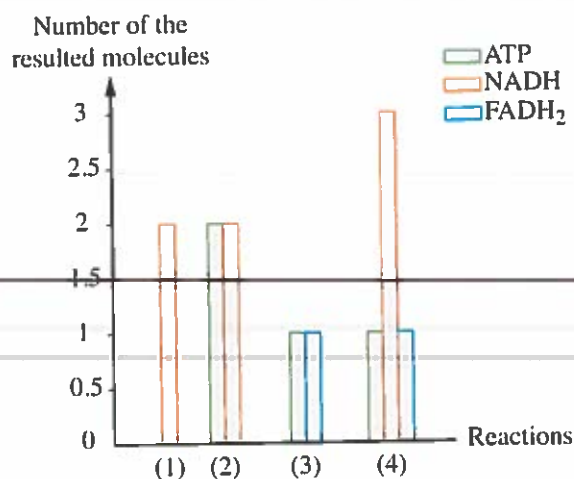
5 Which of the following processes is considered the source of energy in all the living organisms ?

- (a) Digestion process. (b) Photosynthesis process.  
(c) Absorption process. (d) Transport process.

- 6 In which of the following molecules the amount of energy that is produced directly from glycolysis in the cytosole is stored ?  
 (a) ATP (b) NADH  
 (c) FAD (d) Each of ATP and FAD
- 7 The following reaction occurs during glycolysis when ..... is formed.  
 (a) glucose 6-phosphate  
 (b) fructose 6-phosphate  
 (c) fructose 1,6-diphosphate  
 (d) pyruvic acid
- 
- 8 What is the number of NADH compounds that are resulted from two cycles of citric acid ?  
 (a) 3 (b) 6 (c) 12 (d) 18
- 9 What is the number of ATP molecules that are produced during the glycolysis of 4 molecules of glucose ?  
 (a) 4 (b) 8 (c) 12 (d) 16
- 10 The fatty acids enter in the cellular respiration in the form of ..... molecule(s).  
 (a) (1C) (b) (2C) (c) (3C) (d) (4C)
- 11 What is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted directly from the complete oxidation of 2 glucose molecules during Krebs cycle inside the mitochondria ?  
 (a) 4 (b) 38 (c) 72 (d) 76
- 12 What is the number of ATP molecules that are produced on the oxidation of one glucose molecule in the presence of oxygen during the aerobic respiration process in the cytoplasm of the cell ?  
 (a) 38 molecules. (b) 36 molecules. (c) Two molecules. (d) One molecule.
- 13 Which of the following don't/doesn't produce ATP molecules ?  
 (a) Krebs cycle. (b) Glycolysis.  
 (c) Light reactions in grana. (d) Dark reactions in stroma.
- 14 What is the number of Krebs cycles required for the complete oxidation of two glucose molecules ?  
 (a) Once. (b) Twice. (c) Three times. (d) Four times.

- 15 The opposite graph illustrates some products of aerobic cellular respiration reactions, which of the following is formed during glycolysis and Krebs cycle respectively ?

(a) (1) and (3).  
 (b) (2) and (4).  
 (c) (1) and (4).  
 (d) (4) and (3).



- 16 The amino acids enter in the cellular respiration in the form of ..... molecule(s).

(a) (1C)                      (b) (2C)                      (c) (3C)                      (d) (4C)

- 17 What happens to the intermediate compounds in Krebs cycle ?

(a) Oxidation by adding oxygen.                      (b) Reduction by gaining hydrogen.  
 (c) Oxidation by losing electrons.                      (d) Reduction by gaining electrons.

- 18 \* Which of the following compounds loses phosphate groups during glycolysis ?

(a) Glucose 6-phosphate.                      (b) Fructose 6-phosphate.  
 (c) Fructose 1,6-diphosphate.                      (d) Phosphoglyceraldehyde.

- 19 \* What is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted indirectly from the conversion of a molecule of pyruvic acid into acetyl group ?

(a) Zero.                      (b) 2                      (c) 3                      (d) 6

\* **Electron transport chain.**

\* **Anaerobic respiration.**

- 20 How is the oxidation of glucose in case of aerobic cellular respiration occurred ?

(a) By combining the glucose with oxygen.                      (b) By losing hydrogen from glucose.  
 (c) By combining the glucose with hydrogen.                      (d) By losing electrons from glucose.

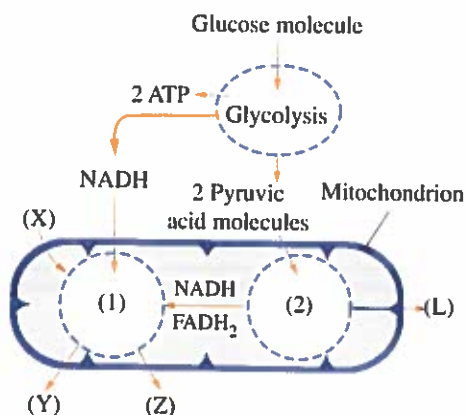
- 21 If it is possible to stop the reactions of Krebs cycle on the formation of succinic acid and releasing the energy from the coenzymes, what is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted indirectly from one molecule of pyruvic acid ?

(a) 6                      (b) 9                      (c) 12                      (d) 18

22 From the opposite diagram :

(1) Which of the following is correct ?

	(X)	(Y)	(Z)	(L)
(a)	CO <sub>2</sub>	ATP	H <sub>2</sub> O	O <sub>2</sub>
(b)	H <sub>2</sub> O	CO <sub>2</sub>	O <sub>2</sub>	ATP
(c)	ATP	O <sub>2</sub>	CO <sub>2</sub>	H <sub>2</sub> O
(d)	O <sub>2</sub>	ATP	H <sub>2</sub> O	CO <sub>2</sub>



(2) Which of the following occurs in process (1) ?

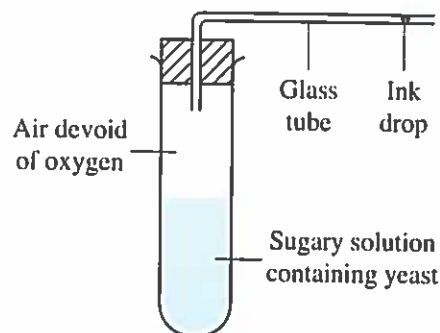
- (a) Coenzymes oxidation. (b) Coenzymes reduction.  
(c) Releasing of CO<sub>2</sub> (d) Releasing of O<sub>2</sub>

(3) What is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted directly from process (2) for one pyruvic acid molecule ?

- (a) 1 (b) 2 (c) 34 (d) 38

23 The opposite figure illustrates a device used in the detection of respiration in yeast, what will happen to the ink drop ?

- (a) It moves quickly inwards.  
(b) It moves slowly inwards.  
(c) It moves outwards.  
(d) It remains constant.



24 In the equation :  $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 \longrightarrow 6H_2O + 6CO_2$ , when CO<sub>2</sub> gas is released ?

- (a) During glycolysis. (b) During Krebs cycle only.  
(c) Before and during Krebs cycle. (d) During electron transport chain.

25 Study the following diagram, then determine :

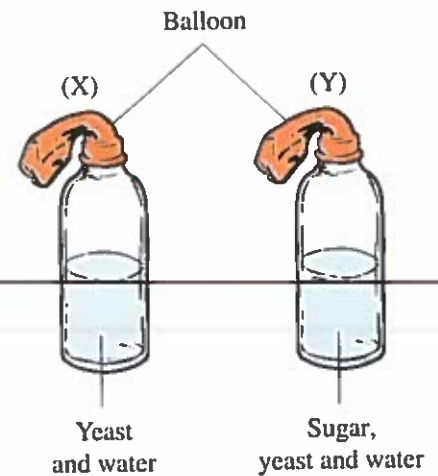


Which of the following depends on the two processes (X) and (Y) for obtaining energy ?

- (a) Bean. (b) Yeast.  
(c) Saprophytic bacteria. (d) Amoeba.

- 26 The opposite figure illustrates an experiment for the detection of the anaerobic respiration, where two bottles with two balloons are put inside warm room, which choice in the following table expresses what happens for the two balloons after 24 hours ?

	Balloon (X)	Balloon (Y)
(a)	Inflate	Inflate
(b)	Inflate	No change
(c)	No change	Inflate
(d)	No change	No change



- 27 What is the coenzyme that receives hydrogen in each of the cytosole and mitochondria ?  
 (a) FAD (b)  $\text{NAD}^+$  (c) CoA (d) Cytochrome.
- 28 What is the number of ATP molecules that are formed in the electron transport chain and resulted from the oxidation of one glucose molecule ?  
 (a) 32 (b) 34 (c) 36 (d) 38
- 29 Where does the plant produce energy during aerobic cellular respiration process ?  
 (a) In mitochondria only. (b) In cytosole only.  
 (c) In mitochondria and cytosole. (d) No correct answer.
- 30 By which of the following the electron transport chain is described ?  
 (a) Carrier molecules that change by changing the enzymes.  
 (b) The oxidative phosphorylation cycle.  
 (c) A sequence of oxidation and reduction reactions.  
 (d) An exothermic reaction.
- 31 In which of the following stages the largest amount of ATP molecules is released directly ?  
 (a) Glycolysis. (b) One Krebs cycle.  
 (c) Electron transport chain. (d) Krebs cycle and electron transport chain.
- 32 Which of the following stages won't occur in case of the absence of ATP molecules ?  
 (a) Glycolysis. (b) Oxidation of pyruvic acid aerobically.  
 (c) Electron transport chain. (d) Fermentation of pyruvic acid.

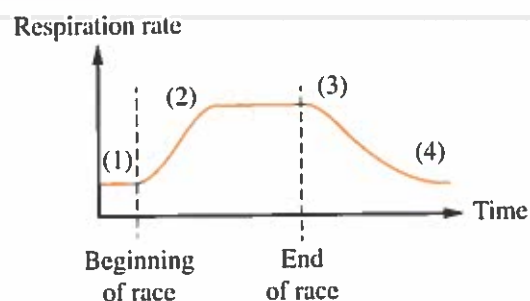


- 33 What is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted from the oxidation of one glucose molecule in a bacterial cell anaerobically ?  
(a) 2 (b) 34 (c) 36 (d) 38
- 34 What is the ratio of the energy released from the aerobic respiration to that of the anaerobic respiration for one glucose molecule ?  
(a) 1 : 1 (b) 19 : 1 (c) 38 : 1 (d) 19 : 2
- 35 In case of the absence or lack of oxygen, NADH compound that is resulted from the glycolysis donates its electrons to the .....  
(a) pyruvic acid. (b) cytochromes. (c) citric acid. (d) lactic acid.
- 36 What is/are the substance(s) that doesn't/don't supply the cell with energy ?  
(a) Lipids. (b) Proteins.  
(c) Water. (d) Carbohydrates.
- 37 What is the total number of NADH compounds that are resulted from the oxidation of one glucose molecule in the anaerobic respiration ?  
(a) Zero. (b) 2 (c) 4 (d) 10
- 38 Which of the following conversions doesn't include the reduction process of the coenzymes ?  
(a) The formation of pyruvic acid from phosphoglyceraldehyde.  
(b) The formation of succinic acid from ketoglutaric acid.  
(c) The formation of malic acid from succinic acid.  
(d) The formation of lactic acid from pyruvic acid.
- 39 What is the number of reduced  $\text{NAD}^+$  and FAD molecules that are resulted from each glucose molecule entering in the cellular respiration process in the presence of oxygen respectively ?  
(a) 10 and 2 (b) 5 and 1 (c) 10 and 1 (d) 5 and 2
- 40 What is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted from the oxidation of one glucose molecule in the presence of oxygen and absence of cytochromes from mitochondria ?  
(a) Zero. (b) 2 (c) 4 (d) 38

**41** \* What is the reason that the energy resulted from the anaerobic respiration in the muscles is less than the energy resulted from the aerobic respiration ?

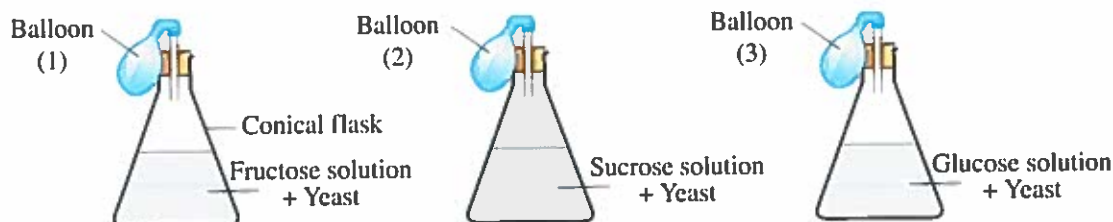
- (a) The consumption of energy in the formation of  $\text{CO}_2$
- (b) The consumption of energy in the formation of  $\text{O}_2$
- (c) The remaining of energy stored in the pyruvic acid.
- (d) The remaining of energy stored in the lactic acid.

**42** \* The opposite graph illustrates the respiration rate of a player before, during and after participating in a running race, at which point her body cells contain the highest amount of lactic acid ?



- (a) (1).
- (b) (2).
- (c) (3).
- (d) (4).

**43** \* From the following figures, what can we observe after few hours ?



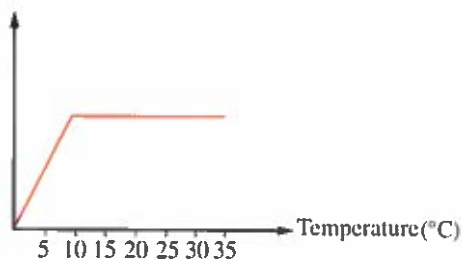
- (a) The volume of balloon no. (1) is greater than that of no. (2) and less than that of no. (3).
- (b) The volume of balloon no. (2) is greater than that of no. (1) and (3).
- (c) The volume of balloon no. (3) is greater than that of no. (1) and (2).
- (d) The volume of balloon no. (1) is greater than that of no. (2) and (3).

**44** \* In each of the alcoholic fermentation and acidic fermentation, two molecules of ATP are released, therefore it is predicted that the number of kilocalories that are resulted from the breaking down of the released ATP molecules .....

- (a) from alcoholic fermentation is greater than that from the acidic fermentation.
- (b) from alcoholic fermentation is less than that from the acidic fermentation.
- (c) is equal in both types of fermentation.
- (d) from both of them greater than that from aerobic respiration.

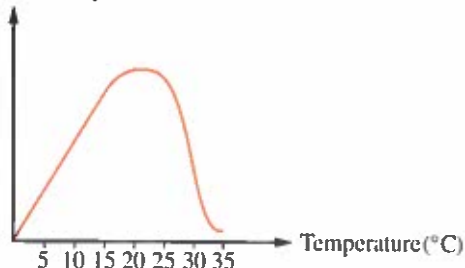
- 45 \* What is the number of electrons that are transferred by NADH molecule to the cytochrome ?  
 (a) 1 (b) 2 (c) 3 (d) 4
- 46 \* What is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted from the complete oxidation of one molecule of pyruvic acid ?  
 (a) 6 (b) 15 (c) 36 (d) 38
- 47 \* In an experiment, a researcher put a primitive organism in a medium with variable temperature. Which of the following graphs expresses the relation between the temperature of the medium and the rate of the cellular respiration ?

Rate of cellular respiration



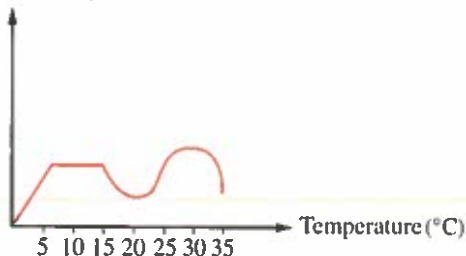
(a)

Rate of cellular respiration



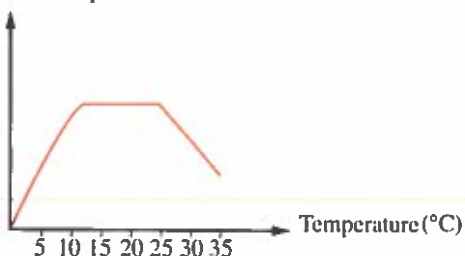
(b)

Rate of cellular respiration



(c)

Rate of cellular respiration



(d)

- 48 \* How far are these statements "the aerobic respiration may occur and followed by anaerobic respiration", "the anaerobic respiration may occur and followed by aerobic respiration" correct ?  
 (a) The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.  
 (b) The first statement is wrong and the second statement is correct.  
 (c) The two statements are correct.  
 (d) The two statements are wrong.

## Second

## Miscellaneous Questions

- 1 **Give reason for :** on illustrating the mechanism of cellular respiration, food is not expressed by a molecule of fructose, but by a glucose molecule.

---

- 2 **What is the difference between :** ATP and ADP ?

---

- 3 **Explain :** the cellular respiration is different from the burning process.

---

- 4 **Give reason for :** ATP molecules are considered a temporary store for energy inside the cell.

---

- 5 "The structure of ATP molecules helps them in performing their function".  
**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

---

- 6 **Give reason for :** glycolysis occurs in the aerobic and anaerobic respiration.

---

- 7 "The cell may use protein as a source to produce energy". **How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

---

- 8 **What happens in case of :** the absence of coenzyme (A) from the cells of a living organism ?

---

- 9 **In the opposite diagram :**
  - (a) **Mention** the two types of carbohydrates that are stored inside the plant and animal cells.
  - (b) **What is the name of the process** in which (6C) sugar is converted into pyruvic acid ? **And where** does it occur in the cell ?
  - (c) **What happens** to the resulted hydrogen ions ?

---

- 10 **Write the number that indicates :** number of coenzymes that are resulted in one Krebs cycle.

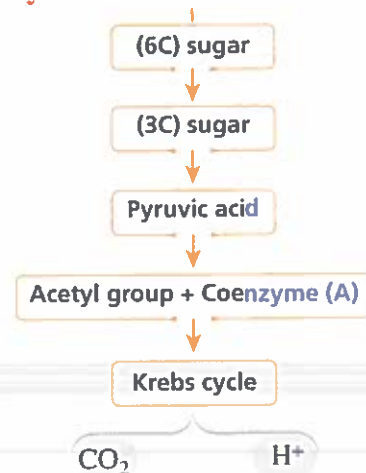
---

- 11 "When Krebs cycle is repeated for 4 times, 20 molecules of ATP are produced directly".  
**How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.**

---

- 12 **Give reason for :** the formation of intermediate compounds in Krebs cycle.

### Polysaccharides "inside the cells"

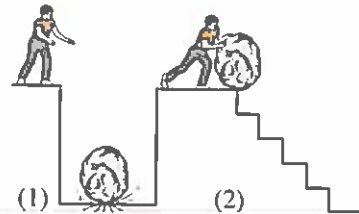


13 What is the difference between :  $\text{NAD}^+$  and  $\text{NADP}$  ?

14 Give reason for : the reactions of electron transport chain don't occur in the cytosole of the cell.

15 In the opposite figure :

Which of the two cases represents a stage of aerobic respiration in the cell ? Explain your answer.



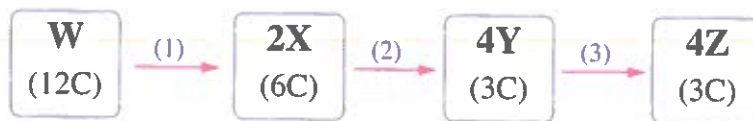
16 What is the similarity between :  $\text{NAD}^+$  and  $\text{FAD}$  ?

17 "The oxidation of 3 molecules of glucose during the electron transport chain produces 114 molecules of ATP". How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.

18 Explain : the shortage of oxygen doesn't affect the life of some living organisms.

19 Write the number that indicates : number of lactic acid molecules that are resulted from one molecule of glucose in the anaerobic respiration.

20 In the following diagram, process no. (1) occurs inside the small intestine, while the two processes no. (2) and (3) occur inside the living cell, where compound (Z) increases, when feeling the muscular fatigue, in the light of this, answer :



(a) What are the compounds from (W) : (Z) ? And what are the processes from no. (1) : (3) ?

(b) What is the reason for decreasing the carbon atoms into half, on the occurrence of two steps no. (1) and (2) ?

(c) What are the conditions required for the occurrence of steps from no. (1) : (3) ?

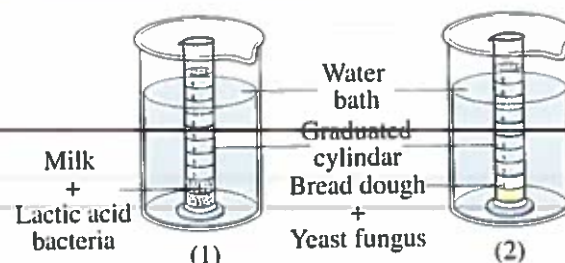
(d) What is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted from one molecule of (W) through these processes ?

21 Explain : the aerobic respiration could occur without forming the pyruvic acid.



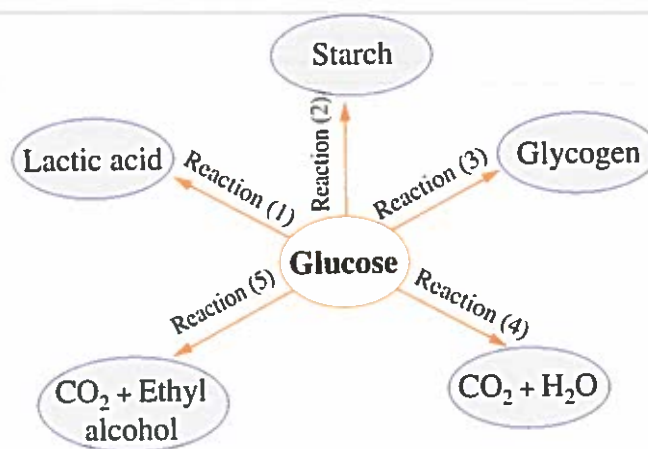
**22** What happens in case of : the exposure of some types of bacteria to a lack or absence of oxygen ?

**23** In the opposite figure, a water bath is used whose temperature is suitable for the activity of both types of living organisms :



- (a) In which graduated cylinder does the volume of the mixture increase, after one hour from the beginning of the experiment ? **Explain your answer.**
- (b) **Illustrate** the importance of using each of them in our daily life.

**24** From the following diagram :



Which of the reactions from no. (1) : (5) represents :

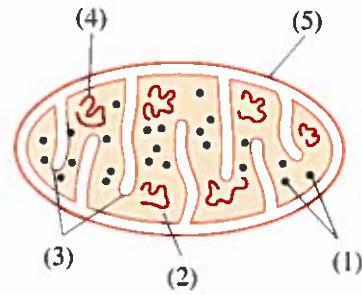
- (a) Aerobic respiration.
- (b) A change occurs inside the liver.
- (c) Anaerobic respiration in muscles.
- (d) Anaerobic respiration in yeast.
- (e) A reaction that forms an organic substance inside the plant (in storage sites).

**25** **Explain** : a diluted sugar solution is used during the alcoholic fermentation experiment.

**26** The opposite figure shows one of the living organelles inside the cell :

(a) Mention the number and name of the structure that :

1. Contains the electron carriers.
2. Is present inside the cell nucleus.



(b) Predict the reason for the presence of structure no. (1) inside this organelle.

(c) What is the relation between the structure no. (3) and the main function of this organelle ?

**27** What is the similarity between : fermentation process and cellular respiration process ?

And what are the main conditions for the occurrence of the fermentation process in the cells ?

# New Types of questions ?

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

**Choose two correct answers for the following questions :**

**1** Which of the following are the similarities between aerobic and anaerobic respiration ?

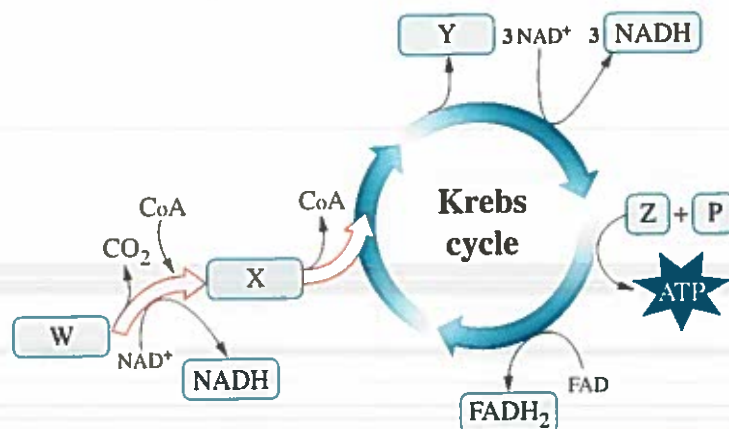
- (a) Both include glycolysis.
- (b) Both need a small amount of oxygen.
- (c) Both produce  $\text{CO}_2$  gas in muscles.
- (d) Both produce ethyl alcohol in yeast.
- (e) Both include the formation of pyruvic acid.

**2** Which of the following happen to  $\text{NAD}^+$  molecules during the aerobic respiration process ?

- (a) They are oxidized during Krebs cycle.
- (b) They are reduced during Krebs cycle.
- (c) They are oxidized during electron transport chain.
- (d) They are reduced during electron transport chain.
- (e) They are reduced during glycolysis.

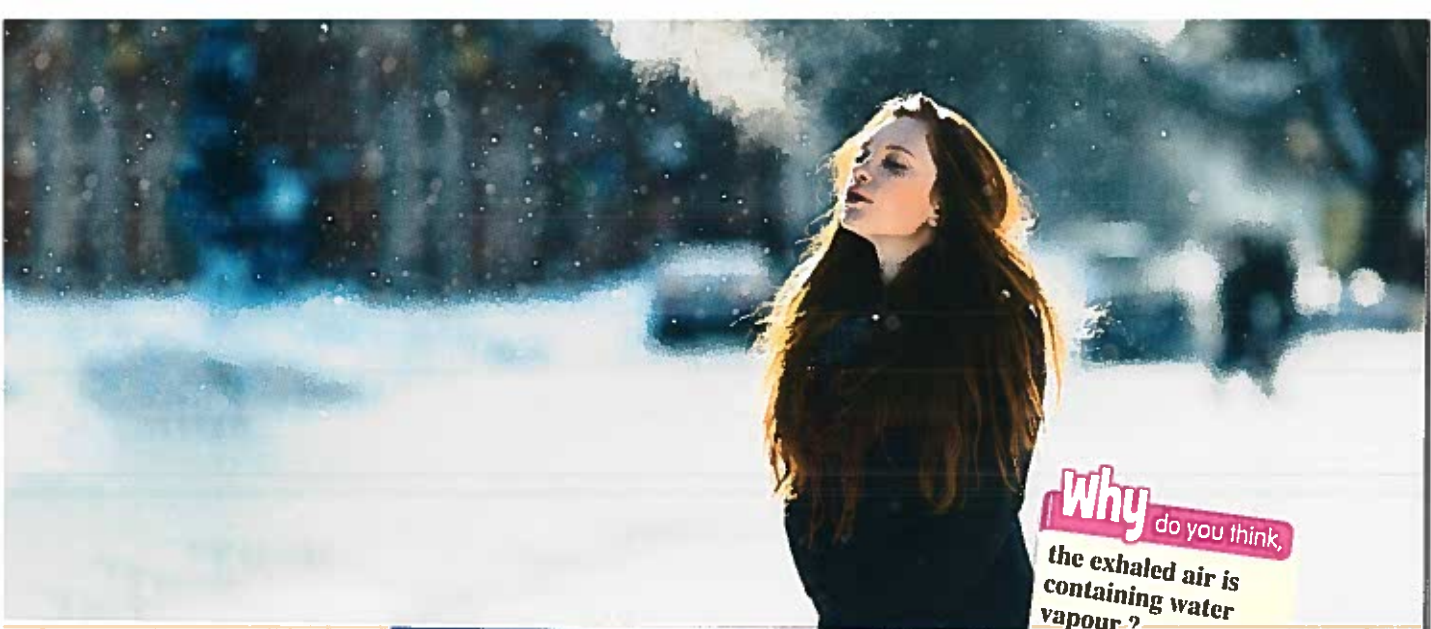
**Choose from the list what suits the spaces :**

**3** From the following diagram, which shows some stages of the cellular respiration :



- Letter (X) represents : ..... (1) .....
- Letter (Y) represents : ..... (2) .....

Acetyl CoA
Pyruvic acid
ADP
$\text{CO}_2$
Citric acid



## Respiration in Living Organisms

### First Respiration in man



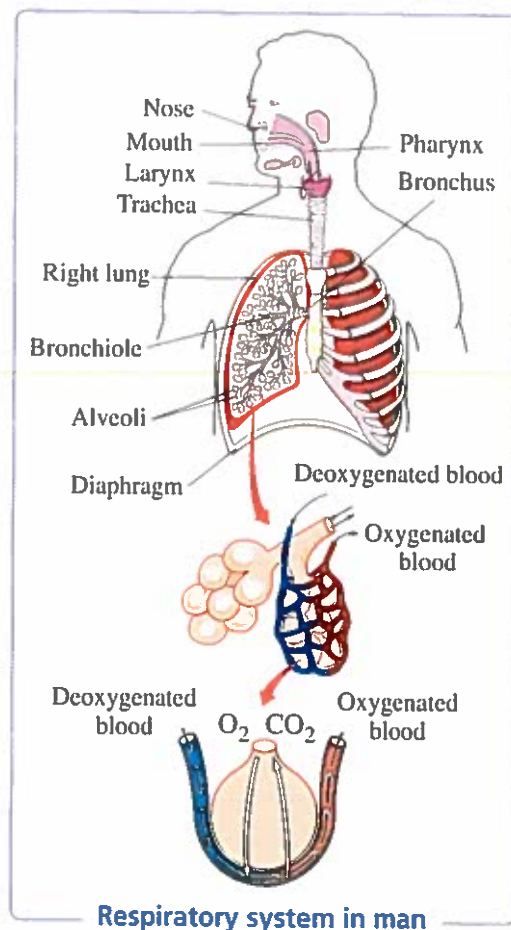
- Human body contains a system that extracts the oxygen from the atmospheric air, then transfers it to the blood which delivers it to the body cells. This system is called "respiratory system".

#### Respiratory system in man

- It consists of many organs, where each one of them is suitable for performing its function, as follows :

#### 1 Nose or mouth

- The air enters the body through nose or mouth, but it is preferable (from the hygienic point of view) to enter through nose, because :
  - It is a warm passage, as it is lined with numerous blood capillaries.
  - It is moist, as it secretes mucus.
  - It serves as a filter, because it contains mucus and hairs which act as filters (sieves).



## 2 Pharynx

- Air passes through it and is considered a common pathway for both air and food.

## 3 Larynx

- The air enters the trachea through it and it is known as **the voice box**.

*Do you know... ?* —

- Diaphragm is a respiratory muscle. That participates mainly in respiration mechanism, during inhalation it contracts as the muscles between the ribs contract to increase the capacity of chest cavity and the opposite occurs during exhalation.

## 4 Trachea

- Its walls contain a series of  $\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)$  cartilaginous rings to keep it permanently opened.
- Its inner surface is lined with cilia which beat upwards to filter the air passed through it by moving the small foreign bodies to the pharynx, so that they may be swallowed.
- It is divided at its lower end into two bronchi which divide and subdivide into progressively smaller and smaller branches called the "**bronchioles**", where each bronchiole finally ends with sacs called the "**alveoli**".

## 5 Lungs

- Each lung consists of a group of alveoli, bronchioles connected to them and the surrounding blood capillaries.
- **Functional suitability of alveoli :**
  - They are large in number that may reach about 600 million alveoli per lung to increase the respiratory surface area.
  - Their walls are considered the actual respiratory surface, **because :**
    - They are thin, which increases the speed of gas exchanging process.
    - They are surrounded externally by a large network of blood capillaries whose blood receives oxygen from the alveolar air and from the bronchioles that are connected to them.
    - They are moistened by water vapour which is necessary for dissolving  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{O}_2$  for completing the exchange of gases process between the alveolar air and the surrounding blood in the blood capillaries.

### Role of the respiratory system in excretion process

- The respiratory system in man excretes carbon dioxide, as well as it has an important role in the excretion of some water with the exhaled air in the form of water vapour, **where :**
  - Man usually loses daily about  $500 \text{ cm}^3$  of water through the two lungs out of  $2500 \text{ cm}^3$  of water that he loses daily.



- This loss occurs as a result of the evaporation of water that moistens the alveolar walls and is necessary for dissolving oxygen and carbon dioxide to complete the gaseous exchange between the alveolar air and the surrounding blood in the blood capillaries (as mentioned before).

### Do you know... ?

- Coronaviruses (CoV) are a large family of viruses that cause illness ranging from the common cold to more severe diseases such as Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS), where 80% of patients are recovered, 15% suffer from severe symptoms and 5% of them are in a critical case and need an intensive care.
- The virus is transmitted through direct contact with respiratory droplets of an infected person (generated through coughing and sneezing). Individuals can also be infected from touching surfaces contaminated with the virus and touching their faces (e.g. eyes, nose or mouth). So, the virus infects the respiratory system starting at first with the mucous membranes of the nose, mouth and trachea then reaching out to lung, when the virus arrives to the alveoli, they start to be full with water (inflamed) and the lung is infected with pneumonia, causing breath shortness and difficulty. Therefore, the level of oxygen becomes low in blood that if it is lower than its normal level, it is necessary to be supplied with oxygen externally, where it is given with certain levels depending on the disease state.

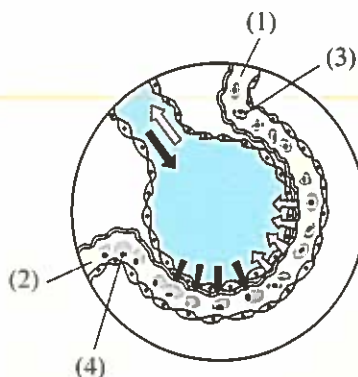
### 1 Test yourself

Answered

Choose the correct answer :

The opposite figure illustrates the blood route around an alveolus during the gases exchange process, which choice in the following table illustrates the blood route and its type ?

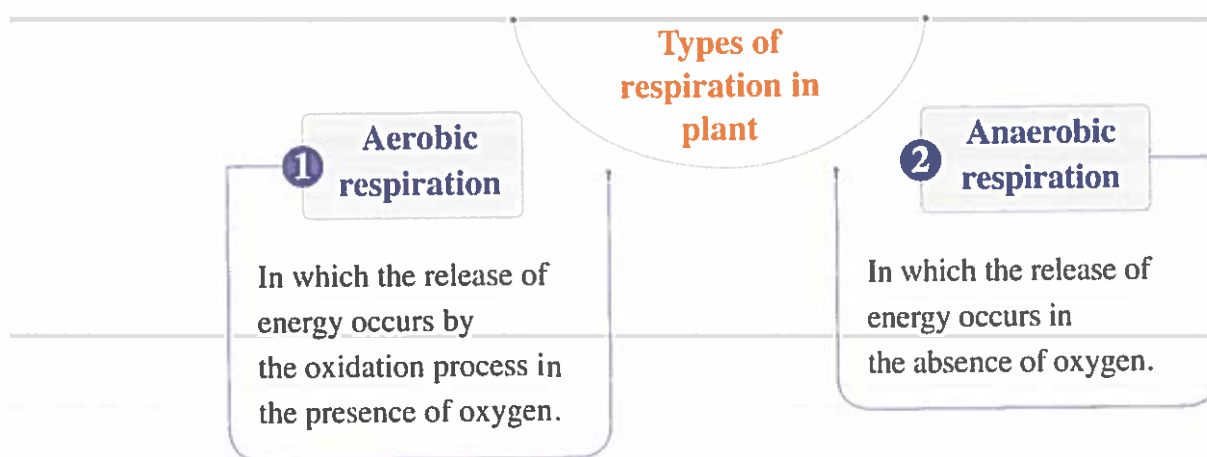
	Blood route	Blood at (3)	Blood at (4)
(a)	(1) → (2)	Oxygenated	Deoxygenated
(b)	(2) → (1)	Oxygenated	Deoxygenated
(c)	(1) → (2)	Deoxygenated	Oxygenated
(d)	(2) → (1)	Deoxygenated	Oxygenated



## Second Respiration in plant

### Respiration process in plant :

It is a process in which the plant obtains the chemical energy that is stored in the form of organic molecules rich in energy (glucose) through a chain of reactions which include the breaking down of the carbon bonds in the organic substance to carry out one of its vital activities.



### Respiration in most plants

- In most plants, each living cell is in a direct contact with the external environment, therefore the gaseous exchange process is easy to occur, where oxygen gas diffuses inside the cell, while carbon dioxide gas diffuses outside the cell.

### Respiration in vascular plants

- Oxygen gas reaches the cells through various passageways, such as :

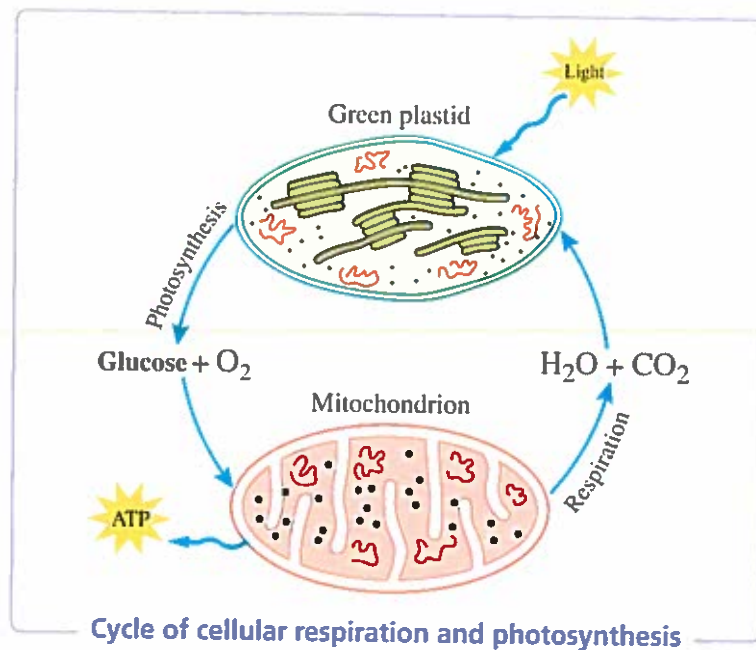
- ① **The stomata of leaf** : when they open, air enters into the air chambers and diffuses through the intercellular spaces that spread in various parts of the plant. So, the gas diffuses through the cell membranes and dissolves in the cell water.
- ② **The phloem passageways** : some of oxygen dissolved in water is carried to the phloem passageway, so that it reaches the tissues of the stem and root.
- ③ **The roots** : the oxygen dissolved in the soil water enters the plant through them as it is absorbed by the root hairs or imbibed by the root cell walls.
- ④ **The stomata of green plant stem and the lenticels or any cracks in the bark of woody stems** : they act as an entrance for air.

• **Methods of expelling carbon dioxide gas (that is produced from the respiration) to outside :**

- ① By direct diffusion of the gas from the plant cells to the external environment, and this occurs in the cells which are on the surface, where they are exposed directly to air or soil.
- ② For deep seated cells, carbon dioxide gas passes to the xylem or phloem tissues, then to the stomata and to the external environment.

**Relation between photosynthesis and respiration processes in the plant**

- **What happens in the chloroplast is reversed in the mitochondria, where :**
  - The plastids of green plants perform the photosynthesis process, producing glucose and oxygen gas.
  - Glucose and oxygen gas move to the mitochondria to release the energy through the respiration process.
  - Carbon dioxide gas and water that are resulted from the respiration process move to the plastid to accomplish the photosynthesis process.





## Experiment

### Respiration in green plant parts

#### 1. Steps :

- (1) Bring a green potted plant and place it on a glass plate and put a small beaker containing clear limewater next to it, then invert a glass bell jar over them, then cover the bell jar with a black piece of cloth, as in **figure (A)**.

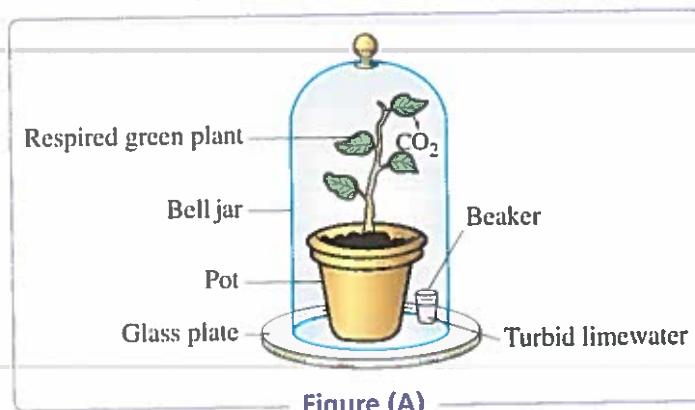


Figure (A)

#### Note

The bell jar is covered by a black piece of cloth, in order to keep the light away from the green plant and stop the photosynthesis process which consumes  $\text{CO}_2$  that is present in the air of bell jar or that released from the respiration.

- (2) Prepare a similar apparatus with a pot that is empty of any cultivated plant.
- (3) Put some clear limewater in another small beaker.
- (4) Leave the two apparatuses and the beaker between them for some time, as in **figure (B)**.

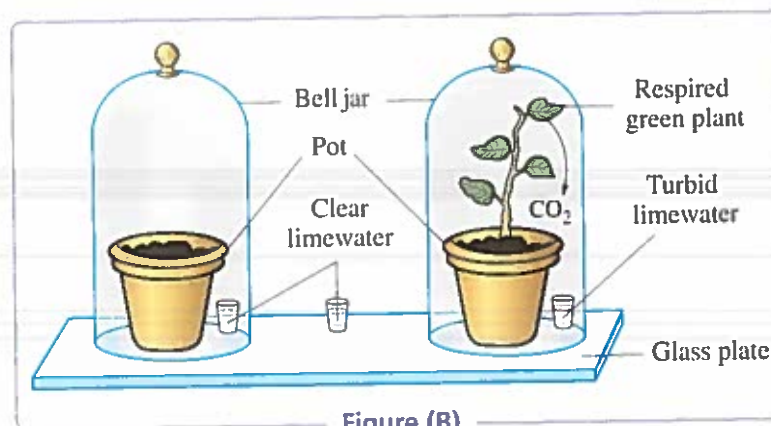


Figure (B)

#### 2. Observation :

Limewater becomes turbid in step no. (1) only, and it doesn't become turbid in steps no. (2) and no. (3).

### 3. Explanations :

- In step no. (1), the green plant respire and produces carbon dioxide gas which caused the turbidity of limewater in the beaker.
- In steps no. (2) and no. (3), the limewater in the other two beakers shows no turbidity, due to the small percentage of carbon dioxide gas, either in the air of bell jar or in the atmospheric air.

### 4. Conclusion :

The green plant performs respiration process and releases carbon dioxide gas, as a result of this process.

#### Remember that

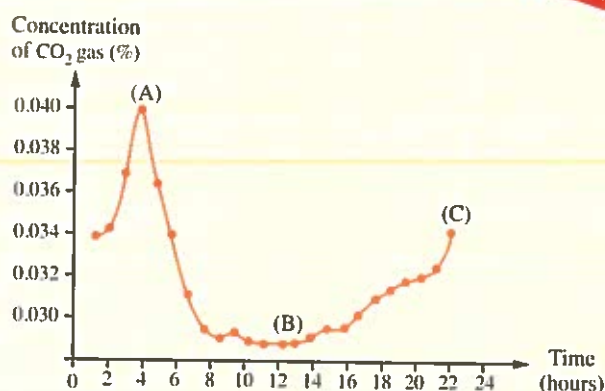
Clear limewater is calcium hydroxide. So, when it combines with carbon dioxide, it is converted into calcium carbonate which is an insoluble chemical substance (forms a precipitate) with white colour. Therefore, the limewater becomes turbid and converts into white colour.

## 2 Test yourself

### Choose the correct answer :

The opposite graph illustrates the concentration of carbon dioxide that was resulted from an agricultural crop within 24 hours, which of the following represents the reason for the change in the curve from (A) to (B), then from (B) to (C) ?

- Photosynthesis process.
- Respiration process.
- Photosynthesis and respiration processes respectively.
- Respiration and photosynthesis processes respectively.



Answered



# Chapter 3

## Questions on Lesson Two

# Respiration in Living Organisms

To watch videos of  
how to answer  
questions use the App

معك  
Me Jak App



The questions signed by \* are answered in detail.

● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

Interactive test

### First

### Multiple Choice Questions

1 In the opposite figure :

(1) In which of the following parts the air that enters into the two lungs is moistened ?

- a Part no. (2).
- b Part no. (3).
- c Part no. (4).
- d Parts no. (1) and (2).

(2) Where is the mucus present ?

- a Part no. (1) only.
- b Part no. (2) only.
- c Part no. (7) only.
- d Parts no. (2) and (7).

(3) What is the part that represents the voice box ?

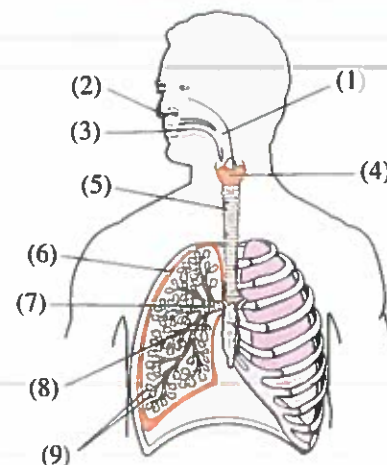
- a (3).
- b (4).
- c (5).
- d (7).

(4) Which of the following structures doesn't consist of cartilages ?

- a (5).
- b (6).
- c (7).
- d (8).

(5) Which of the following structures is/are rich in blood capillaries ?

- a Part no. (2) only.
- b Part no. (9) only.
- c Parts no. (2) and (9).
- d Parts no. (2) and (8).



2 The cilia that are present in the trachea work on pushing the mucus with the tiny foreign particles towards the .....

- a nose.
- b epiglottis.
- c pharynx.
- d two lungs.

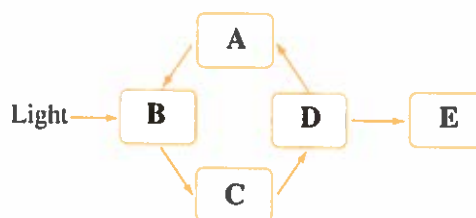
3 Which of the following isn't performed by the respiratory tracts ?

- a Filtering the air.
- b Moistening the air.
- c Exchanging gases.
- d Warming the air.

4 Which of the following doesn't/don't affect the rate and the depth of respiration ?

- a Physical exercises.
- b Ratio of each of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the atmospheric air.
- c Respiratory enzymes.
- d Psychological state.

- 5 The opposite figure illustrates one of the biological cycles that happen in the plant, if you know that letter (A) represents  $\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , what do letters (B, C, D and E) represent in the figure ?



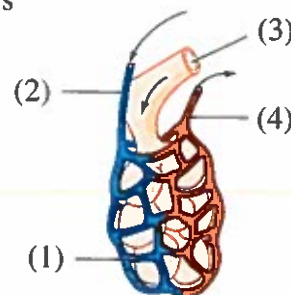
	B	C	D	E
a	Chloroplast	ATP	Mitochondria	Glucose + $\text{O}_2$
b	Chloroplast	Glucose + $\text{O}_2$	Mitochondria	ATP
c	Mitochondria	Glucose + $\text{O}_2$	Chloroplast	ATP
d	Mitochondria	ATP	Chloroplast	Glucose + $\text{O}_2$

- 6 Which of the following statements doesn't agree with the respiration process ?

- a All the living cells respire.
- b An amount of sugar is released from it.
- c Plants respire day and night.
- d Plants respire oxygen and release  $\text{CO}_2$  gas.

- 7 From the opposite figure, which of the following structures contains the highest concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas ?

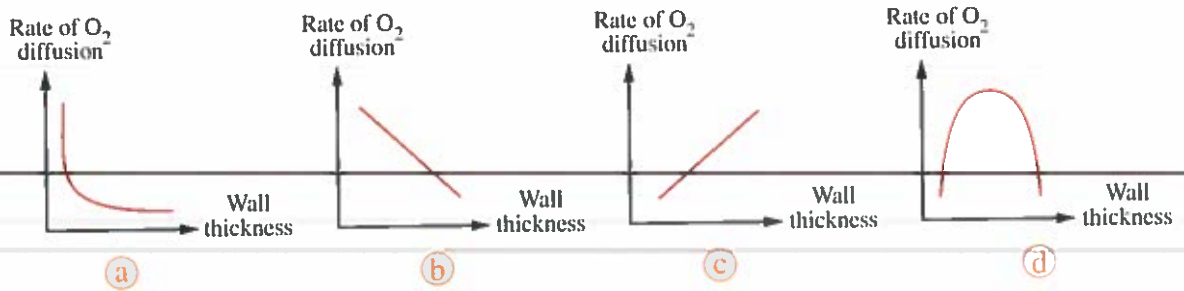
- a (1).
- b (2).
- c (3).
- d (4).



- 8 Which of the following statements doesn't agree with the reason for the speed of the blood transport to oxygen that is present in the two lungs ?

- a Air that enters the two lungs contains a greater amount of oxygen than the air that comes out of them.
- b The alveoli are surrounded by a huge network of blood capillaries.
- c The wall of alveolus is thin and its surface area is large.
- d The oxygen concentration in blood is less than its concentration in the alveoli.

- 9 Which of the following graphs illustrates the relation between the rate of oxygen diffusion and the thickness of the alveolus wall ?

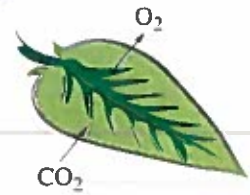


- 10 What are the main sites for exchanging gases in plant ?

(a) Leaves. 
 (b) Lenticels. 
 (c) Stomata. 
 (d) Roots.

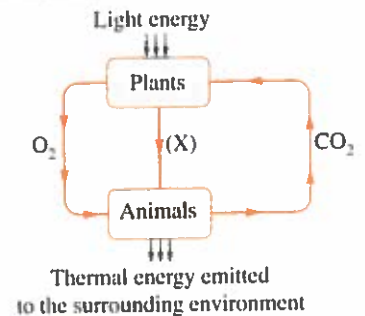
- 11 What is the vital process illustrated by the opposite figure in the plant ?

(a) Respiration. 
 (b) Transpiration. 
 (c) Photosynthesis. 
 (d) Transportation.

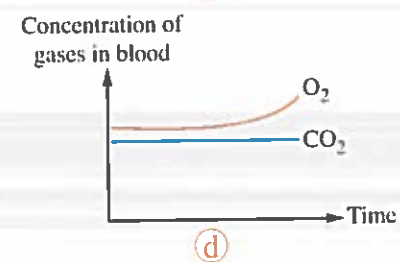
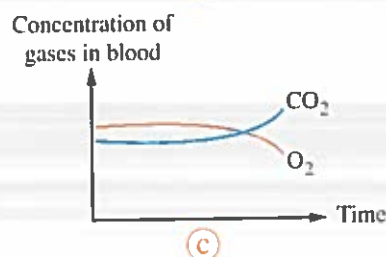
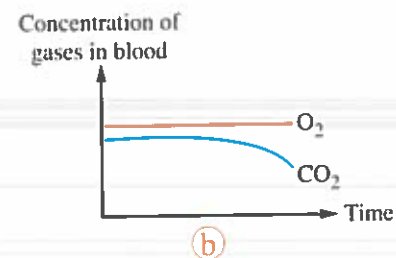
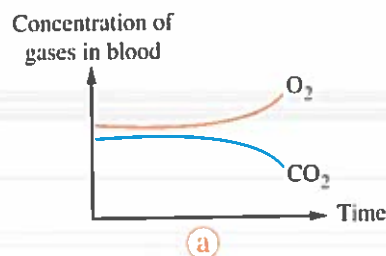


- 12 In the opposite figure, What does (X) represent ?

(a) ATP 
 (b) ADP 
 (c) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>12</sub>O<sub>6</sub> 
 (d) H<sub>2</sub>O

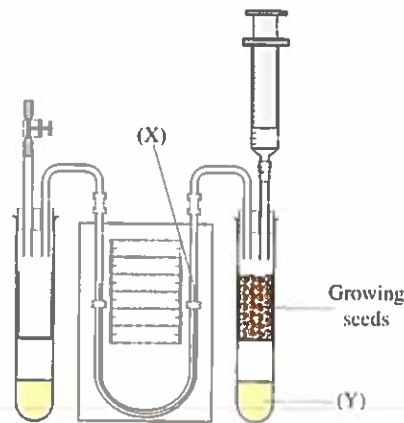


- 13 Which of the following graphs shows the change in the concentration of CO<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub> gases in blood inside the venules surrounding the alveolus ?

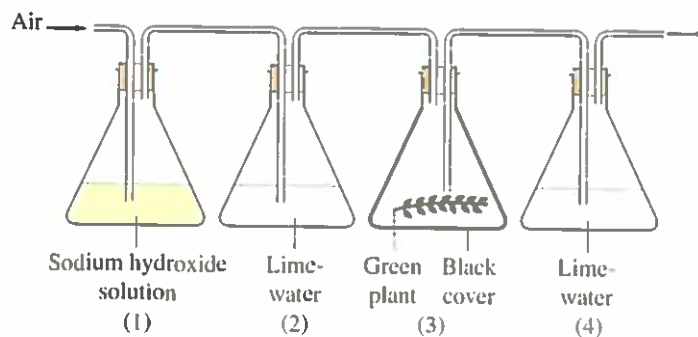


- 14 The opposite figure shows an instrument used to measure the rate of respiration in the growing seeds, which choice in the following table is correct ?

	Movement of fluid (X)	Function of fluid (Y)
(a)	Downwards	CO <sub>2</sub> Absorption
(b)	Downwards	O <sub>2</sub> Production
(c)	Upwards	CO <sub>2</sub> Absorption
(d)	Upwards	O <sub>2</sub> Production



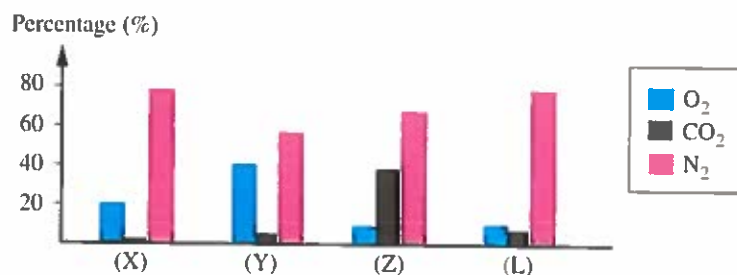
- 15 Study the following figure, then determine :



Which choice in the following table shows what happens to limewater in flasks (2), (4) after pumping air ?

	Flask (2)	Flask (4)
(a)	Turbid	Turbid
(b)	Turbid	Clear
(c)	Clear	Turbid
(d)	Clear	Clear

- 16 \* From the following graph :



(1) Which of the following samples represents the air entering into the two lungs ?

- (a) (X). (b) (Y). (c) (Z). (d) (L).

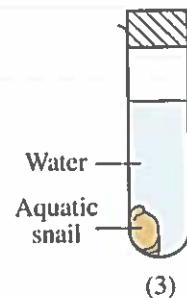
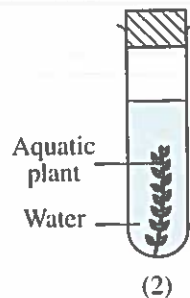
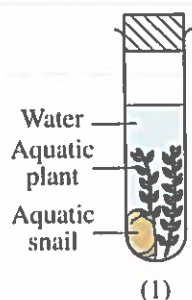
(2) Which of the following samples represents the air coming out from the two lungs ?

- a (X). 
 b (Y). 
 c (Z). 
 d (L).

**17** \* The plant cell can form the high-energy organic compounds, then use them to extract the energy required for performing its vital functions, this indicates that what happens in the .....

- a mitochondria is reversed in the chloroplast.  
b chloroplast is reversed in the mitochondria.  
c chloroplast is continued in the mitochondria.  
d mitochondria is continued in the chloroplast.

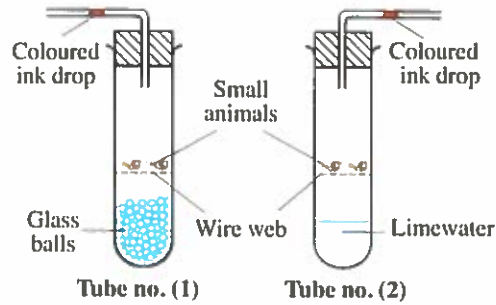
**18** \* The following figures illustrate three test tubes, which of the following choices shows what happens on their exposure to sunlight for several hours ?



	Test tube (1)	Test tube (2)	Test tube (3)
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">a</span>	Increasing O <sub>2</sub> level	Increasing CO <sub>2</sub> level	No change in O <sub>2</sub> and CO <sub>2</sub> levels
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">b</span>	Increasing CO <sub>2</sub> level	Increasing O <sub>2</sub> level	No change in O <sub>2</sub> and CO <sub>2</sub> levels
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">c</span>	Increasing CO <sub>2</sub> level	No change in O <sub>2</sub> and CO <sub>2</sub> levels	Increasing O <sub>2</sub> level
<span style="border: 1px solid orange; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">d</span>	No change in O <sub>2</sub> and CO <sub>2</sub> levels	Increasing O <sub>2</sub> level	Increasing CO <sub>2</sub> level



- 19 \* The two opposite figures illustrate an experiment to measure the rate of respiration in some small animals, which choice in the following table determine the direction of the coloured ink drop in the two tubes ?



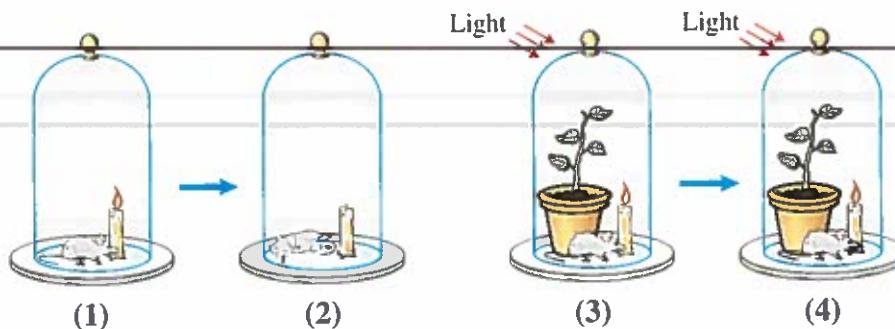
	The direction in	
	Tube no. (1)	Tube no. (2)
(a)	Inwards	Outwards
(b)	Inwards	Remains constant
(c)	Outwards	Inwards
(d)	Remains constant	Inwards

- 20 \* Which of the following doesn't increase the rate of respiration spontaneously ?
- Increasing the pH value in blood.
  - Increasing the carbon dioxide level in blood.
  - Increasing the blood acidity.
  - Decreasing the haemoglobin level in the red blood corpuscles.

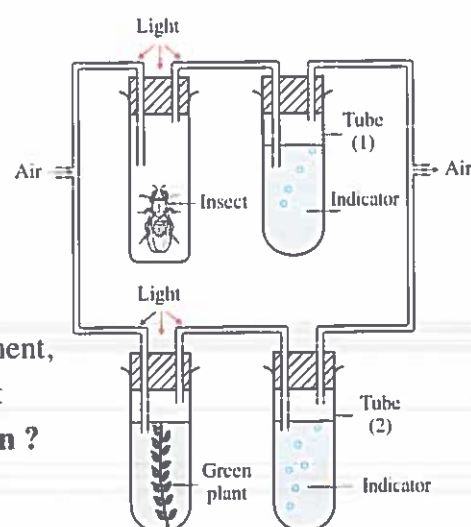
### Second Miscellaneous Questions

- What happens in case of : the nose is devoid of hairs and mucus ?
- "If you know that bronchi contain cilia". Deduce the function of these cilia.
- What happens if : the trachea is devoid of cartilaginous rings that are present in its wall ?
- Give reason for : the presence of millions of alveoli in one lung.
- What happens in case of : increasing the thickness of alveoli walls ?
- Where is the carbon dioxide formed in mammals ? Illustrate by arrows how the body gets rid of it.
- Follow by arrows only : the route passed by  $\text{CO}_2$  molecule that is present in a small intestine cell, till it comes out from the body.

- 8** What happens in case of : putting a growing plant in a glass box that is covered by a black cover and devoid of oxygen then leaving it for several days ?
- 9** From the following figures, explain why the mouse died and the candle burnt out in figure no. (2), and why the mouse lived and the candle remained light in figure no. (4).



- 10** Follow by arrows the steps of the arrival of an oxygen molecule to each of the following :
- Cells of skin epidermis.
  - Cells of plant stem epidermis.
- 11** What happens in case of : uncovering the bell jar with a piece of black cloth in the experiment that proves the respiration of the green plant parts ?
- 12** Study well the opposite figure that represents an experiment to compare between the amount of carbon dioxide resulted from the respiration of an insect and an aquatic green plant, then answer :
- What is the name of the substance that is used in detecting  $\text{CO}_2$  ?
  - After one hour from the beginning of the experiment, the indicator doesn't change in tube no. (2), but it changes in tube no (1). What is your explanation ?
  - What do you expect to happen, on putting the apparatus in darkness for a long time ?



- 13** "Fish in their farms need a sufficient amount of dissolved oxygen to cover their respiration needs". Suggest several natural methods to decrease the need to pump oxygen in the fish farms.

# New Types of questions?

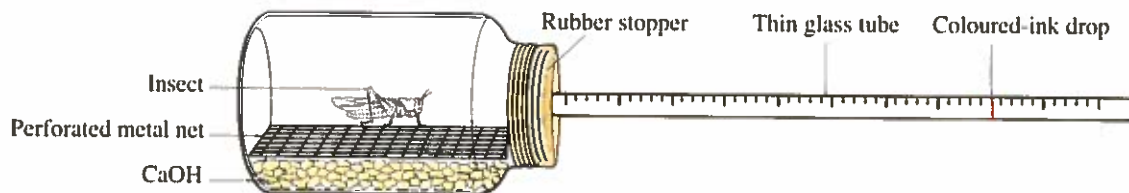
● Understand ● Apply ● Higher Order Thinking Skills

**Choose two correct answers for the following questions :**

**1** Which of the following characterize the alveoli ?

- ☐ (a) They are found in all animals.
- ☐ (b) They contain high concentration of  $O_2$  than that in atmospheric air.
- ☐ (c) They have moist walls.
- ☐ (d) They are small-sized compared to the other body cells.
- ☐ (e) They are surrounded by oxygenated and deoxygenated blood.

**2** Study the following figure that shows an experiment to estimate a vital process done by the insect inside the glass container :



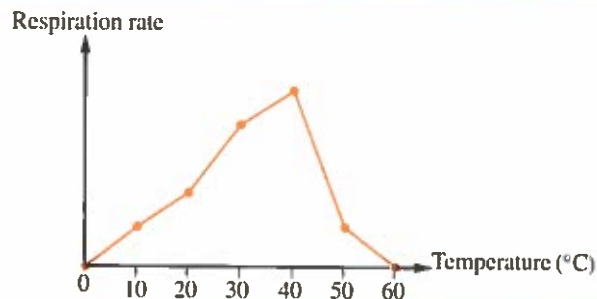
Which of the following can be measured from the movement of the ink drop inside the glass tube ?

- ☐ (a)  $CO_2$  gas production.
- ☐ (b) Increasing the metabolism rate.
- ☐ (c)  $O_2$  consumption.
- ☐ (d) Energy releasing.
- ☐ (e) Respiration rate.

**Choose from the list what suits the spaces :**

**3** The opposite graph shows the results of an experiment measuring the rate of respiration in a living organism at different temperatures, which of the following will be deduced :

- at temperature  $40^\circ C$  : ..... (1) .....
- at temperature  $50^\circ C$  : ..... (2) .....

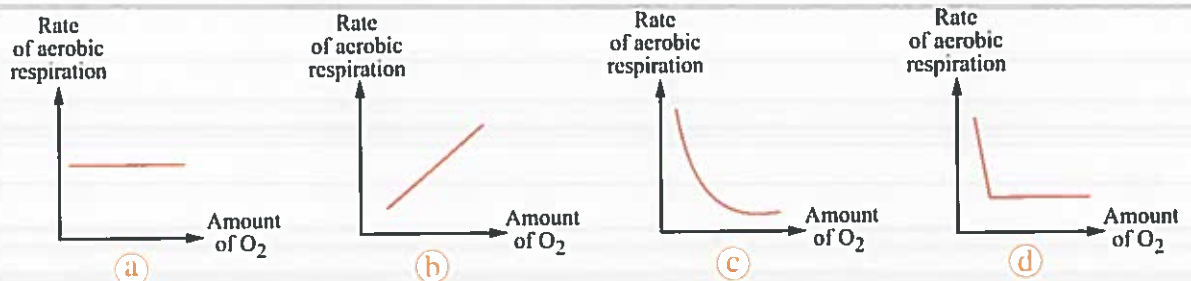


- ☐ Respiratory enzymes work faster
- ☐ Respiratory enzymes work slowly
- ☐ The available  $O_2$  amount is low
- ☐ The available  $O_2$  amount is high
- ☐ Respiratory enzymes stop working

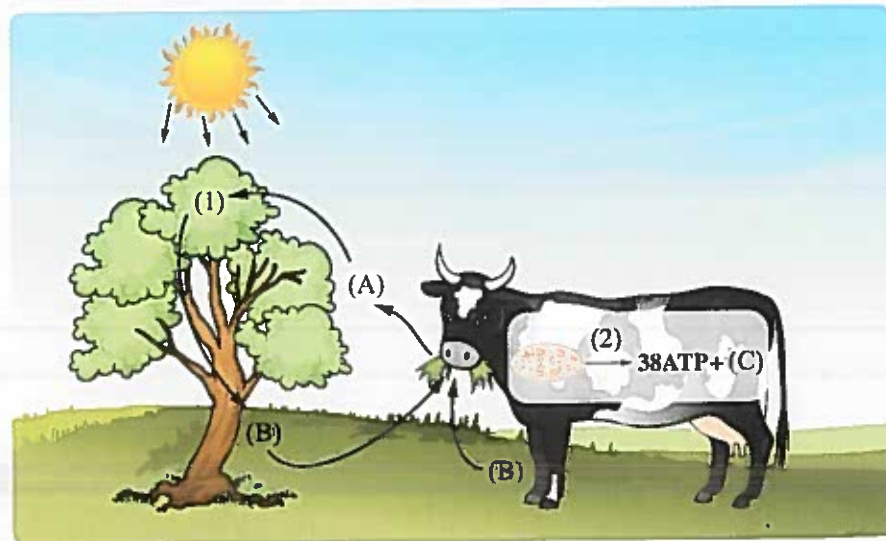


Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

- 1 Which of the following graphs expresses the relation between the aerobic respiration rate and the amount of oxygen that is available in a muscular cell ?



- 2 The following figure represents two vital processes (1) and (2) that occur inside the living cells of two different organisms :



Which of the following can be concluded from the two processes (1) and (2) ?

- (a) Process no. (2) depends on process no. (1).
- (b) Process no. (1) depends on process no. (2).
- (c) No one of them depends on the other.
- (d) Each of them depends on the other.



3 Which of the following are used by the cell as a rapid source to obtain energy ?

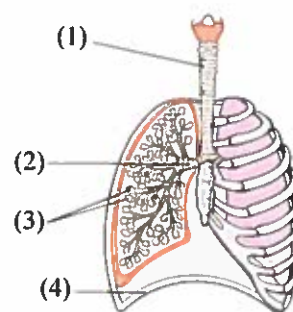
- (a) Glucose molecules.
- (b) Phosphoglyceraldehyde molecules.
- (c) Pyruvic acid molecules.
- (d) ATP molecules.

4 The ratio of the number of  $\text{FADH}_2$  to NADH molecules that are resulted from the complete oxidation of one molecule of glucose in aerobic conditions is .....

- (a) 1 : 5
- (b) 3 : 1
- (c) 5 : 1
- (d) 1 : 3

5 The opposite figure illustrates the respiratory system in human, which of the following represents the functional units of this system ?

- (a) (1).
- (b) (2).
- (c) (3).
- (d) (4).



6 The following table represents 3 different stages for the oxidation of glucose molecule inside the living cell :

Stage (1)	Needs the presence of ATP molecules and occurs in the absence of oxygen.
Stage (2)	Needs the presence of oxygen and occurs in the absence of ATP molecules.
Stage (3)	Doesn't need the presence of ATP molecules or oxygen.

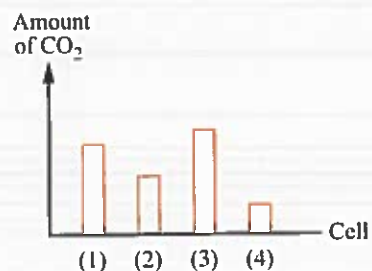
Which of the following represents the three stages (1), (2) and (3) respectively ?

- (a) Glycolysis – Krebs cycle – Electron transport chain.
- (b) Krebs cycle – Glycolysis – Electron transport chain.
- (c) Electron transport chain – Krebs cycle – Glycolysis.
- (d) Glycolysis – Electron transport chain – Krebs cycle.



- 7 The opposite graph represents the amount of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas that is resulted from four cells (1), (2), (3) and (4) at the same period of time, which of the following represents the most active cell ?

(a) Cell no. (1). (b) Cell no. (2).  
(c) Cell no. (3). (d) Cell no. (4)



- 8 All the following share in the arrival of oxygen gas to the cells of the herbaceous plant stems, **except** .....

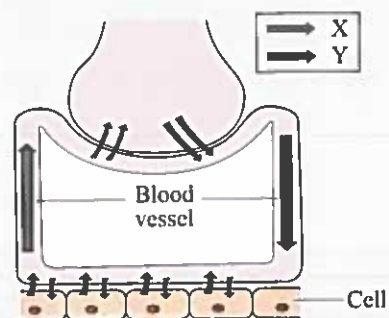
(a) phloem passageways. (b) stomata. (c) lenticels. (d) roots.

- 9 Photosynthetic phosphorylation and oxidative phosphorylation, .....

(a) are reversible processes.  
(b) the first occurs in the mitochondria and the second occurs in the chloroplasts.  
(c) the first needs energy and the second releases energy.  
(d) they are different in the source of energy.

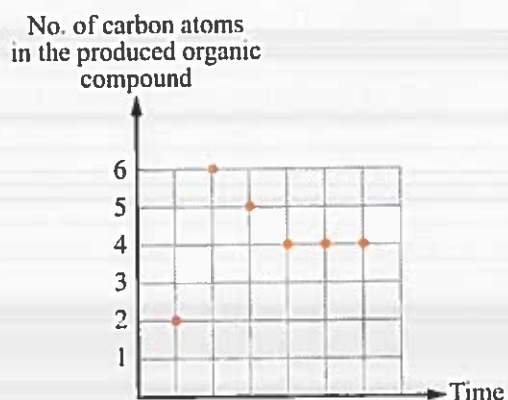
- 10 In the opposite figure, the two gases that are represented by the symbols (X) and (Y) are ..... respectively.

(a)  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{O}_2$   
(b)  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$   
(c)  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{N}_2$   
(d)  $\text{N}_2$  and  $\text{O}_2$



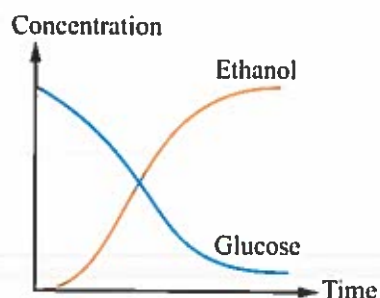
- 11 The opposite graph represents the produced organic compounds during a stage of cellular respiration, what is the number of ATP molecules produced during this stage ?

(a) One molecule.  
(b) 2 molecules.  
(c) 3 molecules.  
(d) 12 molecules.



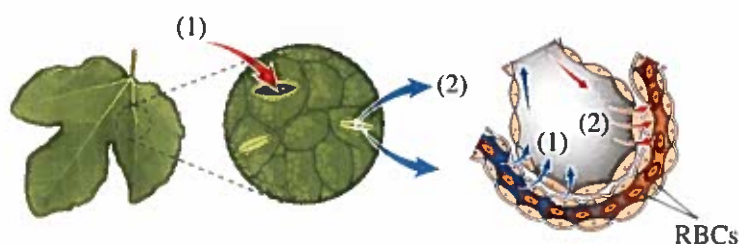


- 12 The opposite graph shows the concentration of each of glucose and ethanol in an experiment that was carried out in a cell, the reason for the shortage in glucose and increasing of ethanol is.....



- (a) citric acid cycle.
- (b) pyruvic acid reduction.
- (c) lactic acid fermentation.
- (d) glycolysis.

- 13 Study the two figures, then conclude :



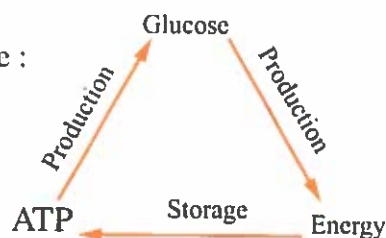
What do arrows no. (1) and no. (2) represent respectively ?

- (a) Carbon dioxide / Oxygen.
- (b) Water vapour / Carbon dioxide.
- (c) Oxygen / Water vapour.
- (d) Oxygen / Carbon dioxide.

- 14 What is the compound used in the aerobic and anaerobic respiration ?

- (a) CoA
- (b) FAD
- (c)  $\text{NAD}^+$
- (d) NADP

- 15 Study the following diagram which represents two vital processes that occur in the living organisms, then determine :  
At which type of cells do these processes take place ?



- (a) Plant epidermis.
- (b) Companion cell.
- (c) Spongy layer.
- (d) Xylem parenchyma.

- 16 In the human lungs,  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{O}_2$  gases move through plasma membranes of the cells, which of the following choices is correct ?

	The number of plasma membranes where	
	$\text{O}_2$ diffuse from the atmospheric air	$\text{CO}_2$ diffuse to the atmospheric air
(a)	3	2
(b)	3	4
(c)	4	2
(d)	5	5

- 17 Both of mitochondria cristae and chloroplast membranes contain a system for .....

- (a) enzymes synthesis. (b) PGAL production.  
(c) electron transport. (d) glucose formation.

- 18 Human and plant "according to the respiration process" are .....

- (a) similar, because both have similar cellular enzymes.  
(b) similar, because both respire without the need for atmospheric air.  
(c) different, because respiration is aerobic in human and anaerobic in plant.  
(d) different, because human exhales  $\text{CO}_2$  as a product, while plant produces  $\text{O}_2$  as a product.

- 19 The number of reduced coenzymes during the oxidation of acetyl molecule aerobically is .....

- (a) 3 (b) 4 (c) 5 (d) 10

- 20 FAD and  $\text{NAD}^+$  molecules in aerobic respiration exposed to .....

- (a) oxidation. (b) reduction. (c) hydration. (d) decomposition.

- 21 What happens to ketoglutaric acid when it is converted into succinic acid during cellular respiration ?

- (a) It combines with  $\text{O}_2$  (b) It consumes ATP molecules.  
(c) It consumes  $\text{CO}_2$  (d) It loses electrons.

Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

**22** Give reason for : nitrogen gas doesn't transfer to blood.

---



---



---

**23** What happens in case of : the human respire polluted air with dust ?

---



---

**24** What is the similarity between : the anaerobic respiration in bacteria and anaerobic respiration in yeast fungus ?

---



---

**25** "The human respiratory system has no role in the excretion of water from the body". How far is this statement correct ? With explanation.

---



---

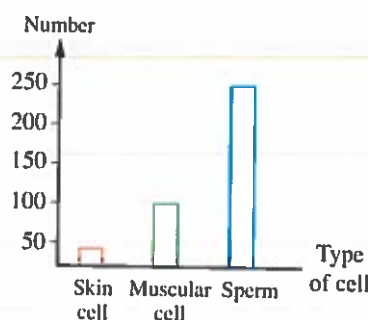


---

**26** The opposite graph illustrates the number of mitochondria in 3 different types of cells :

**Determine** which type of cells needs more glucose molecules to perform its function.

**Explain your answer.**




---

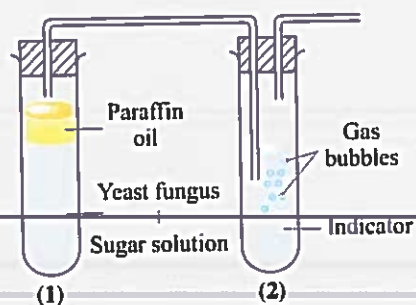


---



---

27 The following figure illustrates an experiment, study it then answer :



Colour of indicator	Concentration of $\text{CO}_2$ in the solution
Blue	Very low
Green	Low
Yellow	High

(a) What is the purpose of placing a layer of paraffin oil in tube no. (1) ?

(b) What is the colour of the solution in tube no. (2) that is expected at the end of the experiment ?



**Exercise on  
Chapter**

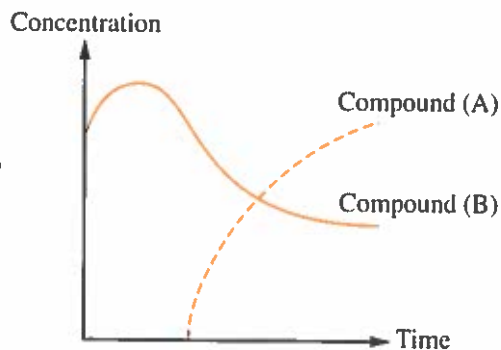
**3**

**From the Questions  
of the Previous Year Exams**

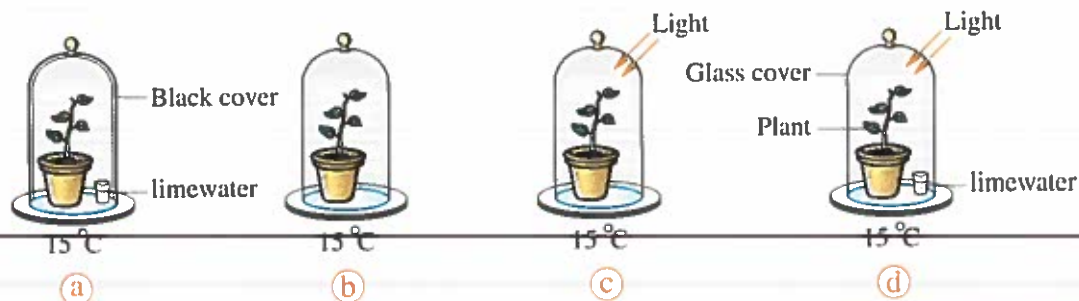


Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

- 1 Gas exchange process between lung alveoli and blood capillaries occurs by .....  
☐ (a) diffusion.      ☐ (b) osmosis.      ☐ (c) active transport.      ☐ (d) imbibition.
- 2 What is the number of ATP molecules that is resulted after chain of electron transfer from 10 molecules of pyruvic acid .....  
☐ (a) 150      ☐ (b) 170      ☐ (c) 180      ☐ (d) 190
- 3 If the stored energy is not released from co-enzymes during electron transport chain. What is the number of ATP molecules produced during oxidation of one glucose molecule aerobically ?  
☐ (a) 3      ☐ (b) 4      ☐ (c) 8      ☐ (d) 16
- 4 The actual respiratory surface in human is .....  
☐ (a) the thin alveolar walls.      ☐ (b) the trachea.  
☐ (c) the larynx.      ☐ (d) the two bronchi.
- 5 Which of the following compounds is a hydrogen carrier ?  
☐ (a)  $\text{NAD}^+$       ☐ (b)  $\text{NADH}$       ☐ (c)  $\text{FADH}_2$       ☐ (d)  $\text{ATP}$
- 6 If 30 molecules of  $\text{NADH}$  produced from Krebs cycle to electron transfer chain, so how many molecules of pyruvic acid that enter the mitochondria to share in reactions ?  
☐ (a) 5 molecules.      ☐ (b) 10 molecules.      ☐ (c) 15 molecules.      ☐ (d) 20 molecules.
- 7 The opposite graph represents the concentration of two types of compounds in the thigh muscles, during practicing vigorous exercise, which of the following expresses (A) and (B) respectively ?  
☐ (a)  $\text{ADP}$ , Glucose.      ☐ (b) Lactic acid, Glucose.  
☐ (c) Glycogen,  $\text{ATP}$ .      ☐ (d) Glycogen, Lactic acid.



8 In which of the following figures can the plant perform the photosynthesis process ?



9 The number of ATP that are released during on Krebs cycle (after electron transport chain) is .....

- (a) 24 ATP      (b) 12 ATP      (c) 1 ATP      (d) 2 ATP

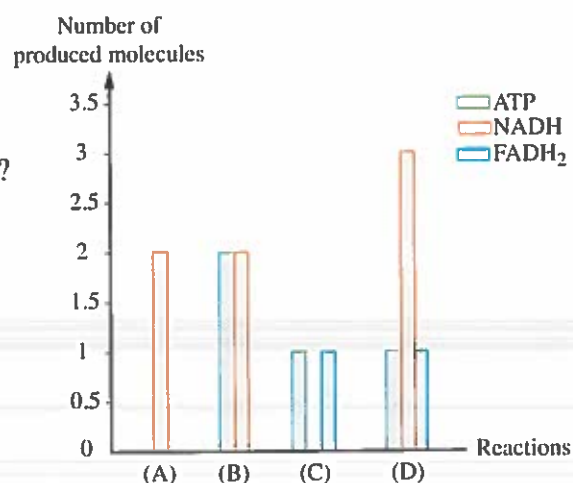
10 The fermentation in yeast fungus differs from fermentation in exhausted muscles fiber in .....

- (a) the increase of released energy amount from one molecule of glucose.  
 (b) releasing less amount of  $\text{CO}_2$   
 (c) breaking down of lower number of chemical bonds.  
 (d) that the fats and proteins aren't used as a source of energy.

11 Study the graph which represents some products of cellular respiration reactions, then determine :

Which reactions occur in the cell cytoplasm ?

- (a) (A).  
 (b) (B).  
 (c) (C).  
 (d) (D).



12 The fatty acids enter in cellular respiration in the form of ..... molecule(s).

- (a) one carbon      (b) two carbon      (c) three carbon      (d) four carbon

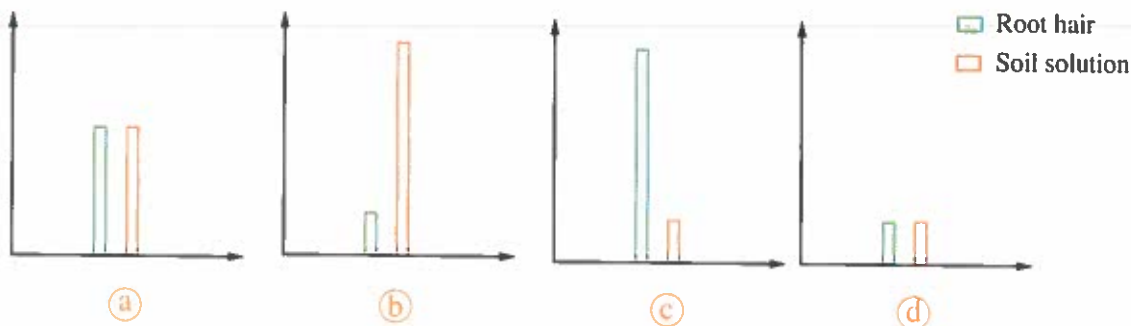


13 The shape represents a molecule called .....

- (a) PGAL
- (b) fructose 1,6 phosphate.
- (c) glucose 6 phosphate.
- (d) glucose molecule.



14 Which of the following graphs expresses the plant that needs cellular respiration to absorb ions ?



15 You can get 152 molecules of ATP from oxidation of .....

- (a) one molecule of glucose.
- (b) two molecules of glucose.
- (c) four molecules of glucose.
- (d) five molecules of glucose.

16 Obtaining 26 ATP molecules when the oxidation of a glucose molecule aerobically takes place .....

- (a) without occurrence of electron transport chain.
- (b) with one turn of Krebs cycle.
- (c) with total oxidation of glucose molecule.
- (d) with replacement of NADP by FAD.

17 In the following figure which valve open to pump the blood to part "X" ?

- (a) Tricuspid valve.
- (b) Bicuspid valve.
- (c) Aortic valve.
- (d) Pulmonary valve.



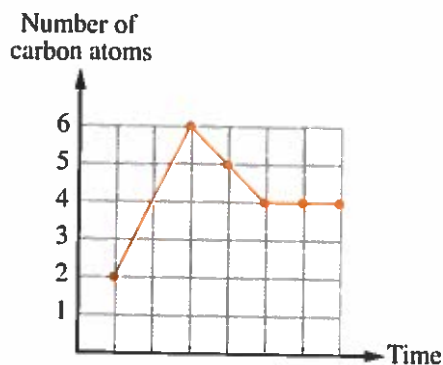
- 18 Glycolysis agree with Krebs cycle in production of .....
- (a) ATP
  - (b) NADH and ATP
  - (c) ADP
  - (d)  $\text{FADH}_2$  and ATP
- 19 Which of the following agrees with fermentation and photosynthesis ?
- (a) Both take place in absence of  $\text{O}_2$
  - (b) Both take place in plastid.
  - (c) Both take place in cytoplasm.
  - (d) Both release  $\text{O}_2$
- 20 Which of the following statements about ATP as an energy source is true ?
- (a) ATP is an immediate source of energy for the cell and is continuously being broken down and reformed.
  - (b) ATP is a long-term energy store for the cell and can be kept for a long time before being broken down.
  - (c) When broken down, ATP releases more energy than a molecule of glucose.
  - (d) When ATP is broken down, three separate reactions are required and the release of energy is slow.
- 21 The number of ATP molecules that are resulted indirectly from the conversion of a molecule of pyruvic acid into acetyl group is .....
- (a) Zero.
  - (b) 2
  - (c) 3
  - (d) 6

Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

- 22 What is the relation between : The conversions of ATP into ADP and the change in the compounds during glycolysis ?
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**23** Study the graph that represents the change of carbon atoms number of the compounds that resulted from one stage of cellular respiration, then deduce :

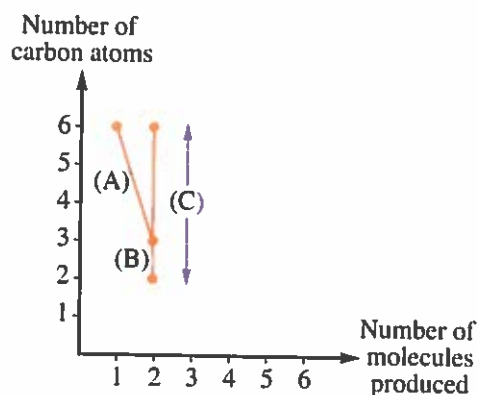
- (a) Which cellular respiration stage represented by this graph ?
- (b) What is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted of this stage ?



**24** What is the least number of NADH -  $\text{FADH}_2$  molecules at which the number of ATP result from them are equal ?

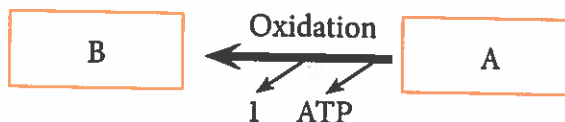
**25** Study the graph that represents the change of carbon atoms number of the compounds that resulted from two stages of cellular respiration, then deduce :

- (a) Which stage of cellular respiration that is represented by section (A) in the graph ?
- (b) What is the number of ATP molecules that are resulted of this stage when we start with (3) molecules ?



**26** From the following diagram, if you know that (A) and (B) are intermediate compounds which are formed through one of the cellular respiration stages inside the mitochondria and each one of them consists of the same number of carbon atoms.

- (a) What is the name of compound (A) ?  
(b) What is the name of product no. (1) ?



**27** Give reason for : The presence of millions of alveoli in one lung.



# 10 General Exams

All questions signed by \* are answered in detail.



You can reach the exams of  
some schools and educational  
administrations by scanning  
**this QR code**

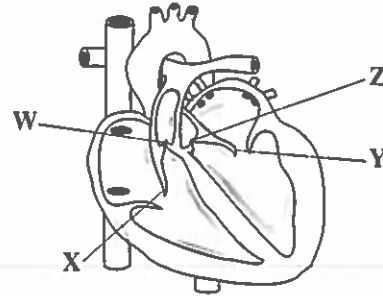




### Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

- 1 The opposite figure shows a longitudinal section in the heart, which of the following valves prevent the back flow of oxygenated blood ?

(a) (W), (Y).                      (b) (W), (X).  
 (c) (Y), (Z).                      (d) (Y), (X).



- 2 Which of the following conversions includes the oxidation process of coenzymes ?

(a) Pyruvic acid from phosphoglyceraldehyde.  
 (b) Succinic acid from ketoglutaric acid.  
 (c) Malic acid from succinic acid.  
 (d) Lactic acid from pyruvic acid.

- 3 In an experiment, a student put four potato slices (the length of each slice was 5 cm) in salt solutions with different concentrations, then he recorded the results in the following table, depending on the recorded results, which of the following expresses the solution that has the highest concentration ?

Salt solution	The length of the slice after 30 minutes
(a)	4.5
(b)	4.8
(c)	5
(d)	5.3

- 4 Which of the following represents the correct arrangement of the stem tissues from inside to outside ?

(a) Epidermis / Cortex / Vascular bundle / Pericycle.  
 (b) Vascular bundle / Pericycle / Cortex / Epidermis.  
 (c) Vascular bundle / Epidermis / Cortex / Pericycle.  
 (d) Pericycle / Vascular bundle / Cortex / Epidermis.

- 5 A green potted plant was placed on a glass plate and a small beaker containing clear limewater was put next to it and each of them is under a glass bell-jar, and they were left for period of time exposed to light, what will you observe ?

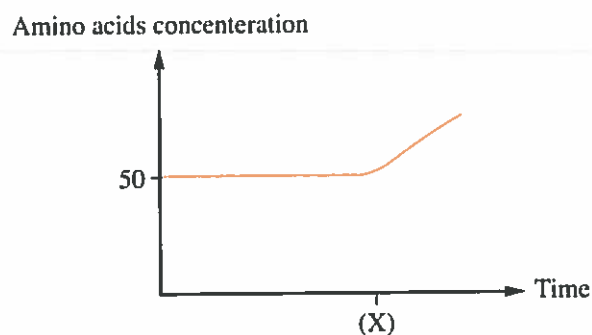
(a) Limewater becomes turbid.  
 (b) Limewater becomes turbid, then the turbidity disappears.  
 (c) Limewater is clear.  
 (d) The colour of limewater changes into dark red.

- 6 A red blood corpuscle begins its journey from an artery in the left arm directed to the thumb cells for supplying them with oxygen, then it returns back to the left ventricle. What is the number of sites of the blood capillaries through which the red blood corpuscle passed during its journey ?

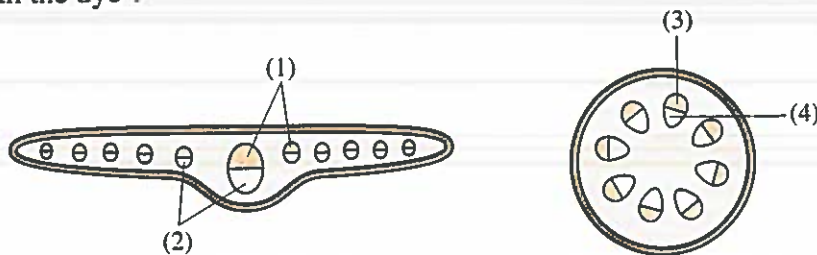
(a) 1 (b) 2 (c) 3 (d) 4

- 7 In the opposite graph, which of the following enzymes is responsible for changing the concentration of amino acids in the hepatic portal vein at point (X) ?

(a) Lipase. (b) Amylase.  
 (c) Peptidase. (d) Pepsin.



- 8 \* In an experiment that illustrates the transport of water, the roots of a dicot plant were put in water coloured with a dye, after several hours, two sections were taken one from the stem and the other from the leaf of the plant. Which of the following parts would be coloured with the dye ?



(a) (1) and (3). (b) (2) and (4). (c) (2) and (3). (d) (1) and (4).



9 Which of the following is found in the human blood plasma in the normal cases ?

- (a) Fibrin.
- (b) Thromboplastin.
- (c) Thrombin.
- (d) Fibrinogen.

10 Which of the following is(are) required for accomplishing the Krebs cycle in the presence of acetyl groups ?

- (a) Glucose.
- (b) NADH.
- (c) Respiratory enzymes.
- (d) ATP molecules.

11 Which of the following food substances wouldn't be digested, if it was treated with drops of the pancreatic juice at pH = 8 and 37°C ?

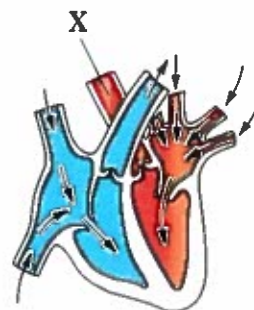
- (a) Meat.
- (b) Peanut butter.
- (c) Bread.
- (d) Rice.

12 \* "The different food substances like cane sugar and amino acids transfer through the sieve tubes of phloem". Which of the following statements describes this process correctly ?

- (a) Sugar transfers by active transport in some sieve tubes, while amino acids transfer by diffusion in the other sieve tubes.
- (b) Sugar and amino acids transfer together by active transport in the same sieve tube of phloem.
- (c) The flow rate of sugar and amino acids increases in two different directions in the same sieve tube of phloem.
- (d) The flow rate of sugar and amino acids increases in different directions of different sieve tubes at the same time.

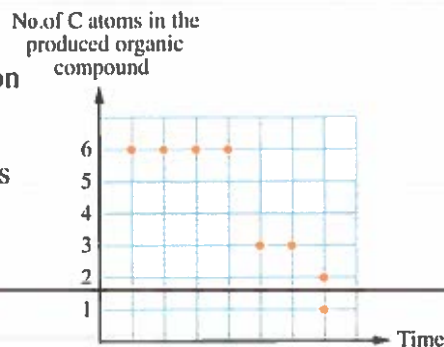
13 In the opposite figure, what is the pressure value in vessel (X) ?

- (a) 10 mm Hg
- (b) 70 mm Hg
- (c) 130 mm Hg
- (d) 160 mm Hg

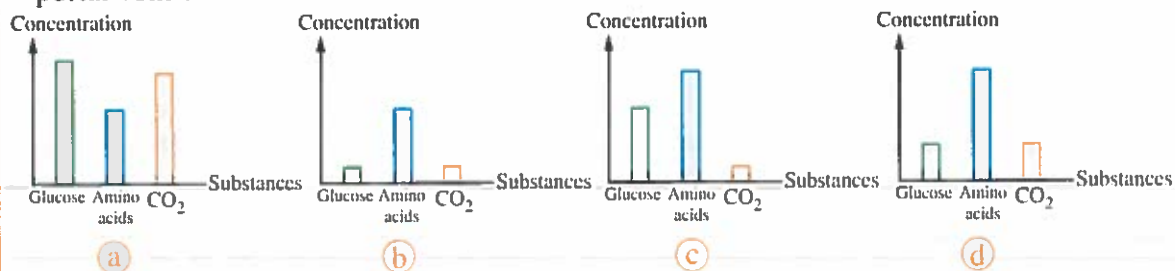


- 14 \* The opposite graph represents the organic compounds which are formed during cellular respiration inside the cell cytoplasm of a living organism in case of  $O_2$  deficiency, which one of the following organisms performs this type of respiration ?

(a) *Paramecium*. (b) *Bacteria*.  
(c) *Euglena*. (d) Yeast fungus.



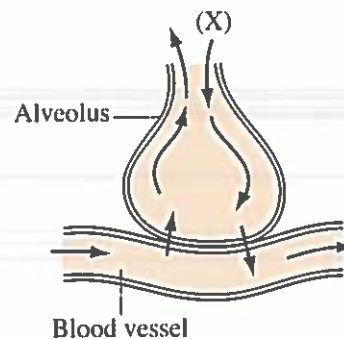
- 15 Which of the following graphs describes the substances concentration in the hepatic portal vein ?



- 16 Some soil fungi cause wilting diseases for some crops, whereas they attack the xylem vessels and grow inside them, which of the following vital processes will be affected by these fungi ?
- (a) Cohesion force among  $H_2O$  molecules.  
(b) Adhesion force between  $H_2O$  molecules and walls of xylem vessels.  
(c) The flow rate of solutes during transmission.  
(d) The absorption rate of  $H_2O$  through the root hairs.

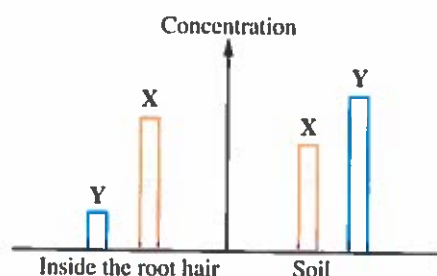
- 17 From studying the opposite figure, what is the substance that is formed from the combination of substance (X) with the haemoglobin in the red blood corpuscle in the two lungs ?

(a) Protein.  
(b) Iron.  
(c) Carbo-aminohaemoglobin.  
(d) Oxyhaemoglobin.





- 18 The following graph shows the concentration of ion (X) and ion (Y) for elements needed by a plant in the soil and inside the root hair of this plant :



What are the physical phenomena that lead to transferring (X) and (Y) respectively ?

- (a) Active transport and diffusion.
  - (b) Selective permeability and active transport.
  - (c) Diffusion and selective permeability.
  - (d) Selective permeability and diffusion.
- 19 \* What is the number of the produced ATP molecules after the electron transport chain from 10 molecules of pyruvic acid ?
- (a) 150
  - (b) 170
  - (c) 180
  - (d) 190
- 20 What happens if you put a plant cell in a sucrose solution whose concentration is more than the cell osmotic pressure ?
- (a) It will swell, due to the entry of  $H_2O$  inside its sap vacuole.
  - (b) It will shrink, due to  $H_2O$  exit from its sap vacuole.
  - (c) It will not be affected.
  - (d) It will burst.
- 21 What is the required condition for exiting 6 molecules of  $CO_2$  during the aerobic cellular respiration ?
- (a) Glycolysis.
  - (b) Pyruvic acid oxidation and completing two Krebs cycles.
  - (c) The occurrence of complete oxidative phosphorylation.
  - (d) The cell consumes more  $O_2$

Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

- 22 **Explain :** leaves represent the production lines, while phloem tissue represents the distribution lines in plant.

---



---



---

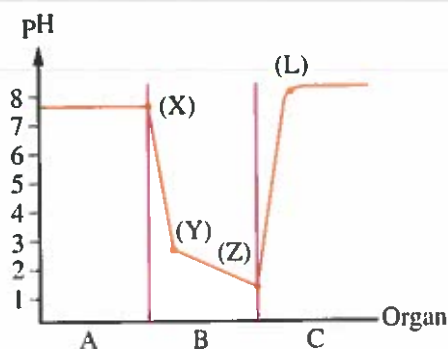
- 23 **What is the relation between :** the red blood cells and facilitating the digestion of fats ?

---



---

- 24 **The following graph illustrates three organs in the digestive canal (A), (B) and (C), illustrate the substance which is responsible for the change in pH from :**



- (a) Point (X) to point (Y).

- (b) Point (Z) to point (L).

---

- 25 **Suggest one reason for :** stopping the reactions of the electron transport chain.

---



---



---

**26** The opposite table illustrates

the relative percentages in the inhaled air, the exhaled air and the residual air in lung (the alveolar air).

	Inhaled air	Exhaled air	Alveolar air
O <sub>2</sub> %	21	16	14
CO <sub>2</sub> %	0.03	4	5.5

**Explain** how the differences occur in these components according to what happens in the two lungs.

---

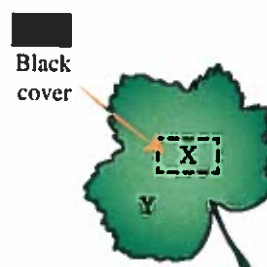


---



---

**27** In the opposite figure, a black cover was put on part (X), then the leaf was exposed to light for several hours. **Conclude** what happens if some drops of iodine solution are put on parts (X) and (Y), after removing the black cover.




---



---

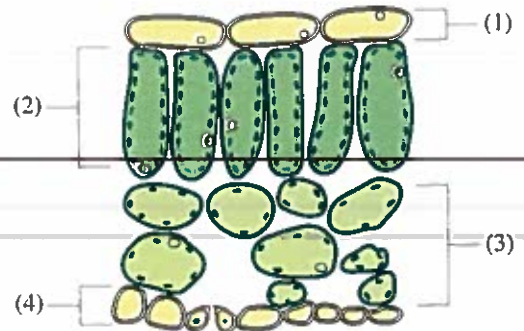


---



Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

- 1 The opposite figure illustrates a part of the transverse section in a leaf of a plant, which of the following tissues is the most efficient to perform the photosynthesis process ?

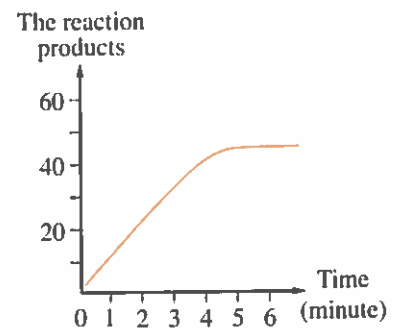


- (a) (1). (b) (2).  
(c) (3). (d) (4).

- 2 Which of the following happens in case of the presence or absence of oxygen in the living cell ?

- (a) Glycolysis.  
(b) The conversion of pyruvic acid into acetyl coenzyme (A).  
(c) Citric acid cycle.  
(d) Oxidative phosphorylation.

- 3 \* The opposite graph illustrates the activity of amylase enzyme, what can we conclude from this graph ?



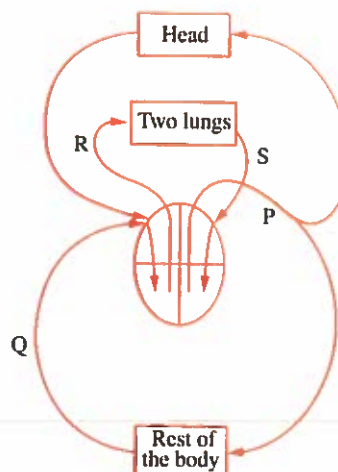
- (a) The concentration of starch in the second minute is lower than that in the fourth minute.  
(b) The concentration of glucose in the fourth minute is higher than that in the first minute.  
(c) The concentration of maltose in the second minute is higher than that in the fourth minute.  
(d) The concentration of maltose in the fourth minute is higher than the concentration of starch.

- 4 \* Which of the following percentages are equal ?

- (a) The percentage of  $O_2$  in the inhaled air with its percentage in the alveolar air.  
(b) The percentage of  $CO_2$  in the exhaled air with its percentage in the alveolar air.  
(c) The percentage of  $N_2$  in the inhaled air with its percentage in the exhaled air.  
(d) The percentage of  $H_2O$  in the inhaled air with its percentage in the exhaled air.

5 The opposite figure represents the heart and the main blood vessels, which of the following blood vessels has the highest blood pressure ?

- (a) R
- (b) S
- (c) P
- (d) Q



6 How far are these statements "the green plant is autotrophic", "it absorbs water and glucose from the soil" correct ?

- (a) The two statements are correct and related.
- (b) The two statements are correct and not related.
- (c) The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.
- (d) The first statement is wrong and the second statement is correct.

7 \* If 30 molecules of NADH are coming out from Krebs cycle to the electron transport chain, what is the number of pyruvic acid molecules which entered into the mitochondria to participate in the reactions ?

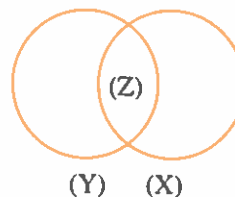
- (a) 5
- (b) 10
- (c) 15
- (d) 20

8 Which of the following elements is/are not present in the food of aphid insect, when it is examined ?

- (a) Amino acids.
- (b) Fatty acids.
- (c) Sucrose.
- (d) Water.

9 \* The opposite figure illustrates two types of the body fluids, if you know that (Y) contains enucleated cells, what do you expect about the components of fluid (Z) ?

- (a) Plasma and white blood corpuscles.
- (b) Lymph and plasma.
- (c) Lymph and white blood corpuscles.
- (d) Red blood corpuscles and blood platelets.





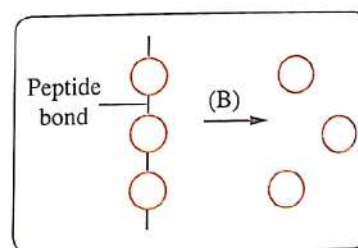
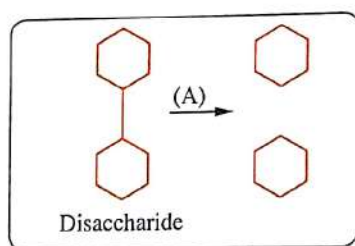
- 10 What is the difference between the green plants and the purple sulphur bacteria ?
- (a) The type of chlorophyll in each one of them only.
  - (b) The hydrogen source which is required to reduce  $\text{CO}_2$  in each one of them only.
  - (c) The type of chlorophyll and the source of hydrogen required to reduce  $\text{CO}_2$  in each one of them.
  - (d) Green plants are autotrophic, while purple sulphur bacteria are saprophytes.

- 11 Which of the following vital processes doesn't need ATP ?
- (a) Aerobic respiration.
  - (b) Glycolysis.
  - (c) Anaerobic respiration.
  - (d)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  splitting in the photosynthesis process.

- 12 "After eating too much salty popcorn, we feel roughness in the internal side of lips". What is the reason for that ?

- (a) Entry of salt into the lips' cells that leads to their swelling.
- (b) Exit of salt from the lips' cells that leads to their shrinkage.
- (c) Entry of water into the lips' cells that leads to their swelling.
- (d) Exit of water from the lips' cells that leads to their shrinkage.

- 13 Study the following diagrams, then answer the following question :



What is the suitable value of pH for the activation of enzymes (A) and (B) together ?

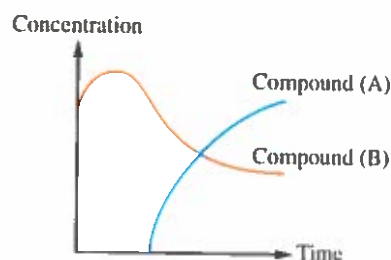
- (a) 6
- (b) 7
- (c) 8
- (d) 9

- 14 What is the blood vessel which contains the highest percentage of fats after digestion and absorption processes accomplishment?

- (a) Superior vena cava.
- (b) Inferior vena cava.
- (c) Hepatic portal vein.
- (d) Hepatic vein.

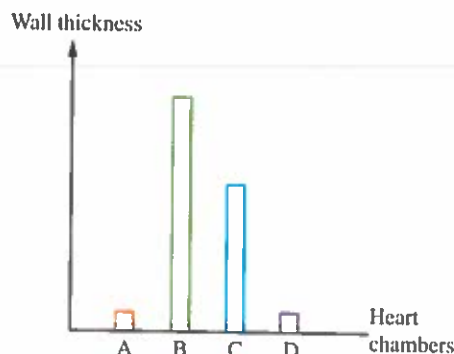
- 15 The opposite graph represents the concentration of two types of compounds in the thigh muscles, during performing vigorous exercises, which of the following expresses (A) and (B) respectively ?

(a) ADP / Glucose. (b) Lactic acid / Glucose.  
(c) Glycogen / ATP (d) Glycogen / Lactic acid.



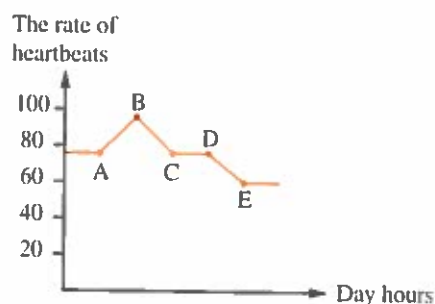
- 16 Study the opposite graph which shows the difference in the thickness of the heart chambers in human, what is the chamber that is represented by column (B) ?

(a) Right atrium. (b) Left ventricle.  
(c) Left atrium. (d) Right ventricle.

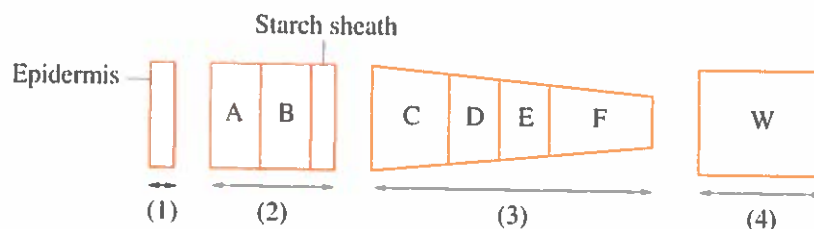


- 17 Study the opposite graph which shows the heartbeats rate for a person during the day, then determine, what is the interval time that represents performing a physical activity ?

(a) AB (b) DE  
(c) BC (d) CD



- 18 The following diagram shows 4 parts in the stem of a dicot plant arranged from outside to inside, study it then determine :

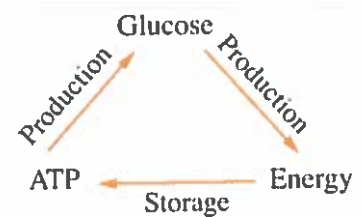


What is the function which the cells of the tissues (D) and (F) share ?

(a) Aeration. (b) Elasticity.  
(c) Sap storage. (d) Sap transfer.

- 19 The opposite diagram shows some vital processes that occur inside some living organisms, in which of the following organisms do these processes take place ?

(a) *Chlorella* alga. (b) Yeast fungus.  
(c) *Bilharzia* worms. (d) *Orobanch* plant.



- 20 Which of the following plants do you expect its leaves epidermis is devoid of cutin ?

(a) Bean. (b) Corn. (c) *Elodea*. (d) Cactus.

- 21 Which of the following compounds its deficiency affects both the rate of respiration and photosynthesis processes in *Elodea* plant ?

(a) ATP (b) FAD (c)  $\text{NAD}^+$  (d) NADP

Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

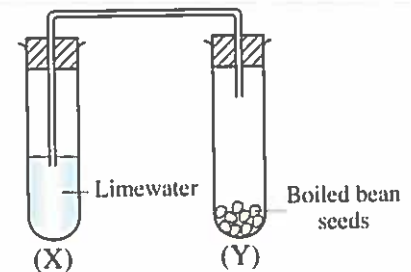
- 22 From the opposite figure, deduce what happens to the solution in tube (X).

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



- 23 Explain : the transfer of water in plant is faster at noon and slower at night.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

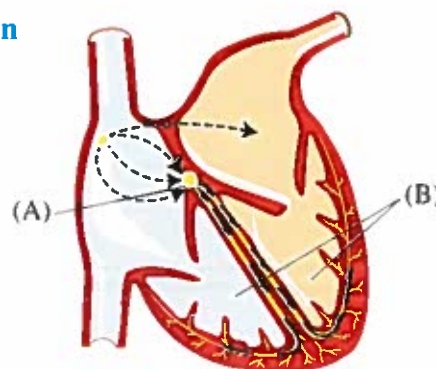
- 24 What happens if : the respiration of the root tissues stops ?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 25** The opposite figure illustrates a longitudinal section in the human heart and the arrows represent the direct movement of the electric pulse which makes the muscle start to contract.



**Illustrate :**

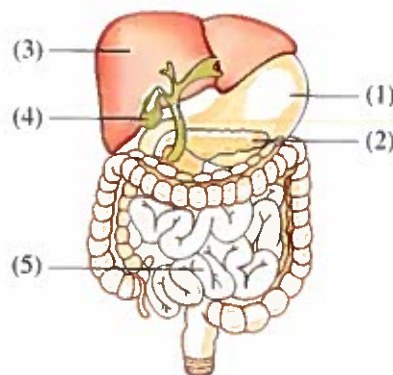
- (a) The reason for the delaying in the passage of the electric pulse that occurs at point (A).

- (b) The importance of (B) contraction from the base.

- 26** "The aerobic respiration may occur after the anaerobic respiration".

**How far the statement is correct ? With explanation.**

- 27** The opposite figure illustrates a part of the human digestive system, write the number and the name of the organ :



- (a) That is responsible for the adjustment of the pH value in organ no. (5).

- (b) That contains the highest concentration of hydrogen ions.

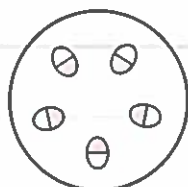


Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

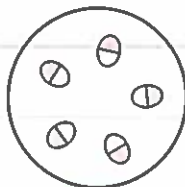
1 In which of the following blood vessels the highest concentration of amino acids is found after eating a meal rich in proteins ?

- (a) Hepatic vein.
- (b) Hepatic portal vein.
- (c) Inferior vena cava.
- (d) Superior vena cava.

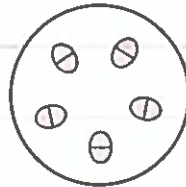
2 \* From the opposite figure, which of the following figures represents a transverse section in the stem of a dicot plant ?



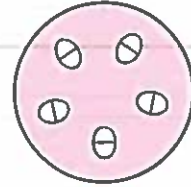
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

3 What happens when the number of the red blood corpuscles in an adult person reaches 3 million cells/mm<sup>3</sup> of blood ?

- (a) The blood red colour intensity remains constant.
- (b) The haemoglobin level increases in blood.
- (c) The iron level increases in blood.
- (d) The iron and haemoglobin level decreases in blood.

4 \* Which of the following is not related to the increase in the rates of elements diffusion against the concentration gradient ?

- (a) The increase in the active transport.
- (b) The plant absorption for more phosphorus.
- (c) The absorption of macro-nutrients only.
- (d) The increase in the respiration rates.

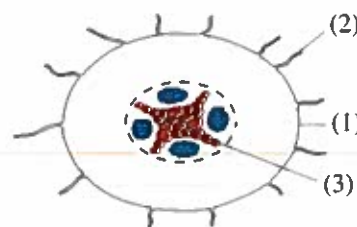


5 \* Which of the following is synchronized with the relaxation of the walls of the right atrium ?

- (a) Opening of mitral valve.
- (b) Closure of pulmonary valve.
- (c) Opening of tricuspid valve.
- (d) Opening of aortic valve.

6 The opposite figure illustrates a transverse section in the plant root, which of the following parts absorb(s) water and salts ions mainly ?

- (a) (1).
- (b) (2).
- (c) (1) and (2).
- (d) (3).



7 Which of the following helps in absorbing oxygen rapidly from the blood that is present in the two lungs ?

- (a) The air that enters in the two lungs contains a lower amount of  $O_2$  than the air comes out from them.
- (b) The wall of alveolus is thick and has a large surface area.
- (c) The wall of alveolus is thin and has a large surface area.
- (d) The concentration of  $O_2$  in the blood is higher than its concentration in the alveolus.

8 Which of the following statements doesn't agree with the cardiac circulation ?

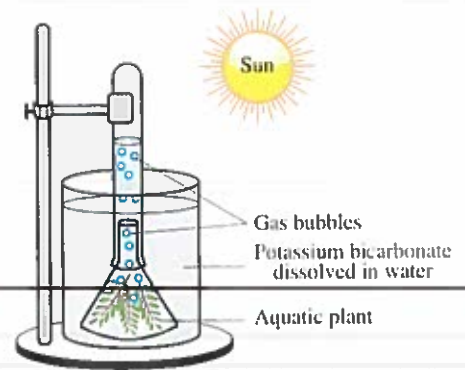
- (a) When the two ventricles contract, the valves between atria and ventricles close.
- (b) When the two ventricles relax, the semi-lunar valves close.
- (c) When the two atria contract, the semi-lunar valves open.
- (d) When the two atria contract, the valves between atria and ventricles open.

9 \* What is the difference between the fermentation in yeast fungus and the fermentation in a fatigued muscle fiber ?

- (a) The difference in the released energy amount from one molecule of glucose.
- (b) Releasing less amount of  $CO_2$
- (c) The breaking down of a lower number of chemical bonds.
- (d) The fats and proteins aren't used as a source of energy.

**10** From the opposite figure, what is the evolved gas from this experiment ?

- ☐ a Carbon dioxide.
- ☐ b Hydrogen.
- ☐ c Nitrogen.
- ☐ d Oxygen.



**11** Which of the following statements describes the enzymes which are present in the raw fruits and vegetables ?

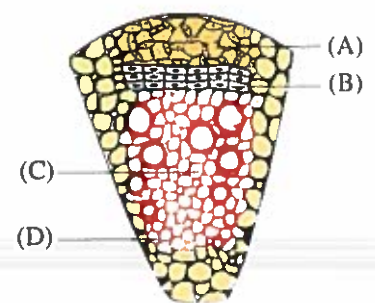
- ☐ a The plant enzymes don't work inside the plant.
- ☐ b The enzymes change their substrates inside the human body.
- ☐ c The enzymes that are present in them become inactive by heating and cooking.
- ☐ d The enzymes increase the activation energy.

**12** A child ate a meal containing wheat and milk, what is the suitable pH value for the action of several enzymes together to digest this meal ?

- ☐ a 5
- ☐ b 6
- ☐ c 7
- ☐ d 8

**13** Study the opposite figure which shows a part of T.S. in a dicot plant stem, which of the following expresses the cells originated from undifferentiated cells ?

- ☐ a (A).
- ☐ b (B).
- ☐ c (C).
- ☐ d (D).

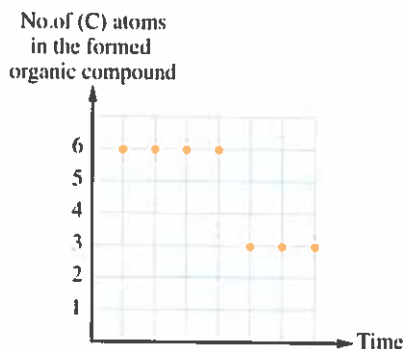


**14** From which of the following are the walls of the blood vessels ends that spread among the cells of liver tissues formed ?

- ☐ a Epithelial layer.
- ☐ b Epithelial and muscular layers.
- ☐ c Muscular and connective layers.
- ☐ d Muscular layer.

- 15 \* Study the opposite graph which describes the organic compounds that are formed during cellular respiration inside the cytoplasm of a living organism cell in case of  $O_2$  deficiency, what is the living organism that performs this type of respiration ?

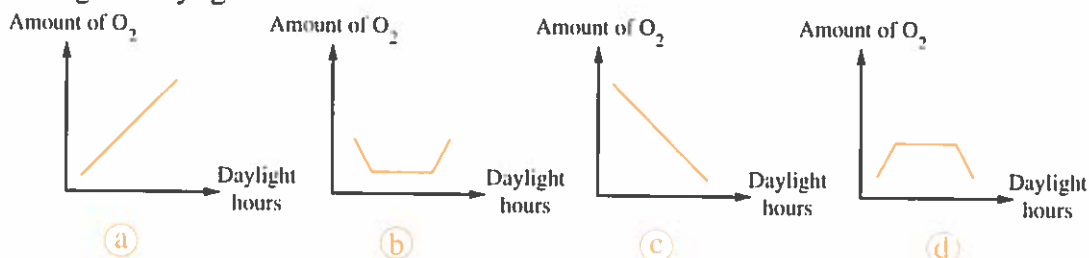
(a) *Paramecium*. (b) Bacteria.  
(c) *Amoeba*. (d) Yeast fungus.



- 16 Which body organ can form and destroy two types of blood components ?

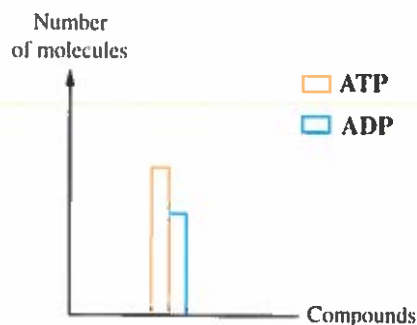
(a) Heart. (b) Liver.  
(c) Pancreas. (d) Spleen.

- 17 Which of the following graphs describes the evolved  $O_2$  amount from a plant during the daylight hours ?



- 18 \* The opposite graph shows some of the photosynthesis process products, which of the following occurs during this stage ?

(a) The formation of  $H_2O$  molecules.  
(b) The oxidation of  $NADPH_2$   
(c) The release of  $O_2$   
(d) The reduction of  $CO_2$



- 19 In the presence of  $O_2$  after performing a running race, the body works on .....

(a) oxidizing lactic acid. (b) oxidizing NADH  
(c) reducing pyruvic acid. (d) ATP molecules decomposition.

- 20 Which of the following plant leaves produces a greater amount of oxygen at daytime ?



a



b



c



d

- 21 Study the following diagram :



Which of the following represents (X) and (Y) respectively ?

- a  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{O}_2$
- b  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$
- c Water vapour and  $\text{O}_2$
- d Water vapour and  $\text{CO}_2$

Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

- 22 What is the similarity between : glycolysis and Krebs cycle ?

---

---

---

- 23 What is the difference between : the epidermis in each of the root and stem ?

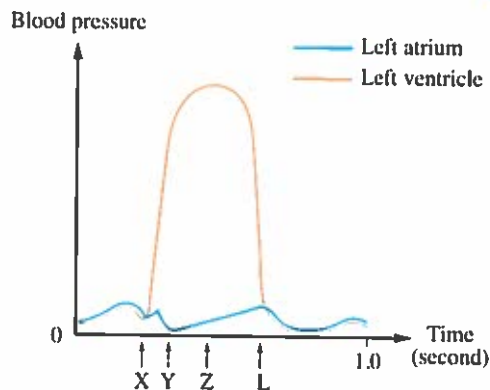
---

---

---



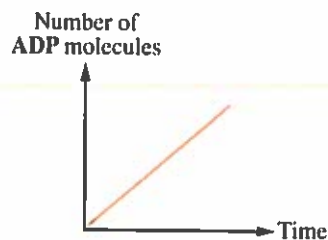
- 24** The opposite graph illustrates the changes in the blood pressure for each of the left atrium and left ventricle during the heart beating, **determine** the time at which the mitral valve opens.



- 25** **Explain :** the entrance of oxygen or air in the stem of a herbaceous plant is different from the woody stem.

- 26** "The role of enzymes is restricted on the digestion of food substances only".  
**How far the statement is correct ? With explanation.**

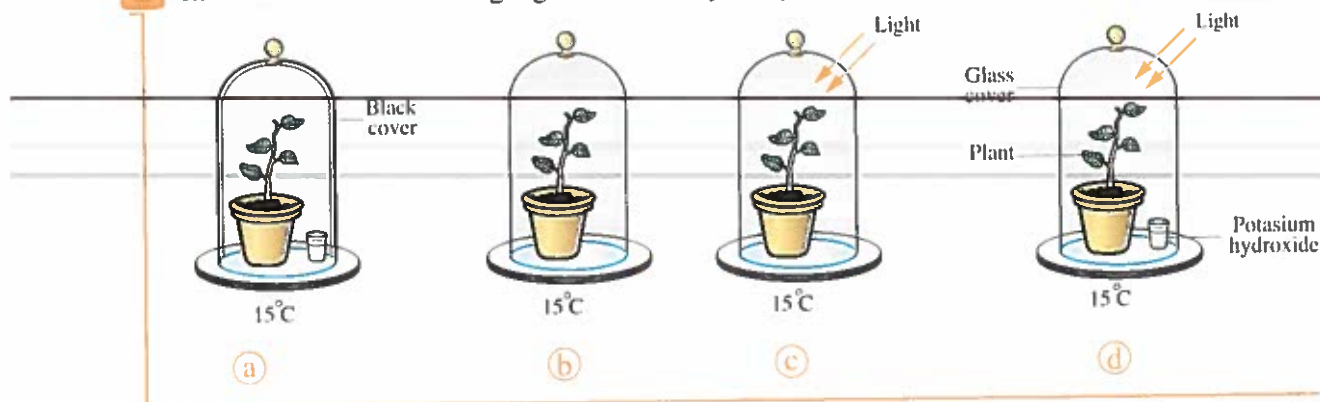
- 27** The opposite figure illustrates the change in the number of ADP molecules in the cell over time, is the mentioned cell in an active state or not ? **Explain.**





Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

1 In which of the following figures can the plant perform the photosynthesis process ?



2 Which of the following doesn't agree with glycolysis and the reactions which occur in the grana of the chloroplast ?

- (a) Both of them need energy.
- (b) ATP molecules are released from both of them.
- (c) Their occurrence is associated with the presence of coenzymes.
- (d) 3-carbon compound is formed in each one of them.

3 After performing a muscular effort, which of the following blood vessels carries the lowest concentration of CO<sub>2</sub> ?

- (a) Hepatic vein.
- (b) Pulmonary artery.
- (c) Pulmonary vein.
- (d) Vena cava.

4 \* What is the number of CO<sub>2</sub> molecules which is resulted from Krebs cycle when a molecule of maltose is completely oxidized ?

- (a) 2
- (b) 4
- (c) 6
- (d) 8



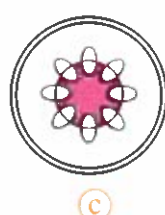
- 5 A plant was put in water containing red dye for 24 hours, then it was removed and several sections were taken from the plant stem, which of the following figures illustrates that ?



(a)



(b)



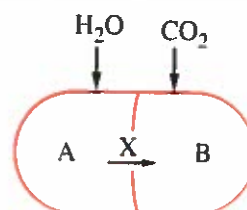
(c)



(d)

- 6 From the opposite figure, that shows what happens inside the green plastid which of the following represents (X) ?

- (a) ATP and PGAL                      (b) ADP and  $\text{CO}_2$   
(c)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and NADP                      (d)  $\text{NADPH}_2$  and ATP



- 7 Which of the following is found in the pulmonary artery with the highest percentage ?

- (a) Oxyhaemoglobin.  
(b) Carbo-aminohaemoglobin.  
(c) Haemoglobin.  
(d) Haemoglobin and oxyhaemoglobin.

- 8 \* In which of the following stages the least amount of ATP molecules is released directly ?

- (a) Glycolysis.  
(b) Oxidation of pyruvic acid into acetyl group.  
(c) One Krebs cycle.  
(d) Electron transport chain.

- 9 In the opposite figure, what does part (X) represent ?

- (a) A main branch from the trachea.  
(b) A branch from a blood vessel.  
(c) An alveolus.  
(d) A bronchiole.



**10** What is the organ which secretes digestive juices for all types of food ?

- (a) Stomach. (b) Liver. (c) Pancreas. (d) Duodenum.

**11** What is(are) the substance(s) that form(s) the greatest portion of lymph ?

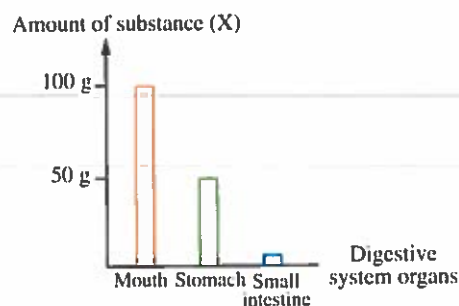
- (a) Water. (b) Fats.  
(c) Proteins. (d) Monosaccharides.

**12** What is the ratio between the amount of energy produced from ATP molecule and that produced from NADH molecule ?

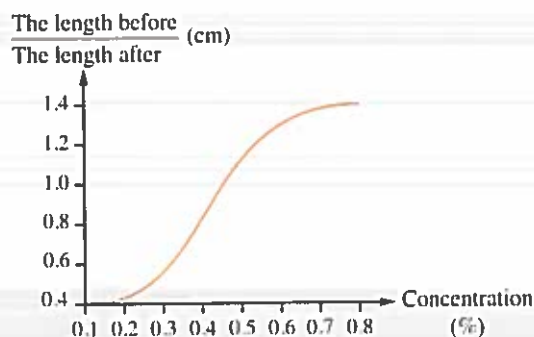
- (a) 1 : 3 (b) 2 : 1 (c) 1 : 2 (d) 3 : 1

**13** \* Study the opposite graph which shows the route of (100 g) of food substance (X) through different digestive organs after more than 1 hour of its ingestion. What is the form of (X) when it is transferred through the villi of small intestine ?

- (a) Glycerol. (b) Monosaccharides.  
(c) Fatty acids. (d) Amino acids.



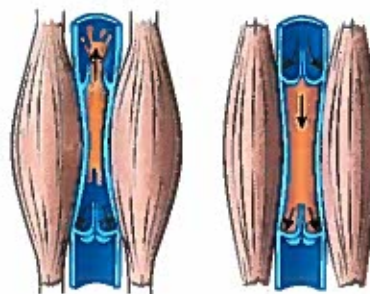
**14** Potato slices with equal lengths were put in serial concentrations of sucrose sugar for 30 minutes, their lengths were measured before and after treating, the following graph shows the ratio between the length before and after treating and the sugar solution concentration. Which of the following shows the change in the length of the potato slices and the pressure of fullness with water, with increasing the concentration of sugar solution ?



	The ratio between the length before and after treating	Pressure of fullness with H <sub>2</sub> O
(a)	Increases	Increases
(b)	Increases	Decreases
(c)	Decreases	Decreases
(d)	Decreases	Increases

- 15 From studying the two opposite figures, what is the role of the muscles that surround the blood vessels ?

- (a) Opening the valve when the muscles contract.
- (b) Opening the valve when the muscles relax.
- (c) The closure of the valve when a muscle contracts and the opposite muscle relaxes.
- (d) Opening of the valve when a muscle contracts and the opposite muscle relaxes.



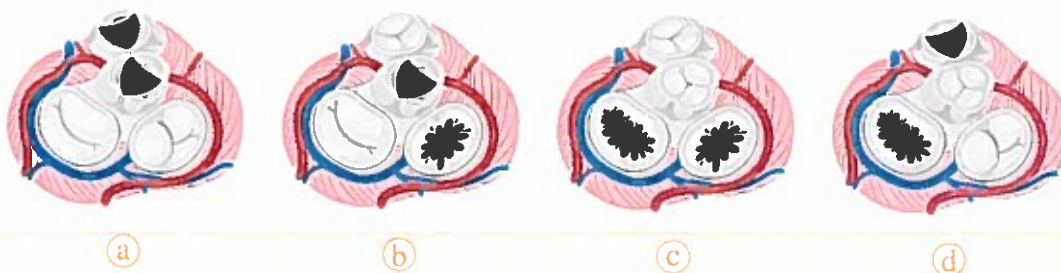
- 16 Study the following pathways :

- Alveolus  $\longrightarrow$   $O_2$   $\longrightarrow$  Blood capillaries.
- Small intestine  $\longrightarrow$  Amino acids  $\longrightarrow$  Blood capillaries.
- Atmospheric air  $\longrightarrow$   $CO_2$   $\longrightarrow$  Plant cells.

What is the common mechanism in transferring the substances in the previous pathways ?

- (a) Active transport.
- (b) Osmosis.
- (c) Diffusion.
- (d) Imbibition.

- 17 The following figures show the upper view of the heart valves, which of them describes what happens in the heart during the measurement of blood pressure and represented by the lower number ?



- 18 Which of the following substances isn't formed inside the liver ?

- (a) Bile juice.
- (b) Heparin.
- (c) Glycogen.
- (d) Lipase enzyme.

- 19 If the energy produced during the oxidation of a glucose molecule aerobically equals 2880 KJ. What is the expected amount of energy produced from a glucose molecule in a skeletal muscle during the anaerobic respiration ?

- (a) 75 KJ
- (b) 150 KJ
- (c) 300 KJ
- (d) 450 KJ

20 Study the following table :

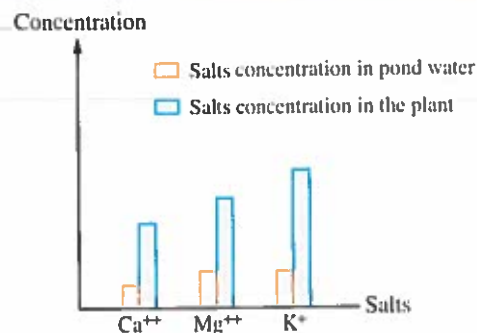
Substance	Concentration in villus	Concentration in transport vessels
$\text{Na}^+$	155 mg / 100 mL	15 mg / 100 mL
Glycine	0.1%	0.02%
$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	75%	70%
$\text{Cl}^-$	1.01 mg / 100 mL	1.5 mg / 100 mL
Fat droplets	0.35%	0.33%

Which of the following substances will be transferred to the transport vessels by the same phenomenon ?

- (a)  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$                       (b)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$   
 (c)  $\text{Cl}^-$  and glycine.                      (d) Glycine and fat droplets.

21 From the opposite graph, by which of the following mechanisms the plant absorbs salts ?

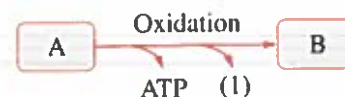
- (a) Diffusion.  
 (b) Permeability.  
 (c) Active transport and permeability.  
 (d) Cation or anion exchange.



Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

22 Write the scientific term : "Non-living plant structures, where the shape of their inner surface changes from a plant to another".

23 From the opposite diagram, if you know that (A) and (B) are intermediate compounds which are formed through one of the cellular respiration stages inside the mitochondria and each one of them consists of the same number of carbon atoms, what is the name of product no. (1) ?





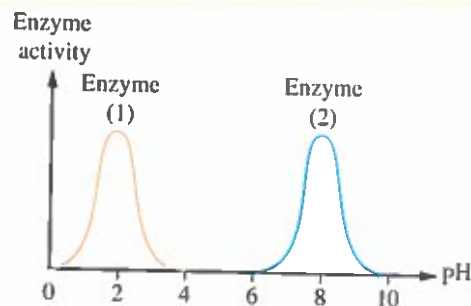


24 **Explain** : glycolysis process needs energy.

25 If you know that the saline solution which is given through a venous injection, its concentration is 0.9%, **deduce** what happens to the red blood corpuscles when the concentration of the saline solution is 1% or 0.5%. **Explain your answer.**

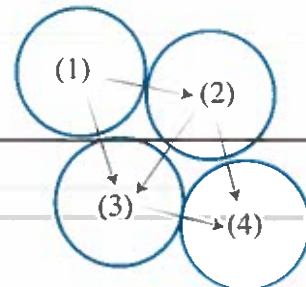
26 "The blood flow factors differ in arteries from veins".  
**How far the statement is correct ? With explanation.**

27 **The opposite graph** illustrates the activity of two enzymes that affect the same food substance, **deduce** the name of the two enzymes (1) and (2).





**1** \* The opposite figure represents the movement of water transfer by osmosis phenomenon among four adjacent plant cells, which of the following cells has the highest concentration of salts before water transferring ?



- a) (1).                      b) (2).
- c) (3).                      d) (4).

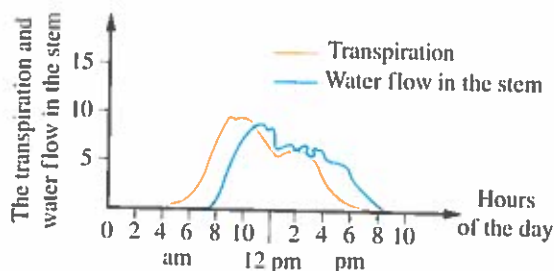
- (a) The conversion of light energy into stored chemical energy in the food molecules.
- (b) The absorption of the light energy that is required to perform the photosynthesis process.
- (c) The storage of the kinetic energy of light as a chemical potential energy.
- (d) The storage of the raw materials that are required to perform the photosynthesis process.

- (a) The increase of lactic acid in the muscle.
- (b) The depletion of oxygen in blood that reaches the muscle.
- (c) The production of a large amount of NADH molecules.
- (d) The muscle fatigue.

- The contraction of left ventricle.
- The relaxation of right atrium.
- The closure of bicuspid valve.
- The closure of semi-lunar valves.

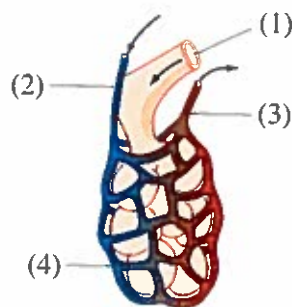
5 \* What do you conclude from your study to the opposite graph ?

- (a) The transpiration rate is constant all the day.
- (b) There is no relation between the water flow in the stem and the transpiration rate.
- (c) The highest flow of water in the stem is delayed than the highest transpiration rate.
- (d) The transpiration rate can't reach zero.



6 From the opposite figure, which of the following structures contains the highest concentration of  $O_2$  gas ?

- (a) (1).
- (b) (2).
- (c) (3).
- (d) (4).



7 Which of the following statements is applied to the digestive juices that are secreted by liver and pancreas ?

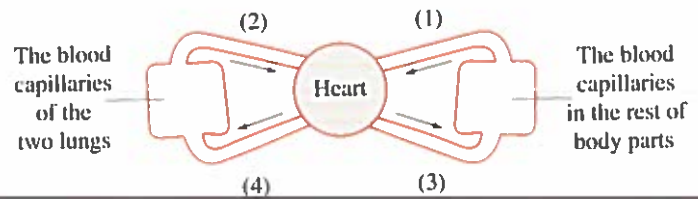
- (a) They digest the same food substances.
- (b) They work at the same pH value.
- (c) Their enzymes need activators to work.
- (d) The same products of digestion are produced by their action.

8 How is the equation of this reaction ( $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 \longrightarrow 6CO_2 + 6H_2O + 38 \text{ ATP}$ ) affected, when the number of coenzymes decreases in mitochondria ?

- (a) The glucose will be formed again.
- (b) Water will not be from the reaction products.
- (c) The rate of ATP molecules production will be affected.
- (d) The number of  $CO_2$  molecules will decrease.

- 9 \* In the following figure, which of the blood vessels carry oxygenated blood ?

- (a) (1) & (2).
- (b) (1) & (3).
- (c) (2) & (3).
- (d) (2) & (4).



- 10 What happens during the passage of the food bolus in the oesophagus ?

- (a) The proteins digestion starts.
- (b) The fats digestion starts.
- (c) The carbohydrates digestion continues.
- (d) The digestion process stops.

- 11 What should be present for the occurrence of the anaerobic cellular respiration ?

- (a)  $O_2$
- (b)  $CO_2$
- (c) Specific enzymes.
- (d) FAD

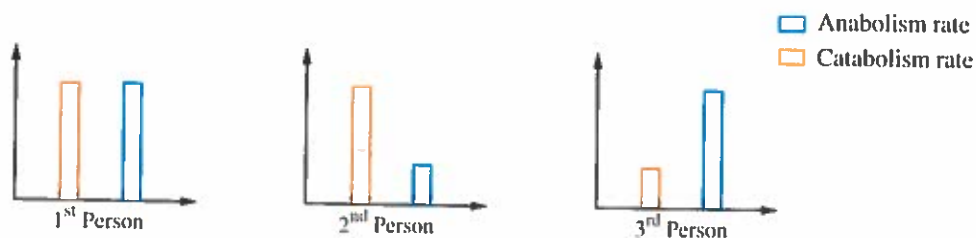
- 12 When will the root pressure stop ?

- (a) When the water comes out from the stem by exudation.
- (b) When the water transfers to root cells by the imbibition phenomenon.
- (c) When it increases more than 2 atmospheric pressure (atm).
- (d) When it becomes equal to the pressure of water column in xylem vessels.

- 13 Which of the following may occur if suberin precipitated on the double membrane of chloroplasts ?

- (a) Difficulty in the light passage.
- (b) Chlorophyll won't be formed.
- (c) High speed of  $O_2$  formation.
- (d) Water passes easily.

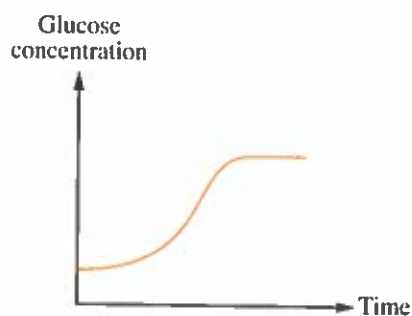
- 14 The following graphs describe the relation between the rate of anabolism and catabolism in 3 people differ in the age-stage :



Which of the following represents the arrangement of the 3 people from the first to the third ?

- (a) Childhood - Youth - Elderhood.   
 (b) Youth - Childhood - Elderhood.   
 (c) Elderhood - Childhood - Youth.   
 (d) Youth - Elderhood - Childhood.
- 15 The living cells keep the internal concentration of ions which differs from the external concentration, what is the reason for continuing the concentration difference ?
- (a) Cells' walls. (b) Cells' vacuoles.   
 (c) Cells' membranes. (d) Plastids.
- 16 Which of the following doesn't happen during the dark reactions ?
- (a) (C) fixation. (b)  $\text{NADPH}_2$  oxidation.   
 (c) Oxidative phosphorylation. (d) ATP consumption.

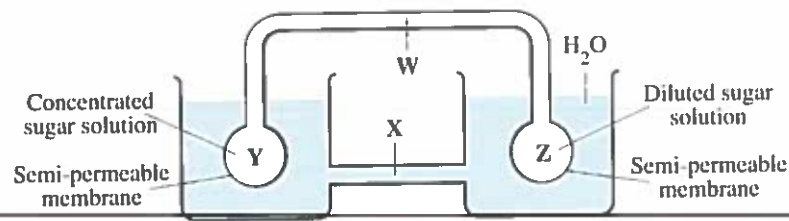
- 17 What is the blood vessel which is represented by the curve in the opposite graph after eating a meal rich in carbohydrates ?



- (a) Pulmonary artery.   
 (b) Hepatic portal vein.   
 (c) Hepatic vein.   
 (d) Hepatic artery.



- 18 \* The following figure shows a model for the transport process of organic substances in the plant :



Which of the following choices describes the structures from (Y) : (Z) and the correct direction for the transport process through structure (W) ?

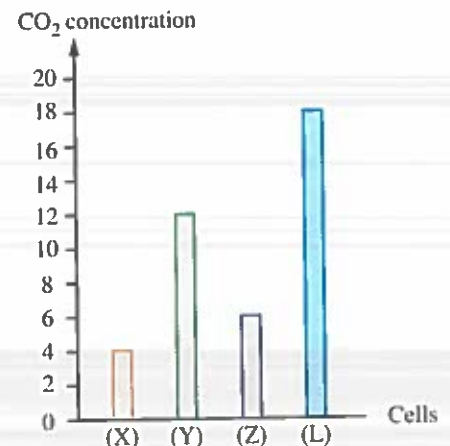
	Phloem	Xylem	Roots	Leaves	Transport direction
(a)	W	X	Y	Z	$Z \rightarrow Y$
(b)	W	X	Z	Y	$Y \rightarrow Z$
(c)	X	W	Y	Z	$Y \rightarrow Z$
(d)	X	W	Z	Y	$Z \rightarrow Y$

- 19 When we put the RBCs in a salt solution of unknown concentration for a period of time, the cells shrink, what do you conclude from this ?

- (a) The concentration of salts in the solution is less than their concentration in the blood cells.
- (b) The concentration of salts in the solution is more than their concentration in the blood cells.
- (c) The concentration of salts in the solution is equal to their concentration in the blood cells.
- (d) There is no relation between the salts concentration, and the cells shrinkage .

- 20 \* The opposite graph represents the amount of released  $\text{CO}_2$  during the aerobic respiration process, in which cell are the three glucose molecules oxidized completely ?

- (a) (X).
- (b) (Y).
- (c) (Z).
- (d) (L).





- 21 Which of the following enter(s) in the structure of ATP molecule made by the plant in addition to carbon, hydrogen and oxygen ?
- (a) A macro-nutrient and a micro-nutrient.
  - (b) Two macro-nutrients.
  - (c) A macro-nutrient.
  - (d) Two micro-nutrients.

**Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :**

- 22 **Explain :** ptyalin enzyme is secreted in an active form, while pepsin enzyme is secreted in an inactive form.

---

---

- 23 **What happens in case of :** the deposition of cutin on the external walls of the root hairs ?

---

- 24 **Calculate :** the number of ATP molecules which is resulted from the oxidation of 10 glucose molecules inside a seed of a dicot plant at the beginning of the germination process.

---

---

- 25 "The speed of the food substances transport in the plant depends on some external factors". **How far the statement is correct ? With explanation.**

---

---

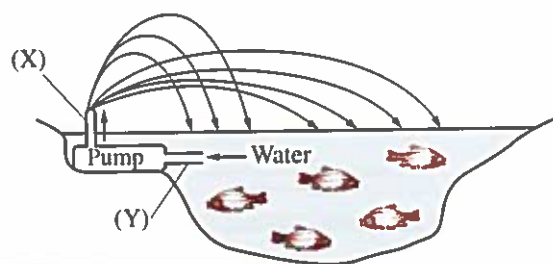
---

---

- 26 The opposite diagram illustrates a conversion in a muscular cell in the body, where the concentration of compound (M) increases during the muscular fatigue, what is the purpose of step no. (2) ?



- 27 In the opposite figure, the lake is supplied with the atmospheric oxygen through an external source to reach the fish, if you know that the work of this pump is similar to the work of the heart in the human blood circulation. What are the blood vessels that are similar to the work of each of (X) and (Y) ?





Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

1 Which of the following elements its absence doesn't affect the photosynthesis process ?

- (a) Iron.
- (b) Phosphorus.
- (c) Magnesium.
- (d) Calcium.

2 What is the similarity between the lymphatic system and the circulatory system ?

- (a) The presence of nodes that work on getting rid of pathogens.
- (b) The presence of a network of arteries.
- (c) The presence of a network of blood capillaries.
- (d) Each of them has an immunization function.

3 Which of the following tissues has the ability to divide mitotically in the plant ?

- (a) Xylem.
- (b) Phloem.
- (c) Palisade tissue.
- (d) Cambium.

4 \* In the opposite diagram, what do the two processes (1) and (2) represent ?



- (a) (1) is hydrolysis and (2) is catabolism.
- (b) (1) is anabolism and (2) is hydrolysis.
- (c) (1) is anabolism and (2) is catabolism.
- (d) (1) is catabolism and (2) is anabolism.

5 What is the importance of water in photosynthesis process ?

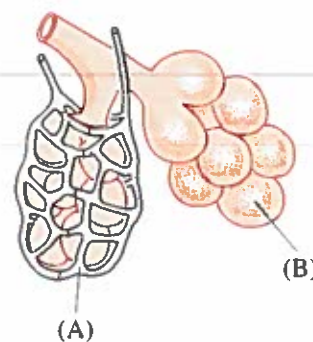
- (a) A solvent for carbon dioxide gas.
- (b) A source for the evolved oxygen.
- (c) A source for hydrogen that is required for the reduction process.
- (d) A receiver for light energy.

6 When  $\text{CO}_2$  is consumed in photosynthesis process, which of the following illustrates the path of  $\text{CO}_2$  diffusion in the leaf after entering through the stomata ?

- (a) Cell wall  $\rightarrow$  Plasma membrane  $\rightarrow$  Intercellular spaces  $\rightarrow$  Cytoplasm  $\rightarrow$  Plastid's membrane.
- (b) Intercellular spaces  $\rightarrow$  Cell wall  $\rightarrow$  Plasma membrane  $\rightarrow$  Cytoplasm  $\rightarrow$  Plastid's membrane.
- (c) Intercellular spaces  $\rightarrow$  Plasma membrane  $\rightarrow$  Cell wall  $\rightarrow$  Plastid's membrane  $\rightarrow$  Cytoplasm.
- (d) Intercellular spaces  $\rightarrow$  Cytoplasm  $\rightarrow$  Plasma membrane  $\rightarrow$  Cell wall  $\rightarrow$  Plastid's membrane.

7 In the opposite figure, structure (B) is surrounded by a network of structures (A) to transfer ..... easily.

- (a)  $\text{O}_2$  from (A) to (B)
- (b)  $\text{CO}_2$  from (B) to (A)
- (c)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  from (B) to (A)
- (d)  $\text{O}_2$  from (B) to (A)



8 \* How far are these statements "the lining of small intestine contains villi and the lining of large intestine contains convolutions", "both play an important role in the absorption process" correct ?

- (a) The two statements are correct.
- (b) The two statements are wrong.
- (c) The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.
- (d) The first statement is wrong and the second statement is correct.

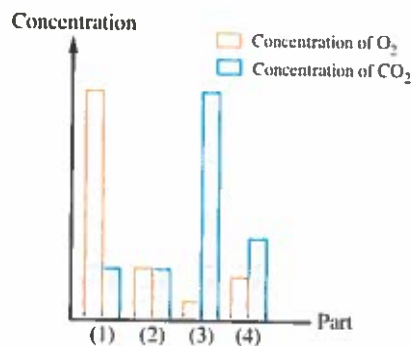
9 \* If the blood pressure value is 110 / 70 mm Hg, which of the following is synchronized with the measurement of number 110 ?

- (a) The relaxation of ventricles.
- (b) The contraction of atria.
- (c) The opening of the valves with flaps.
- (d) The opening of semi-lunar valves.

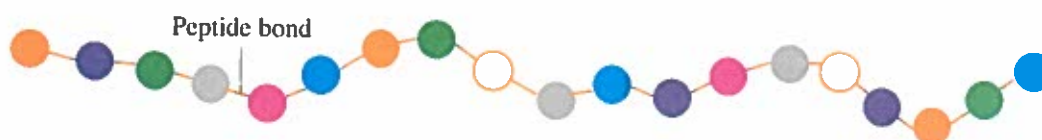


- 10 \* The opposite graph represents the concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{O}_2$  gases in blood in different body parts, which of the following represents the blood flow through aorta ?

(a) (1). (b) (2).  
(c) (3). (d) (4).



- 11 Study the following figure, then determine :



Which of the following ends the digestion of this compound completely ?

(a) Amylase in duodenum. (b) Pepsin in stomach.  
(c) Trypsin in small intestine. (d) Peptidase in small intestine.

- 12 Which of the following substances can't be translocated through the phloem and xylem tissues ?

(a) Amino acids. (b) Sucrose.  
(c) Starch. (d)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$

- 13 What is the similarity between the pulmonary artery and the limbs' veins ?

(a) Both of them contain oxygenated blood.  
(b) Both of them contain deoxygenated blood.  
(c) Both of them have the same blood pressure.  
(d) (b) and (c) together.

- 14 The following table shows the nutrients that are found in a piece of candy, which one of them wouldn't be digested ?

Sample	Nutrient	Amount (g)
(a)	Fats	3
(b)	Glucose	3
(c)	Protein	2
(d)	Starch	6

15 Which of the following phenomena work on transferring the solutes from and to the cell of filamentous-shaped alga ?

- (a) Diffusion and imbibition.
- (b) Diffusion and active transport.
- (c) Imbibition and active transport.
- (d) Diffusion, osmosis and active transport.

16 Which of the following is accompanied by the formation of glucose 6-phosphate ?

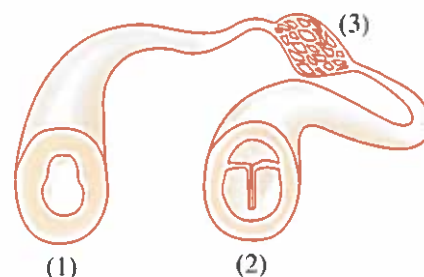
- (a) Energy production.
- (b) Energy consumption.
- (c)  $\text{CO}_2$  production.
- (d)  $\text{O}_2$  consumption.

17 \* What is the result of absence of the pits from xylem vessels in a plant leaf ?

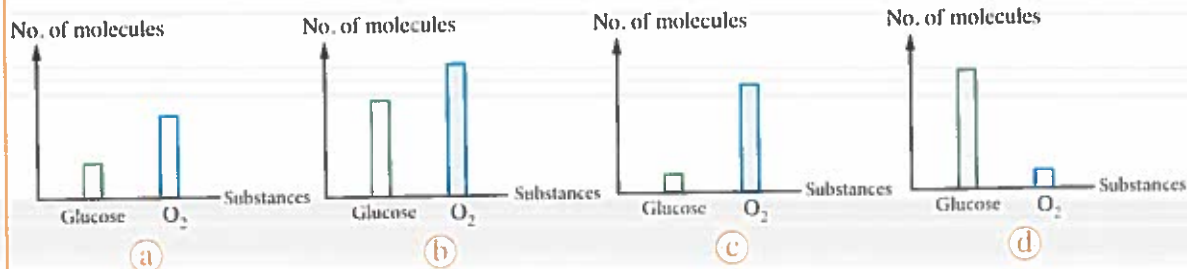
- (a) Increasing in the salts and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  transport to the palisade cells.
- (b) Stopping the light and dark reactions.
- (c) Stopping the transport of sucrose and amino acids.
- (d) Increasing the dark reactions rate.

18 In the opposite figure, what do the blood vessels from (1) : (3) represent respectively ?

- (a) Vein / Artery / Blood capillaries.
- (b) Artery / Blood capillaries / Vein.
- (c) Blood capillaries / Artery / Vein.
- (d) Artery / Vein / Blood capillaries.



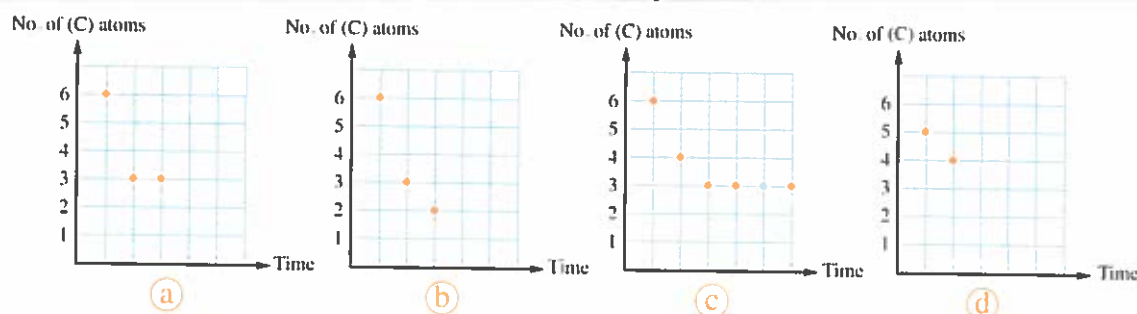
19 \* Which of the following graphs represents the fetus need for glucose and  $\text{O}_2$  to produce energy only ?



20 What is the reason for the decrease in the plant absorption of salts when the soil is soaked with water ?

- (a) Decreasing salts in the soil.
- (b) Lack of  $O_2$  in the soil.
- (c) Increasing  $O_2$  in the soil.
- (d) Increasing in the production of ATP in the root cells.

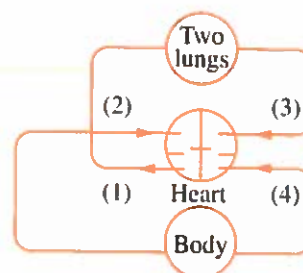
21 \* Which of the following graphs represents the reactions that happen to a glucose molecule in a muscle cell during the anaerobic respiration ?



Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

22 **Explain :** the root hairs are characterized by high osmotic pressures in the salty and desert soils.

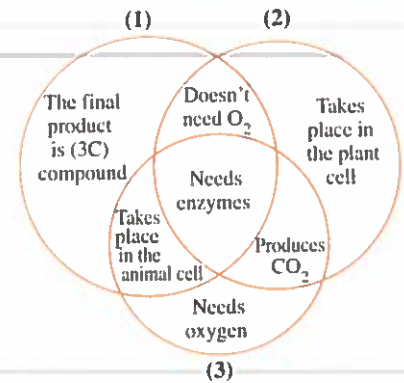
23 **The opposite diagram** represents the blood circulation in human, which contains an arrow with wrong direction. **Determine** its name.



24 **Compare between :** the oxidation process for a piece of sugar in air and its oxidation inside a cell of a living organism's body.

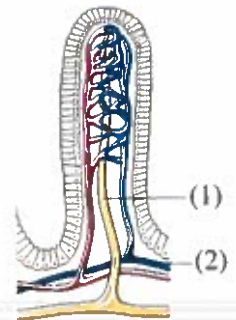
- 25 "The vascular bundle is similar in each of the stem and leaf of the plant".  
How far the statement is correct ? With explanation.

- 26 The opposite figure illustrates some vital processes that occur in the cells of living organisms, examine it, then answer :



- (a) How many ATP molecules are produced from the complete oxidation of one molecule of glucose in process no. (3) ?
- (b) Arrange the processes from (1) : (3) descendingly, according to their energy production.

- 27 From the opposite figure, determine by arrows a simple pathway for the absorbed food substances through the two vessels no. (1) and (2), till reaching the heart.

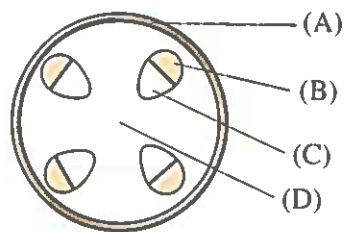




Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

- 1 The opposite figure illustrates a diagrammatic section in the stem of a dicot plant, in which of the following tissues does sugar transfer ?

(a) (A).                      (b) (B).  
(c) (C).                      (d) (D).



- 2 Which of the following is found in blood that is carried by the arterioles inside the lung ?

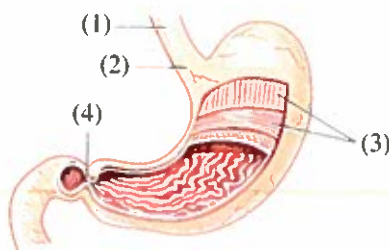
(a) Digested food.  
(b) A higher percentage of  $O_2$  and a lower percentage of  $CO_2$   
(c) A higher percentage of  $CO_2$  and a lower percentage of  $O_2$   
(d) An equal percentage of  $CO_2$  and  $O_2$

- 3 \* What is the number of the removed electrons from one molecule of glucose which contribute by their transfer from a higher energy level to a lower energy level in ATP production through the electron transport chain ?

(a) 12                      (b) 24                      (c) 36                      (d) 38

- 4 Some patients who have digestion complications suffer from the "Gastro-oesophageal reflux" which causes severe inflammation in the oesophagus, in which part in the opposite figure is the disturbance occurred to cause this ?

(a) (1).                      (b) (2).  
(c) (3).                      (d) (4).



- 5 Which of the following valves determine the blood route which contains the highest percentage of oxyhaemoglobin substance ?

(a) Bicuspid valve and tricuspid valve.  
(b) Bicuspid valve and aortic valve.  
(c) Pulmonary valve and aortic valve.  
(d) Bicuspid valve and pulmonary valve.



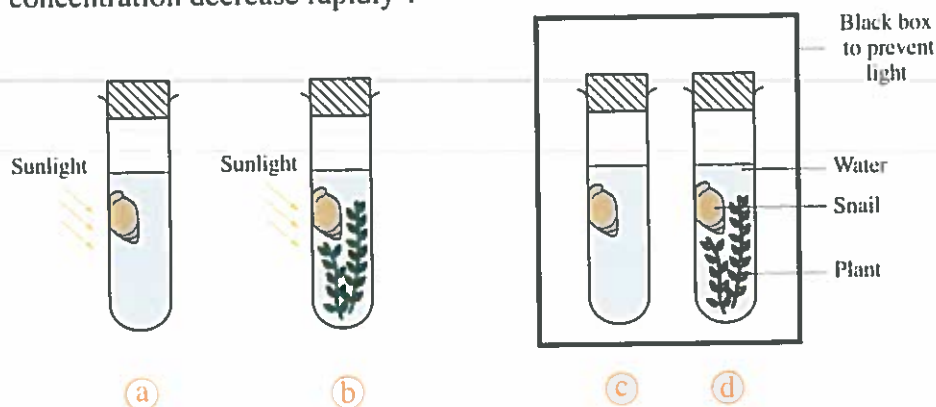
**6** Which of the following gives the highest blood pressure in aorta ?

- (a) Right atrium contraction.
- (b) Left atrium contraction.
- (c) Right ventricle contraction.
- (d) Left ventricle contraction.

**7** Which of the following substances doesn't transfer through the plant transport system ?

- (a)  $H_2O$
- (b) Glucose.
- (c) Cellulose.
- (d)  $Mg^{2+}$

**8** \* You have 4 test tubes as shown in the following figure, in which tube will the  $O_2$  concentration decrease rapidly ?



**9** What is the similarity between the corn plant and *Orobanch* plant ?

- (a) Performing photosynthesis process.
- (b) The fixation of  $CO_2$  gas.
- (c) Converting low-energy compounds into high-energy compounds.
- (d) Converting organic compounds into inorganic compounds.

**10** In which of the following plants do you expect that the osmotic pressure is vanished ?

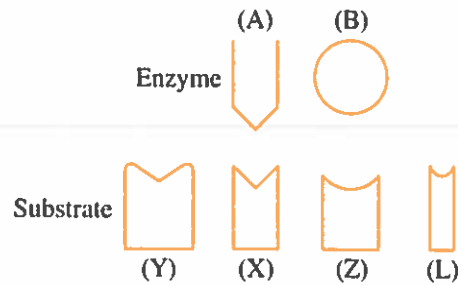
- (a) Cotton.
- (b) Bean.
- (c) Maize.
- (d) *Pinus*.

11 What happens to ketoglutaric acid when it is converted into succinic acid during cellular respiration ?

- (a) It combines with  $O_2$
- (b) It consumes ATP molecules.
- (c) It consumes  $CO_2$
- (d) It loses electrons.

12 Which of the following represent the reactants (substrates) for both enzymes (A) & (B) respectively ?

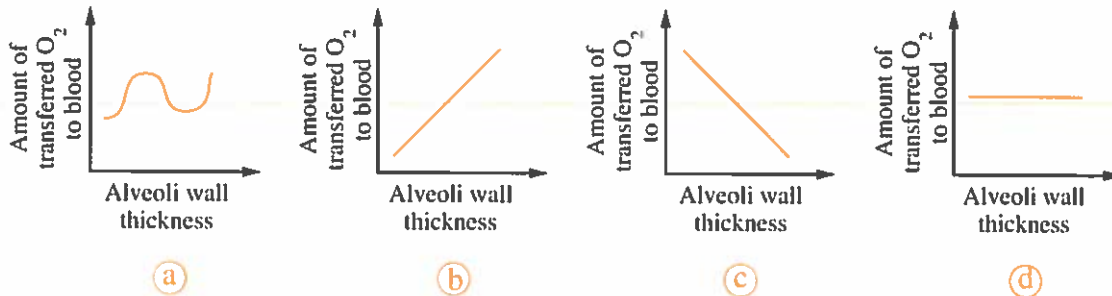
- (a) (Y) & (L).
- (b) (Z) & (L).
- (c) (Y) & (X).
- (d) (X) & (Z).



13 Which of the following **doesn't** agree with glycolysis reactions and the reactions which occur in the chloroplast stroma ?

- (a) Each of them doesn't occur in one step only.
- (b) PGAL compound is formed in both of them.
- (c) Both of them need energy.
- (d) Each of them produces  $CO_2$

14 Which of the following graphs expresses the efficiency of air sacs (alveoli) in the two lungs ?



15 Which of the following occurs when placing a plant cell in a salt solution whose temperature is  $90^\circ C$  ?

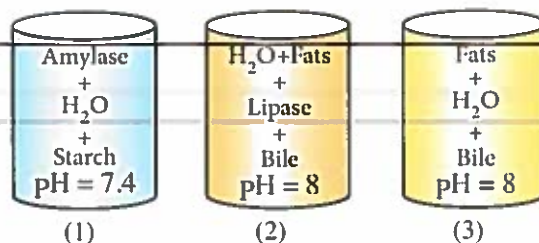
- (a) Water and salts absorption completely stops.
- (b) Salts absorption completely stops and water absorption continues.
- (c) Water and salts absorption partially stops.
- (d) Water absorption only stops.

**16** What is the result of the presence of a layer of cambium in the stem of a dicot plant ?

- (a) An increase in the transport rate.
- (b) The widening of the secondary xylem cavities.
- (c) A decrease in the stem support.
- (d) An increase in the length of phloem tubes.

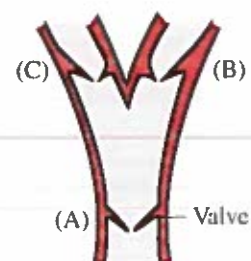
**17** In the opposite figures, in which tube does the complete digestion occur when it is placed in a water bath (37°C) ?

- (a) (1) & (3).
- (b) (3) only.
- (c) (1) & (2).
- (d) (2) only.



**18** The opposite figure shows the connection between two veins together, which of the following shows the direction of venous blood ?

- (a) (C) → (A) and (A) → (B).
- (b) (B) → (C) and (A) → (C).
- (c) (A) → (C) and (A) → (B).
- (d) (C) → (A) and (B) → (A).



**19** Which of the following tissues is responsible for aeration in the plant leaves ?

- (a) Palisade tissue.
- (b) Spongy tissue.
- (c) Collenchyma tissue.
- (d) Vascular tissue.

**20** What is the number of the resulted ATP molecules directly from Krebs cycle during the oxidation of a maltose molecule ?

- (a) 1
- (b) 2
- (c) 4
- (d) 8

**21** Human body contains a group of fluids that differ in their structure, which of the following expresses the components of blood plasma ?

	Water	Urea	Antibodies	WBCs
(a)	✓	✓	✓	×
(b)	✓	✓	×	×
(c)	✓	✓	✓	✓
(d)	×	×	✓	✓

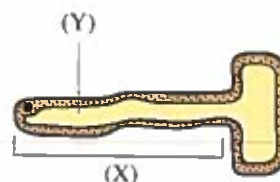
✓: Present  
 ×: Absent

Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

**22 Explain :** lymph plays an indirect role in blood clotting.

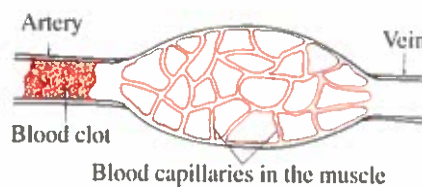
**23 In the opposite figure :**

What happens in case of : the absence of part (Y) from structure (X) ?



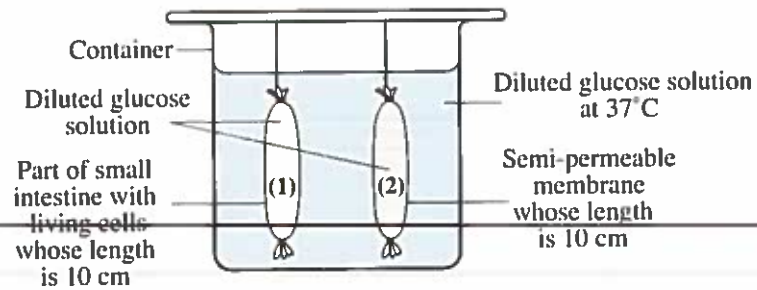
**24 What is the relation between :** the conversions of ATP into ADP and the compounds formed during glycolysis ?

**25 The opposite figure** illustrates the formation of a blood clot inside an artery of a certain muscle. Mention the name of the harmful substance that accumulates in the tissues of the muscle. Explain your answer.



**26** PGAL is formed during two important processes that you have studied, **determine the role of this compound in each of the two processes.**

27 From the following figure :



**Deduce** which of the two structures no. (1) or (2) contains a lower percentage of glucose concentration after two hours. **Explain your answer.**

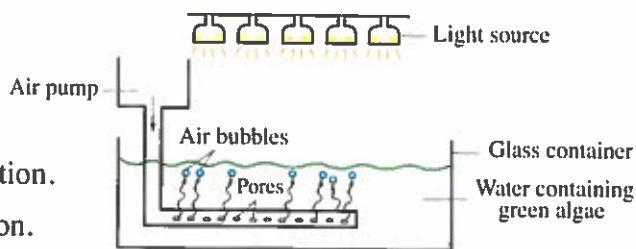




Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

- 1 In the opposite figure, what is the gas that is supplied to green algae from the air pump ?

- (a)  $\text{CO}_2$  that is required for their respiration.
- (b)  $\text{O}_2$  that is required for their respiration.
- (c)  $\text{CO}_2$  that is required to perform photosynthesis process.
- (d)  $\text{O}_2$  that is required to perform photosynthesis process.



- 2 \* What do you expect when examining a complete blood count for a woman suffering from general weakness, high rate of heartbeats and high respiration rate ?

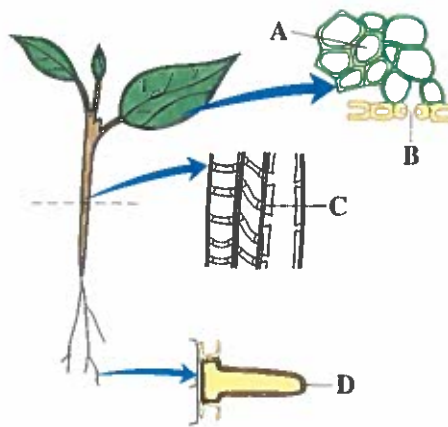
- (a) An increase in the number of red blood corpuscles.
- (b) An increase in the number of white blood corpuscles.
- (c) A decrease in the number of red blood corpuscles.
- (d) A decrease in the number of white blood corpuscles.

- 3 \* Which of the following that the amount of energy released from a fatty acid doesn't depend on it after completing Krebs cycle ?

- (a) The number of acetyl groups that are resulted from its breaking down.
- (b) The number of carbon atoms which enter in its composition.
- (c) The accomplishment of electron transport chain.
- (d) The number of coenzymes (A).

- 4 Which of the following arrows doesn't direct the pathway of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  molecules in the opposite figure ?

- (a)  $\text{D} \rightarrow$
- (b)  $\text{C} \downarrow$
- (c)  $\leftarrow \text{A} \rightarrow$
- (d)  $\text{B} \downarrow$



**5** Which of the following reactions require the presence of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas ?

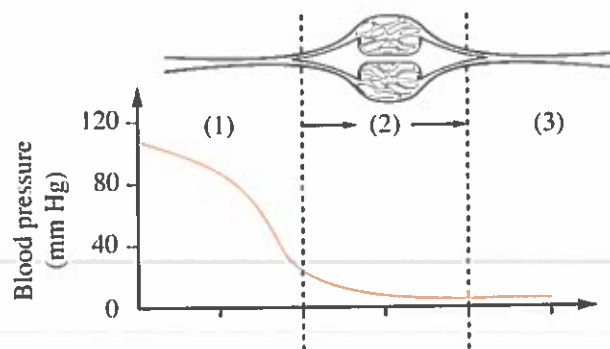
- (a) Light reactions only.
- (b) Dark reactions only.
- (c) Light and dark reactions.
- (d) Glycolysis reactions.

**6** When staining a transverse section of a dicot plant stem with iodine solution, which of the following is/are expected to appear with a dark blue colour ?

- (a) Xylem vessels.
- (b) Companion cells.
- (c) Cambium.
- (d) The innermost row of cortex.

**7** \* The opposite figure illustrates the blood flow in the blood vessels, what does part no. (3) represent ?

- (a) Artery.
- (b) Vein.
- (c) Blood capillaries.
- (d) Lymphatic vessel.



**8** What is the ratio between the number of  $\text{FADH}_2$  molecules to that of  $\text{NADH}$  molecules that are resulted from the complete oxidation of a molecule of glucose in aerobic conditions ?

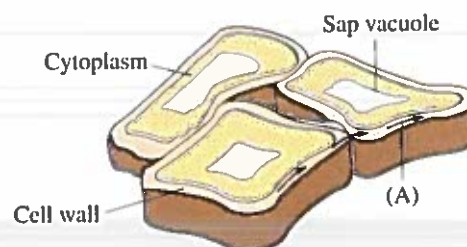
- (a) 1 : 5
- (b) 3 : 1
- (c) 5 : 1
- (d) 1 : 3

**9** Gallbladder was removed from a person, which of the following is expected to occur ?

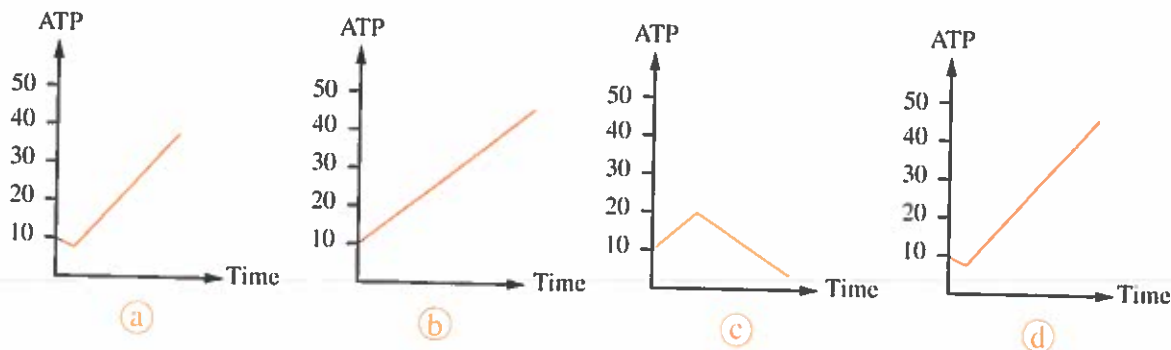
- (a) He can't eat carbohydrates.
- (b) He can eat fats in small amounts.
- (c) He can take drinks only.
- (d) He can't eat more than one big meal daily.

**10** From the opposite figure, what is the phenomenon by which substance (A) transfers ?

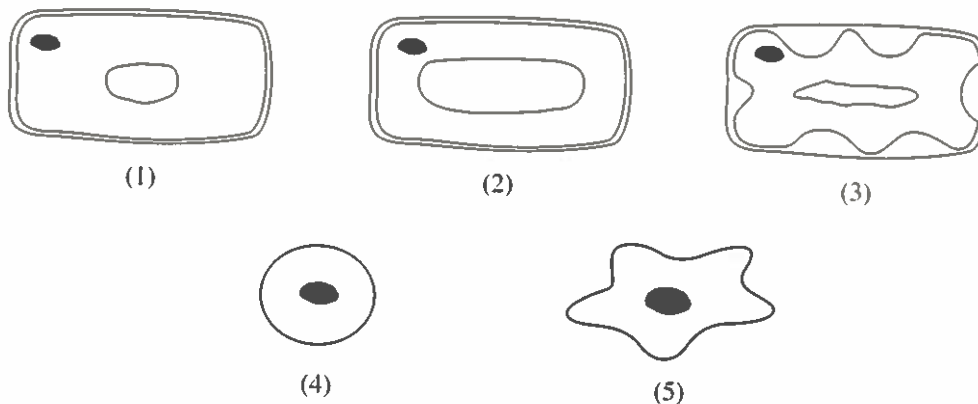
- (a) Osmosis.
- (b) Imbibition.
- (c) Diffusion.
- (d) Active transport.



- 11 \* If we supposed that the cell storage for energy is 10 ATP molecules, which of the following graphs represents the number of ATP molecules after the aerobic oxidation for one glucose molecule with time ?



- 12 The following figures show some plant and animal cells after placing them in two sucrose solutions that have different concentrations (knowing that their osmotic pressure = 0.5 % of the sucrose solution) :



Which of the previous cells were placed in these two solutions ?

	Sugar solution (1%)	Sugar solution (0.1%)
(a)	Cell (1) & Cell (2)	Cell (3) & Cell (5)
(b)	Cell (1) & Cell (4)	Cell (3)
(c)	Cell (2) & Cell (4)	Cell (1) & Cell (3)
(d)	Cell (3) & Cell (5)	Cell (2) & Cell (4)

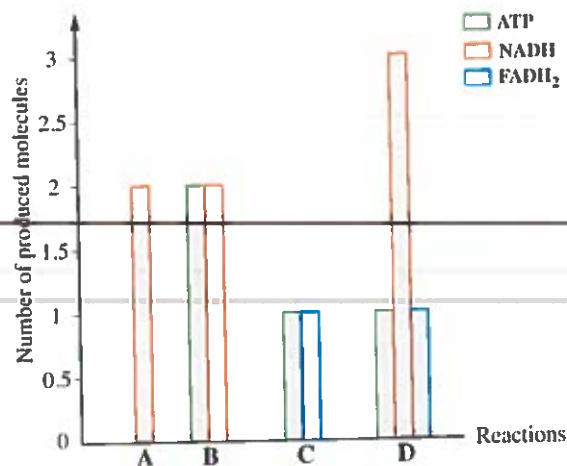
- 13 What is the amount of protein that is found in each 100 cm<sup>3</sup> of plasma in a normal person ?

(a) 5 g      (b) 3 g      (c) 7 g      (d) 9 g

- 14 \* Study the following graph which shows some products of aerobic cellular respiration reactions :

Which reaction occurs in the cytoplasm of the cell ?

- (a) (A).
- (b) (B).
- (c) (C).
- (d) (D).



- 15 Which type of food can be digested in both acidic and alkaline media ?

- (a) Rice.
- (b) Potato.
- (c) Fat.
- (d) Meat.

- 16 Which of the following blood vessels contains the highest amount of glucose in human body after eating a balanced meal ?

- (a) Inferior vena cava.
- (b) Hepatic portal vein.
- (c) Pulmonary artery.
- (d) Hepatic vein.

- 17 What is the similarity between the green plants and purple-sulphur bacteria ?

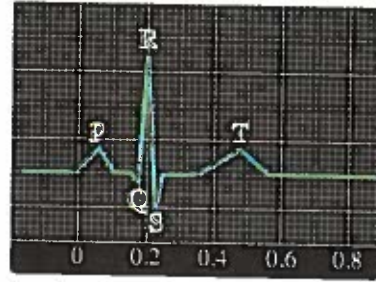
- (a) The type of chlorophyll in both of them.
- (b) The source of hydrogen required for CO<sub>2</sub> fixation in both of them.
- (c) The dark reactions in both of them.
- (d) The secondary products of photosynthesis process in both of them.

- 18 What are the types of food needed by a person who practices bodybuilding ?

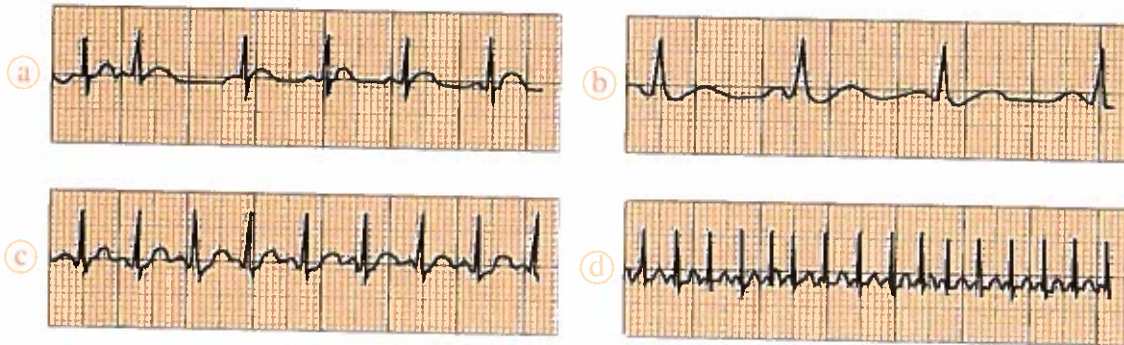
- (a) Juices & vegetables.
- (b) Rice & juices.
- (c) Meat & juices.
- (d) Rice & vegetables.

19 The following figure represents a part of the normal electrocardiogram for the human heart, if you know that :

- Part (P) represents contraction of atria to pump the blood to ventricles.
- Part (QRS) refers to the contraction of ventricles to pump the blood outside the heart.
- Part (T) expresses the secondary contraction of ventricles to pump blood residues outside the heart.



Which of the following diagrams represents the slow heartbeats rate ?



20 Normal plants are cultivated in desert and small number of them adapted well with this environment, which of the following factors its increase leads to the well adaptation of these plants ?

- a The tallness of vegetative parts of the plant.
- b The concentration of cell sap of root cells.
- c The shortness of the root.
- d The small volume of sap vacuoles of the root.

21 In which of the following cases is the highest value of blood pressure ?

- a Relaxation of left ventricle.
- b Contraction of right ventricle.
- c Opening of mitral valve.
- d Opening of aortic valve.



Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

- 22 Most of water that is absorbed by the plant evaporates.

Deduce what is the benefit from the small amount of water that the plant keeps.

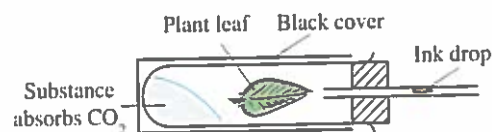
- 23 **Explain** : proteins that are produced by the plant cells to perform the required vital processes can't penetrate through their plasma membranes.

- 24 There is a reaction that links between glycolysis and Krebs cycle during the cellular respiration, **illustrate the products of this reaction.**

- 25 **What is the difference between** : the blood capillaries that are present in villi and that are present in the alveoli ?

- 26 **From the opposite figure** :

- (a) **Determine** the direction of the ink drop movement in the tube.



- (b) **Explain** why the substance that absorbs CO<sub>2</sub> is added.

- 27 "Stomach has an important role in protecting the human body".

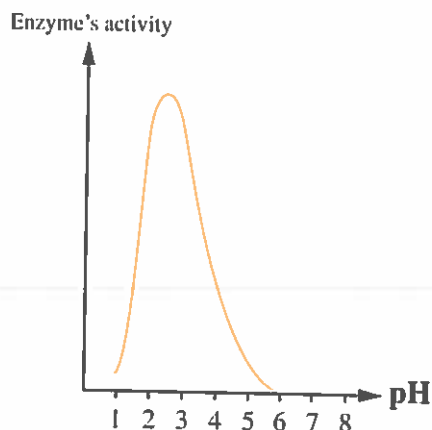
**How far the statement is correct ? With explanation.**



Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

- 1 The opposite graph shows the effect of pH on the rate of a digestive enzyme activity, where is the enzyme found ?

(a) In bile.  
(b) In gastric juice.  
(c) In intestinal juice.  
(d) In pancreatic juice.



- 2 Which of the following produces the lowest number of ATP molecules ?

(a)  $\text{FADH}_2$  molecule in the electron transport chain.  
(b) The acidic fermentation.  
(c) The alcoholic fermentation.  
(d) One Krebs cycle.

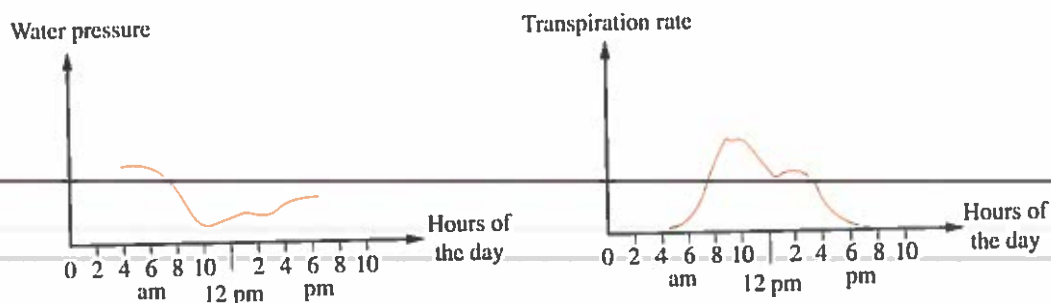
- 3 \* If the stored energy is not released from the coenzymes during the electron transport chain, what is the number of ATP molecules which are resulted from the oxidation of one molecule of glucose aerobically ?

(a) 3 molecules.  
(b) 4 molecules.  
(c) 8 molecules.  
(d) 16 molecules.

- 4 \* A blood sample was taken from a blood vessel in the patient body, on examining its external appearance, it was found that its colour is light red. What is the expected place for this sample to be taken from ?

(a) A blood vessel near to the skin surface.  
(b) A blood vessel buried among muscles.  
(c) Blood capillaries near to the skin surface.  
(d) Blood capillaries buried among muscles.

- 5 The two following graphs illustrate the rate of the transpiration process and the water pressure in the plant leaf cells within the day hours :



What do you conclude from your study to the previous graphs ?

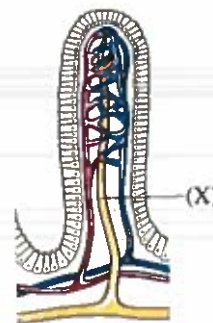
- (a) The water pressure decreases inside the leaf cells with increasing the transpiration process.
- (b) The water pressure increases inside the leaf cells with increasing the transpiration rate.
- (c) The stomata of the leaf closes at 10 am.
- (d) The stomata of the leaf opens at 4 am.

- 6 What is the process that occurred in the chloroplast and is opposite to the process of the photosynthetic phosphorylation ?

- (a) The production of ATP from ADP in the grana.
- (b) The production of ADP from ATP in the grana.
- (c) The production of ATP from ADP in the stroma.
- (d) The production of ADP from ATP in the stroma.

- 7 Which of the following that the decrease in its production rate leads to a decrease in the food substances that are transferred to structure (X) ?

- (a) Bile juice.
- (b) Pepsin.
- (c) Amylase.
- (d) Sucrase.



8 In each of the alcoholic fermentation and the acidic fermentation, 2 molecules of ATP are released. So, what is the expected number of the resulted kilocalories from the hydrolysis of the released ATP molecules ?

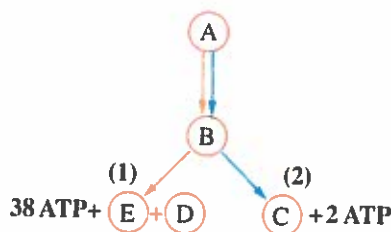
- (a) From the alcoholic fermentation is greater than that from the acidic fermentation.
- (b) From the alcoholic fermentation is lower than that from the acidic fermentation.
- (c) It is equal in the two types of fermentation.
- (d) From each of them is greater than that from the aerobic respiration.

9 Which of the following statements doesn't illustrate the transport process of water in the plant ?

- (a) Most of the released water from the leaf gets out through the stomata.
- (b) The cohesion between the molecules of water causes the presence of a continuous column of water.
- (c) The resulted effect from the transpiration process causes the presence of the continuous attraction of water column upward.
- (d) The adhesion force between molecules of water and xylem vessels causes the column of water to be held continuously.

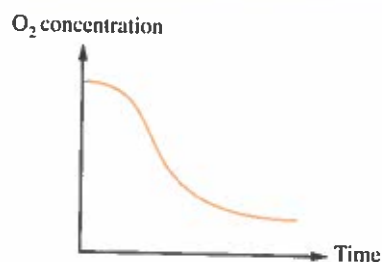
10 In the opposite diagram, what is the common factor between the two processes (1) and (2) ?

- (a) The need for  $O_2$
- (b) The need for  $CO_2$
- (c) The need for energy.
- (d) The need for FAD presence.



11 \* What is the blood vessel expressed in the opposite graph ?

- (a) Pulmonary artery.
- (b) Renal artery.
- (c) Vena cava.
- (d) Hepatic vein.



12 During preparation of a T.S. of a new dicot plant stem, iodine was added to the stem sample to enhance the examination, which tissue do you expect its cells won't be stained with the dark blue colour ?

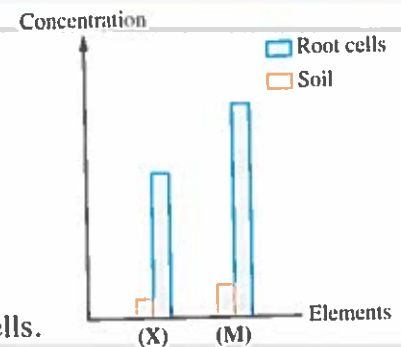
- (a) Cambium.
- (b) Cortex.
- (c) Medullary rays.
- (d) Pith.

13 \* Which of the following represents the mechanism of absorbing the products of starch digestion ?

- (a) Diffusion to the arterioles (arterial capillaries).
- (b) Active transport to the lacteal vessel.
- (c) Diffusion to the lacteal vessel.
- (d) Active transport to the venules (venous capillaries).

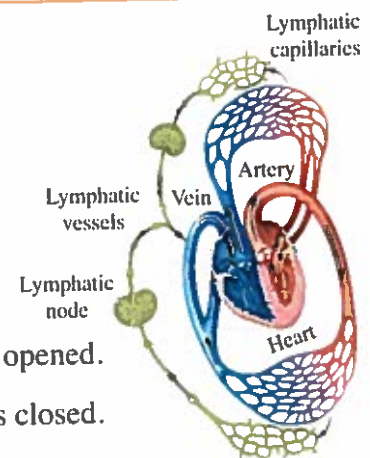
14 Study the opposite graph which shows the plant need for (X) and (M) elements to perform vital processes, what is the factor that helps in increasing the concentration of (X) and (M) inside the root cells ?

- (a) Plenty of water inside sap vacuoles of the root cells.
- (b) The decrease of sugar inside sap vacuoles of the root cells.
- (c) The decrease of  $O_2$  inside the root cells.
- (d) Plenty of  $O_2$  inside the root cells.



15 The opposite figure shows the relation between the lymphatic system and the circulatory system, what do you deduce from this figure ?

- (a) Both of them are closed systems.
- (b) Both of them are opened systems.
- (c) Circulatory system is closed, while lymphatic system is opened.
- (d) Circulatory system is opened, while lymphatic system is closed.



16 When eating a meal contains bread, rice and potatoes, what is/are the enzyme(s) that will digest all these food substances ?

- (a) Amylase and maltase.
- (b) Lipase and maltase.
- (c) Amylase and lipase.
- (d) Lipase and peptidase.

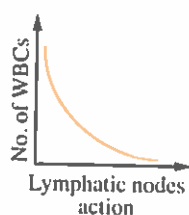


17 Leaf (B) produces  $C_6H_{12}O_6$  ..... leaf (A).

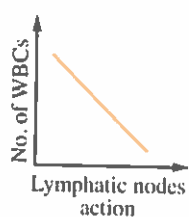
- (a) more than
- (b) less than
- (c) equal to
- (d) twice



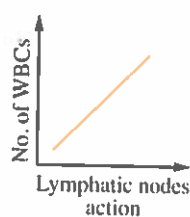
18 Which of the following graphs represents the immunity performance for a person body in the first days of a bacterial infection ?



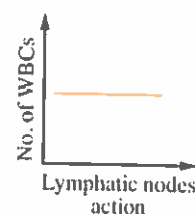
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

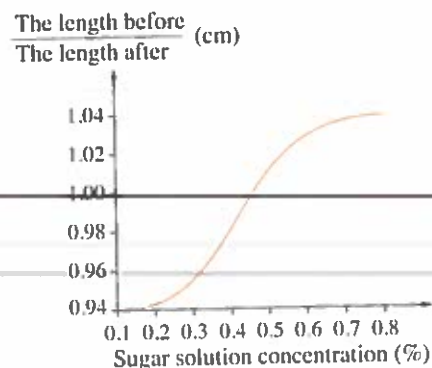
19 \* In your opinion, why does NADH give 3 ATP molecules, while  $FADH_2$  gives 2 ATP molecules only ?

- (a) NADH molecules give their electrons to the cytochrome at higher energy levels.
- (b)  $FADH_2$  molecules give their electrons to the cytochrome at higher energy levels.
- (c) NADH molecules don't give all their electrons to the cytochromes.
- (d)  $FADH_2$  molecules don't give all their electrons to the cytochromes.

20 Which of the following are permeable to water ?

- (a) Cellulose walls.
- (b) Walls covered by lignin.
- (c) Walls covered by cutin and suberin.
- (d) Plasma membranes and cellulose walls.

- 21** Several sections of castor plant having the same length were put in a serial concentrations of sucrose sugar, their length was measured before and after treating, the following graph shows the ratio between the length before and the length after with the sugar solution concentration, which of the following concentrations for sucrose solution has the same concentration of cell sap of the plant before soaking in the sugar solution ?



- (a) 0.1%
- (b) 0.25%
- (c) 0.45%
- (d) 0.8%

**Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :**

- 22 Give reason for :** the heartbeats of boxing champions reach about 180 beats/minute at the top of the competition.

---



---



---

- 23 What happens in case of :** the exposure of the plant to an infection with a microbe and it reaches the xylem vessels (according to the transport process) ?

---



---

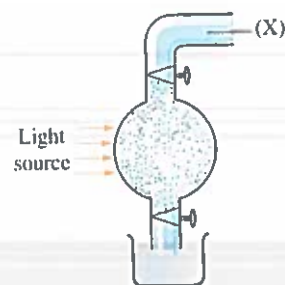


---



---

- 24 The opposite figure illustrates the experiment of Calvin, what do you expect to happen if the system is supplied with element (X) intermittently ?**




---



---



---

- 25 "The respiration rates may increase in the root hair during the absorption of the mineral salts". **How far the statement is correct ? With explanation.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

- 26 The doctor may recommend a medicine for the patient, that is taken through venous injection not by mouth. **Suggest two reasons for that.**

---

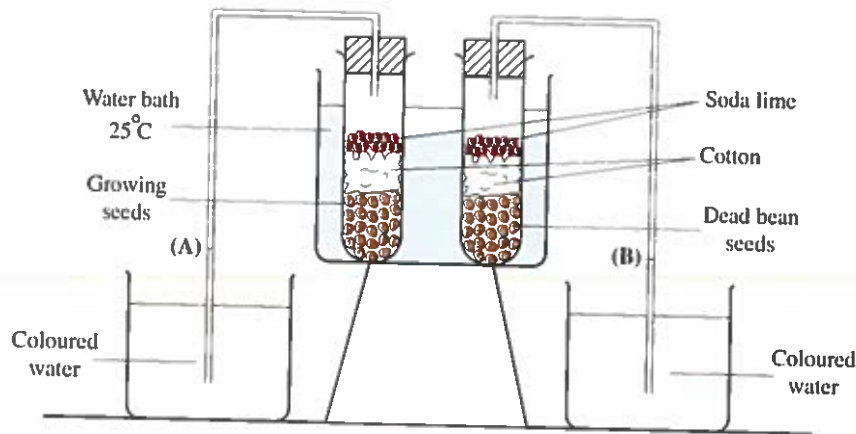
---

---

---

---

- 27 From the following figure :



**Deduce what happens in each level of (A) and (B) after passing a period of time. Explain your answer.**

---

---

---

---

---



Choose the correct answer (1 : 21) :

- 1 In which of the following parts of the human digestive system does the process that is illustrated in the opposite figure occur ?

Protein

X

Y

Z

L

- (a) Stomach and small intestine. (b) Mouth and stomach.  
(c) Oesophagus and small intestine. (d) Mouth, stomach and duodenum.

- 2 Which of the following produces the highest amount of energy ?

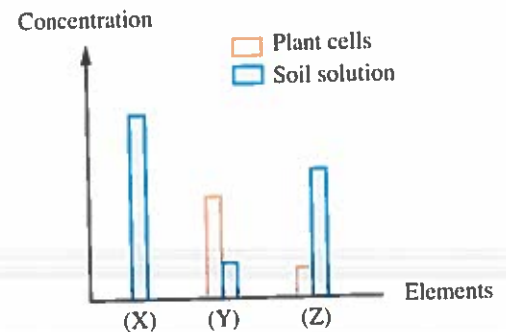
- (a) The oxidation of phosphoglyceraldehyde aerobically.  
(b) The oxidation of malic acid to oxaloacetic acid.  
(c) The acidic fermentation of pyruvic acid.  
(d) The alcoholic fermentation of pyruvic acid.

- 3 Which of the following can be used as a drug to prevent the formation of blood clots for some patients ?

- (a) Fibrin. (b) Fibrinogen. (c) Heparin. (d) Thrombin.

- 4 \* The opposite graph illustrates the concentration of elements (X), (Y) & (Z) in the cells of a plant and in the soil solution, which of the following element(s) do the rates of respiration during its(their) absorption increase ?

- (a) (X). (b) (Y).  
(c) (Z). (d) (X) and (Z).



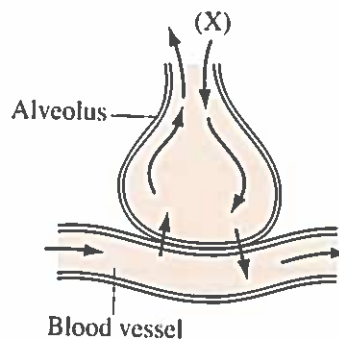
- 5 Which of the following tissues is not present in the leaf of cotton plant ?

- (a) Mesophyll tissue. (b) Xylem.  
(c) Phloem. (d) Cambium.



6 In the opposite figure, which of the following factors works on increasing the penetration rate of gas (X) from the alveolus to the blood vessel ?

- (a) Increasing the thickness of the alveolus wall.
- (b) Increasing the surface area of the alveoli.
- (c) Decreasing the concentration of gas (X) in the alveoli.
- (d) Decreasing the respiration rate.

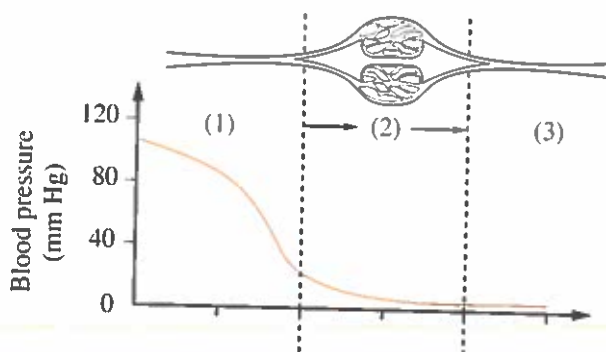


7 Which of the following valves direct the blood route which contains the highest percentage of carbo-aminohaemoglobin substance ?

- (a) Mitral valve and tricuspid valve.
- (b) Mitral valve and aortic valve.
- (c) Pulmonary valve and aortic valve.
- (d) Tricuspid valve and pulmonary valve.

8 \* The opposite figure illustrates the blood flow in the blood vessels, what does part no. (1) represent ?

- (a) Artery.
- (b) Vein.
- (c) Blood capillaries.
- (d) Lymphatic vessel.



9 Which of the following statements agrees with Krebs cycle ?

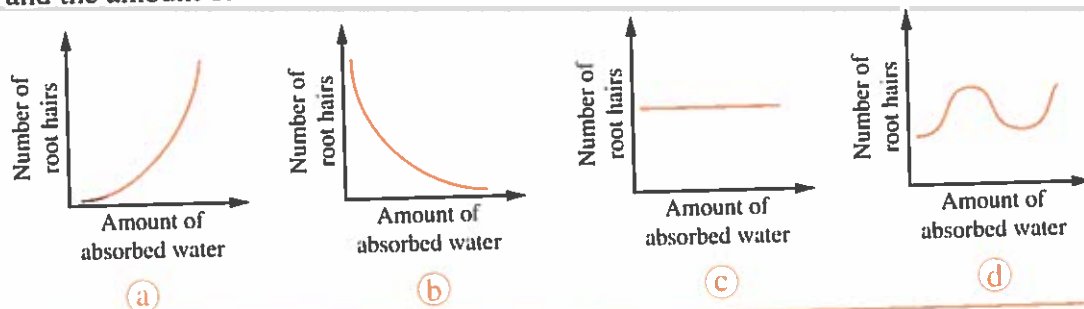
- (a) It is always related to glycolysis process to form pyruvic acid.
- (b) It occurs inside the mitochondria.
- (c) The biggest direct source to produce ATP molecules in the cell.
- (d) Pyruvic acid is an intermediate compound in it.



10 What is the phenomenon by which the gas exchange process between the air present inside the alveolus and the blood in the two lungs takes place ?

- (a) Osmosis.
- (b) Diffusion.
- (c) Active transport.
- (d) Imbibition.

11 Which of the following graphs represents the relation between the number of root hairs and the amount of absorbed water ?



12 \* Which of the following blood components can the body make benefit from them through their different stages ?

- (a) Platelets.
- (b) WBCs
- (c) Plasma proteins.
- (d) RBCs

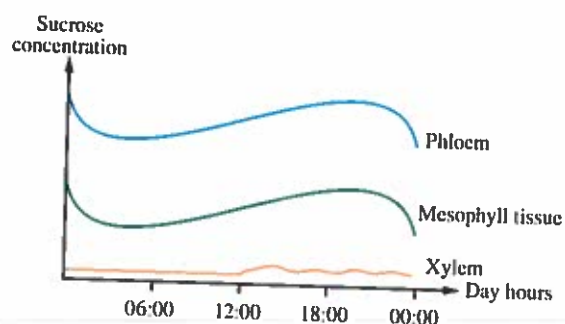
13 What is the process that occurs to NADH when pyruvic acid is converted into lactic acid ?

- (a) Reduction.
- (b) Oxidation.
- (c) Splitting.
- (d) Decomposition.

14 Which of the following digestive organs may have dysfunction in a person. So, the doctors advised him not to eat more food rich in fats ?

- (a) Pancreas.
- (b) Small intestine.
- (c) Oesophagus.
- (d) Stomach.

- 15 \* The following graph shows the results of measuring sucrose concentration in three different tissues in the leaf of a dicot plant during 24 hours :



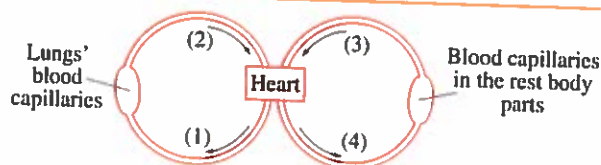
Which of the following can be concluded from that graph ?

- (a) Water moves by osmosis from xylem tissue to phloem tissue.
  - (b) Sucrose moves by active transport from the mesophyll tissue of the leaves then to the phloem.
  - (c) Sucrose moves in both directions in the phloem.
  - (d) Xylem tissue uses sucrose sugar as a source of energy.
- 16 What is the similarity between the chloroplasts and mitochondria ?
- (a) The presence of DNA molecules.
  - (b) The presence of  $\text{NAD}^+$  molecules.
  - (c) The production of sugar molecules.
  - (d) Glycolysis (splitting of glucose molecules).

- 17 "Babies' milk contains lactose sugar", how can the baby make benefit from this sugar ?

- (a) Lactose is a delayed source for the energy production.
- (b) Lactose transfers through cell membranes to be absorbed fastly.
- (c) Lactose contains higher stored energy than milk protein.
- (d) The breaking down of chemical bonds among lactose molecules results in monosaccharides with high rate.

- 18 \* In the opposite figure, which of the following blood vessels carry blood at high pressures ?

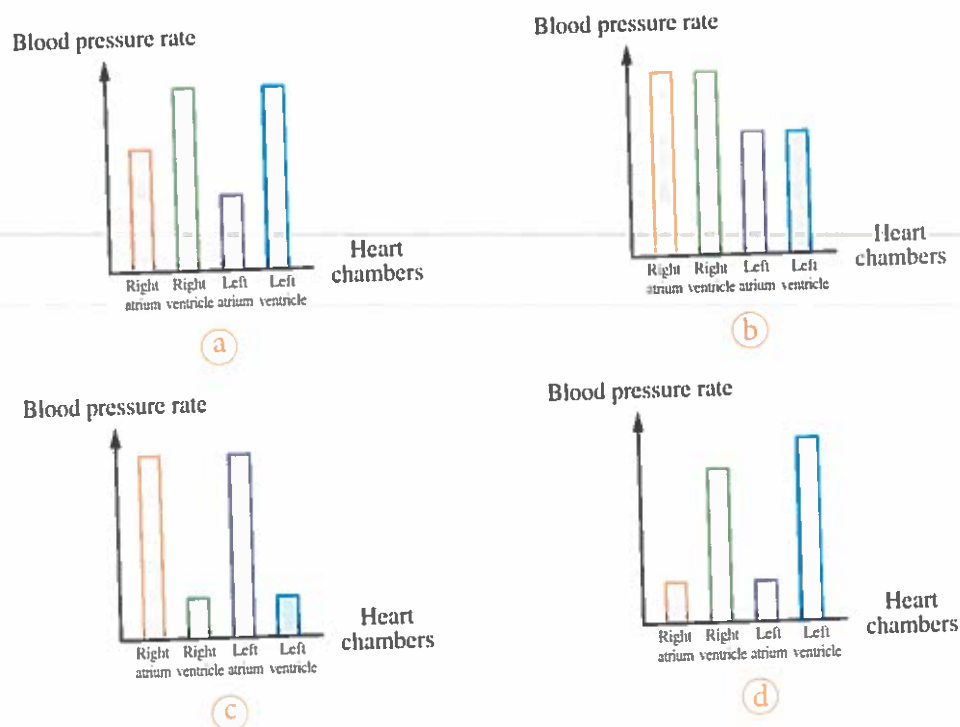


- (a) (1) & (2).
- (b) (1) & (4).
- (c) (2) & (3).
- (d) (2) & (4).

19 What is the result of narrowing the xylem tubes diameter in plant stem ?

- (a) The inability of water transfer through xylem tubes.
- (b) Water and salts transfer by capillarity phenomenon.
- (c) Water and salts transfer by capillarity phenomenon and adhesion.
- (d) The lignin precipitation inside xylem tubes' cavity.

20 Which of the following graphs expresses the strength of chambers muscles contraction in the human heart ?



21 Which of the following uses the sunlight directly ?

- (a) Production of ATP molecules.
- (b) Movement of chlorophyll molecule electrons.
- (c) Water molecules splitting.
- (d)  $\text{NADPH}_2$  molecules formation.



Answer the following questions (22 : 27) :

- 22 **Explain** : the presence of root hairs in the bean plant, despite their continuous penetration in the soil.

---

---

- 23 **What** is the least number of each molecule of NADH and  $\text{FADH}_2$  at which the number of ATP molecules resulted from them is equal ?

---

- 24 **Write what this statement indicates** : "An organ in the body through which oxygenated and deoxygenated blood enter inside it and the deoxygenated blood comes out from it".

---

- 25 "Superior vena cava carries the completely digested substances".

**How far the statement is correct ? With explanation.**

---

---

- 26 The radioactive carbon has an important role in proving some vital processes inside the plant. **Give two different examples.**

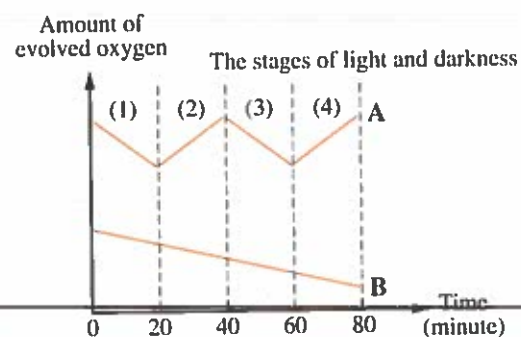
---

---

---

---

- 27 An aquatic plant was put in a medium containing water  $\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$  and mineral salts, where water contains dissolved oxygen ( $^{16}\text{O}_2$ ) and also a source of carbon dioxide ( $\text{C}^{16}\text{O}_2$ ), then the plant exposed to light and darkness in a successive manner.



From the opposite graph :

(a) Which of the stages from (1) : (4) represents the darkness ?

(b) Which curve represents oxygen ( $^{16}\text{O}$ ) ?





EL-MORASSER

# BIOLOGY

By A Group Of Supervisors

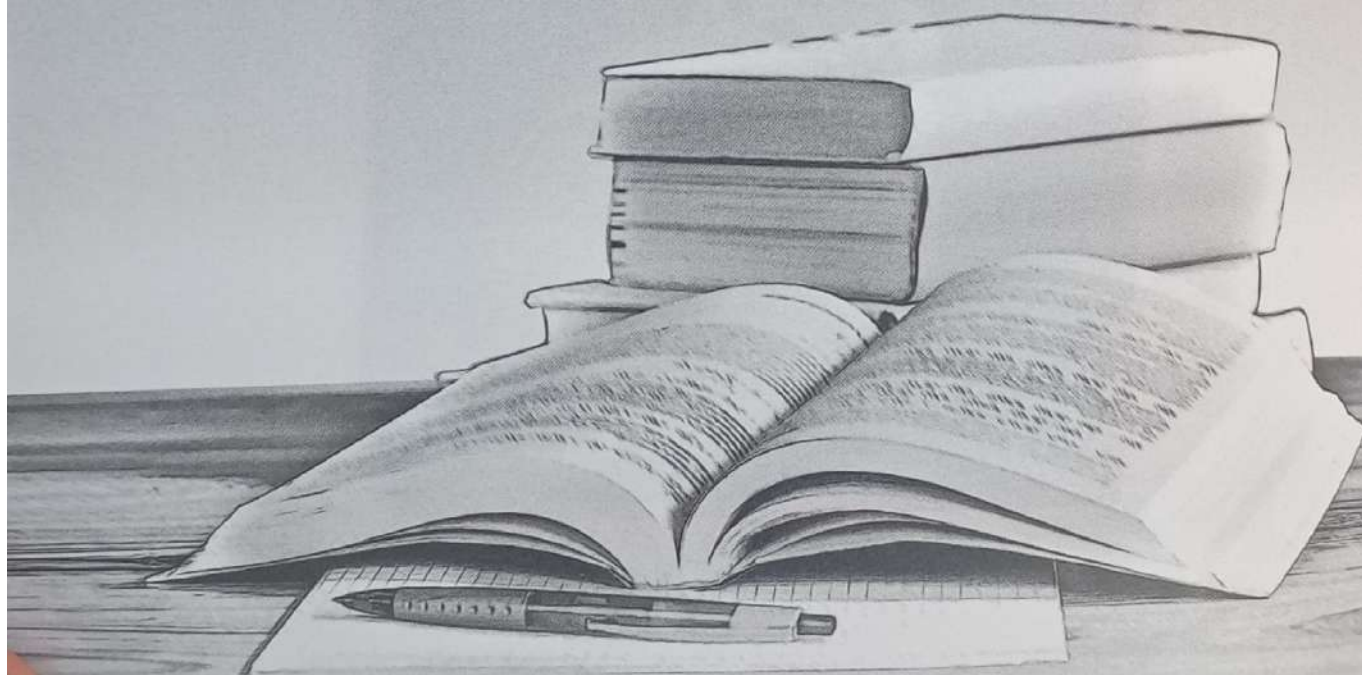
Guide Answers



**2<sup>nd</sup>**  
SEC.  
2023  
FIRST TERM

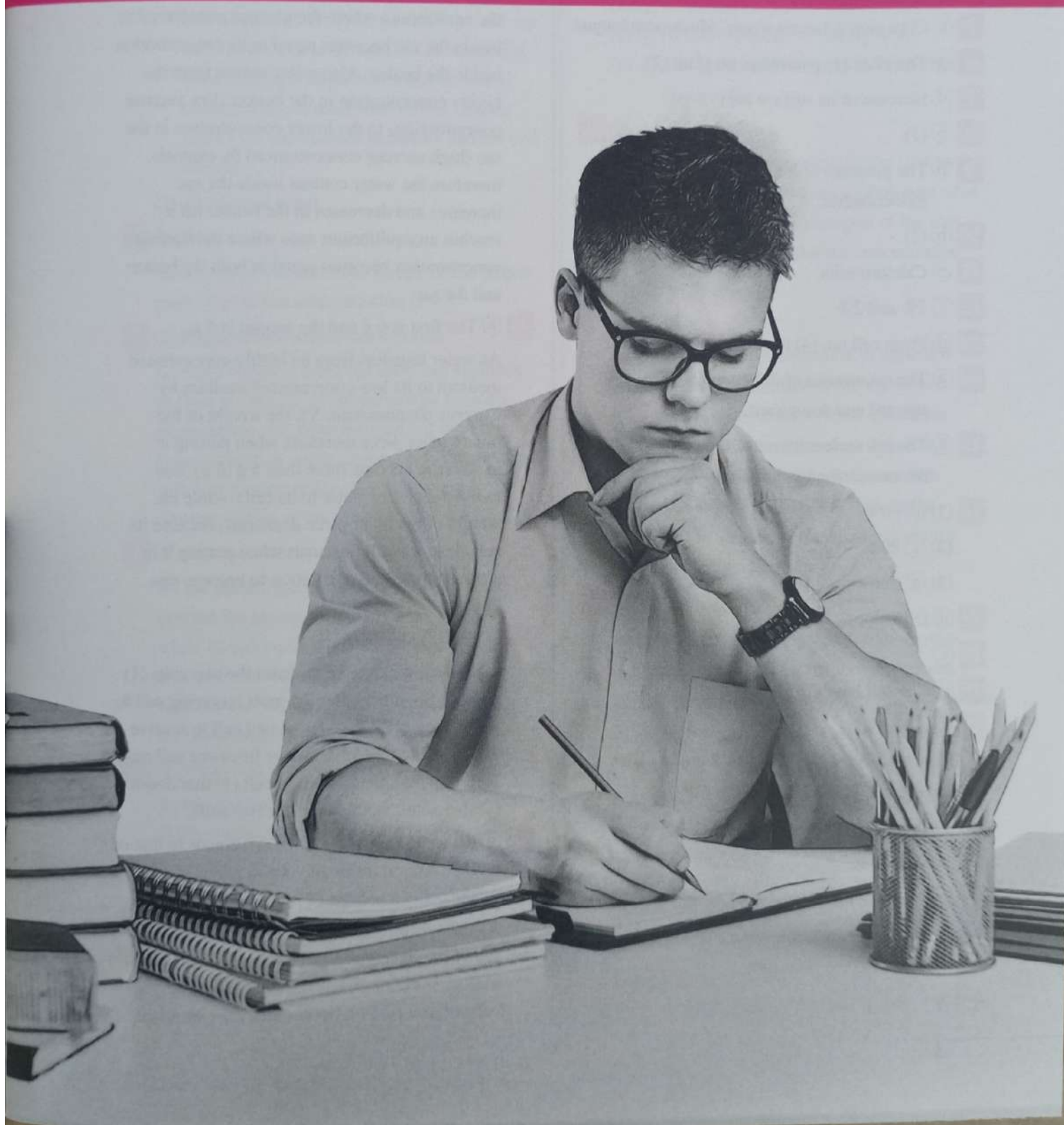


# CONTENTS



- **Answers of the Book Questions.**
- **Answers of Test Yourself Questions.**
- **Answers of 10 General Exams.**

# Answers of | the Book Questions





# Answers of Chapter 1 Lesson One

## First Answers of Multiple Choice Questions

- 1 (c) High-energy and complex-structured compounds.
- 2 (c) They obtain their food in the form of simple-structured compounds.
- 3 (d) Parasites.
- 4 (b) Bread mould fungus.
- 5 (c) Corn plant / *Ascaris* worm / Mushroom fungus.
- 6 (a) The plant (1) parasitises on plant (2).
- 7 (d) Increase of its surface area
- 8 (b) (2).
- 9 (b) The presence of large numbers of mitochondria.
- 10 (b) (2).
- 11 (b) Calcium salts.
- 12 (c) 7% and 2%
- 13 (d) From cell no. (4) to cell no. (1).
- 14 (a) The occurrence of diffusion phenomenon upward and downward.
- 15 (a) The ink molecules move through the membrane by diffusion.
- 16 (1) (d) 90%  
(2) (c) 80%  
(3) (a) Zero.
- 17 (d) Diffusion.
- 18 (c)
- 19 (d) The cell bursts.
- 20 (c)
- 21 (d)
- 22 (d) The weight of piece (X) decreases and the weight of piece (Y) increases.
- 23 (a) It swells.
- 24 (a) The tube no. (1) and the tube no. (2).
- 25 (c) The water molecules move through the carrot tissues to the glass tube.
- 26 (c)

27 (c) It bursts.

28 (b)

29 (a) Decreases / Increases

30 (a) The glucose concentration in the beaker will increase.

As the glucose transfers from the sac to the beaker with the concentration gradient by diffusion, therefore its concentration increases in the beaker and decreases in the sac till it reaches the equilibrium where the glucose concentration inside the sac becomes equal to its concentration inside the beaker. Also water moves from the higher concentration in the beaker (low sucrose concentration) to the lower concentration in the sac (high sucrose concentration) by osmosis, therefore the water content inside the sac increases and decreases in the beaker till it reaches an equilibrium state where the sucrose concentration becomes equal in both the beaker and the sac.

31 (a) The first is 6 g and the second is 4 g.

As water transfers from its highly-concentrated medium to its low concentrated medium by osmosis phenomenon. So, the weight of the potato tuber piece increases when putting it in water to become more than 5 g (6 g), due to the transfer of water to its cells, while the weight of the other piece decreases, because its cells lose water by osmosis when putting it in a concentrated sugar solution to become less than 5 g (4 g).

32 (d) (3), (2) and (1).

As cell (3) receives water from the two cells (1) and (2). So, it becomes the most receiving cell to water, then cell (2) is the second cell to receive water, where it receives water from one cell only "cell (1)", and the last one is cell (1) that doesn't receive water from any of the two cells.

33 (d) Concentration of solution (Z) equals to that of the solution inside the sap vacuoles of the cells in section (Y).

As the concentration of the solution inside the sap vacuoles in the cells of section (X) equals its concentration inside the sap vacuoles in the cells of section (Y), because they are identical

sections and the concentration of the solution inside the sap vacuoles in the cells of section (X) equals its concentration in solution (Z), as no change occurs in section (X) when putting it in this solution. So, the concentration of solution (Z) is equal to the concentration of the solution inside the sap vacuoles in the cells of section (Y).

**34** (1) **d** 10%

Due to the transfer of water from the cell sap vacuole to outside by osmosis phenomenon when putting it in sucrose solution whose concentration is more than (10%). So, the size of the sap vacuole decreases and the cell shrinks.

(2) **d** distilled water.

**35** **b** 2%

As no change occurs in the weight of the potato piece (7 g) at this concentration (2%).

**36** **d** Highly-concentrated salt solution.

As water transfers from the cells' sap vacuoles of plant in case no. (1) to the soil by osmosis phenomenon (i.e. from the medium with high concentration of water molecules to the medium with low concentration of water molecules), causing wilting of the plant in case no. (2).

**37** **b** plasma membranes.

As the plasma membranes of the plant cells prevent the passage of sugars from the soil, while its cell walls allow the passage of water and salts ions only that the plant uses in the formation of sugars inside its cells during the photosynthesis process.

**38** **c** Water will transfer from left to right.

As the concentration of water in the left side is (94%) higher than that of the right side (90%). So, water transfers from left to right by osmosis phenomenon through the semi-permeable membrane.

**39** **a** Osmosis phenomenon.

**40** (1) **b** Diffusion.

(2) **a** Osmosis.

**41** **b** Nitrogen.

**42** **c** Iodine.

**43** **b** Active transport.

**44** **a** Cell (A) only.

**45** **d**  $2.1 \times 10^3$  ion/liter.

**46** **d** (1), (2), (3) and (4).

**47** (1) **c** The plant doesn't need it.

(2) **b** Diffusion.

(3) **c** Active transport. (4) **a** Iron.

(5) **a** The plant needs element (Y) more than element (Z).

**48** **c** Phosphorus.

As phosphorus element enters in the structure of ATP molecules (adenosine triphosphate) that is required for the active transport of the ions which are absorbed against the concentration gradient.

**49** **b**  $K^+ / Na^+$

As the potassium concentration in plasma is less than its concentration in the red blood corpuscle, and the concentration of sodium inside the red blood corpuscle is less than its concentration in plasma. So, potassium is transferred into the cell and sodium out of the cell by the active transport against the concentration gradient.

**50** **a** Y / Z / X / L

As it is observed from the choice no. (a) that the correct pathways for the ions movement is against or with the concentration gradient, where in the pathway (Y) the potassium ions enter into the cell, and in the pathway (Z), sodium ions get out of the cell, and both are against the concentration gradient, and the occurrence of each of them requires energy, i.e. by the active transport.

While in the pathway (X) the sodium ions enter into the cell, and in the pathway (L) the potassium ions get out of the cell, and both are with the concentration gradient, i.e. by diffusion.



51 (d) (4).

As water transfers from the diluted sucrose solution to the cells of the potato piece by osmosis. So, the concentration of sucrose increases in the solution.

52 (1) (b) (Y) from solution (1) to solution (2).

As molecules of substance (Y) are smaller in size, where they transfer through the semi-permeable membrane from solution (1) "highly-concentrated medium" (8%) to solution (2) "low-concentrated medium" (6%) by diffusion.

(2) (c) first / 7

As the total concentration of molecules in solution (1) is higher than that in solution (2). So, water moves from solution (2) to solution (1) by osmosis phenomenon through the semi-permeable membrane. Therefore, the concentration of solution (2) increases and the concentration of solution (1) decreases till reaching the equilibrium state in which the concentration is (7%).

53 (1) (b) 2%

As the solution level inside the funnel that contains starch solution (2%) doesn't change after 24 hours.

(2) (a) Osmosis phenomenon.

As the level of the solution inside funnel no. (3) that contains starch solution (4%) increases, while that of the solution inside funnel no. (1) that contains tap water decreases, due to the transfer of water through the semi-permeable membrane by osmosis phenomenon from the medium with high concentration to the medium with low concentration for water molecules.

## Second Answers of Miscellaneous Questions

1 As cotton plant is from the green plants that manufacture their food by themselves, where it synthesizes the high-energy complex-structured organic food substances from the low-energy simple-structured raw inorganic materials inside

its cells through the photosynthesis process, while the bread mould fungus obtains the high-energy organic food substances from the bodies of other living organisms by saprophytism.

2

Bean plant	Orobanché plant
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Autotrophic living organism.</li> <li>• It obtains its food by chemical reactions that occur inside its cells and are known as "photosynthesis".</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heterotrophic living organism.</li> <li>• It obtains its food from the bodies of other living organisms by parasitism.</li> </ul>

3 As the concentration of solution (cell sap) inside its sap vacuole is higher than the concentration of soil solution. This helps water to pass from the soil to the cell by osmosis.

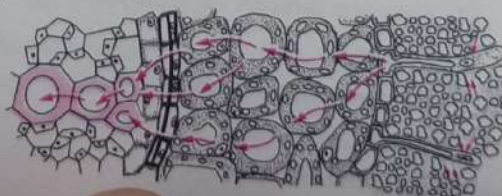
4 (a) It may lead to tearing each of structure no. (1) "piliferous layer (epidermis)" and structure no. (3) "root hair" and the compensation occurs continuously from the elongation zone in the root.

(b) The concentration of ions will increase inside structure no. (2) "sap vacuole", leading to the transfer of water by osmosis from the soil to structure no. (3) "root hair", then to the epidermal cells in the root.

(c) The surface area of water and salts absorption from the soil decreases, as well as the fixation of plant in the soil decreases, due to the inability of penetration and stick among the soil particles which may lead to the death of the plant.

5 (a) (1) Soil particles. (2) Root hair.  
(3) Piliferous layer "epidermis".  
(4) Xylem vessels.

(b)



- (c) 1. As structure no. (2) "root hair" secretes a viscous substance that helps it in finding its way easily among the structure no. (1) "soil particles" and stick to them, and so it can fix the plant into the soil.
2. As structure no. (2) "root hair" is characterized by :
- Being large in number and protruding outside to increase the surface area of water and salts absorption.
  - Having thin wall to permit the passage of water and salts through it.
  - Being the solution inside its sap vacuole more concentrated than the soil solution to help water to pass from the soil to the root hair.
- (d) The carbohydrates will not be converted into proteins.
- (e) The water molecules will replace the air (oxygen) that is present among soil particles, therefore there will be a difficulty for the plant to absorb oxygen by the root hairs which affect the absorption of some mineral salts from the soil by active transport, due to the absence of ATP molecules, as a result of the shortage of oxygen gas that is required for the respiration process.

**6** The statement is wrong / As the cell walls mainly consist of cellulose that is permeable to water and mineral salts.

**7** The relation is directly proportional (i.e. the osmotic pressure increases by increasing the concentration of solutes in the solution). So, water can pass from the low-concentrated solution to the high-concentrated solution by osmosis.

**8** The statement is wrong / As the osmotic pressure is arisen from the difference in osmosis among the plant cells, where water moves from the cells with high concentration of water to the cells with low concentration of water, as a result of the difference in the solutes concentration in water on the two sides of the membrane.

**9** To force the ions to diffuse against the concentration gradient which is known as the active transport, as the concentration of these ions inside the cell is higher than their concentration outside the cell.

**10** In tube no. (1), the seedling appears yellow in colour, because the nutritive solution doesn't contain the essential elements (macro and micro-nutrients) that are needed to the seedling growth, while in tube no. (2), the seedling appears green in colour, because the nutritive solution contains the essential elements needed to the seedling growth.

## Answers of Chapter 1 Lesson Two

### First Answers of Multiple Choice Questions

- 1** (d) Chlorenchyma tissues.
- 2** (b) O<sub>2</sub>
- 3** (a) CO<sub>2</sub>
- 4** (a) Z
- 5** (a) Cutin.
- 6** (c) Layer that is impermeable to water.
- 7** (1) (b) (2). (2) (b) (2).  
(3) (c) (2) and (4). (4) (b) (2).
- 8** (d) The leaves are getting more yellow in colour.
- 9** (d)
- 10** (b) The *Cuscuta* plant is devoid of chlorophyll and the *Medicago sativa* plant contains real roots.

As the parasitic plant (*Cuscuta*) doesn't need real roots to absorb water and salts and also doesn't need chlorophyll to perform photosynthesis process, but it depends on the host plant (*Medicago sativa*) in getting its food in a ready-made form.

**11** (a) Palisade tissue.

As the palisade tissue contains many chloroplasts that contain the chlorophyll pigment required for performing the photosynthesis process, producing a high percentage of starch, while the spongy tissue contains a lower number of chloroplasts, whereas the chloroplasts are absent from the xylem and phloem tissues.



12 (a) (1).

As the palisade layer contains a higher number of chloroplasts than that are present in the spongy layer, while the epidermis is devoid of chloroplasts.

13 (1) (c) (3) and (9).

As number (3) "xylem vessels" (non-living cells) and number (9) "xylem parenchyma" (living cells) share in the formation of xylem tissue (compound tissue).

(2) (c) (6) and (7).

As the parenchyma cells (6) "spongy tissue" share with the parenchyma cells (7) "palisade tissue" in performing the photosynthesis process, because they contain chloroplasts.

14 (a) It is more green than its lower surface.

As the upper surface of the leaf is followed by the palisade tissue whose cells possess many chloroplasts, while above the lower surface the spongy tissue is present, as its cells contain a lower number of chloroplasts than that in the palisade tissue cells.

15 (b)  $A + C \xrightarrow{\text{Sunlight}} B + D$

16 (c) The light intensity is very low.

17 (d) Energy to produce oxygen, water and glucose.

18 (b) The site of stomata.

19 (b) Absence of  $\text{CO}_2$  / Absence of chlorophyll / Absence of light

As the absence of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas occurred as a result of the presence of the glass sheet in the plant leaf in case no. (1), the absence of chlorophyll from the yellow parts of the leaf in case no. (2) and the non-exposure of the part of the leaf in case no. (3) to light as a result of presence of the black barrier that prevents the occurrence of photosynthesis process. Therefore, the non-formation of starch leads to unchanging the colour of iodine solution.

20 (a)  $6\text{CO}_2 + 6\text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow[\text{energy}]{\text{Light}} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6 + 6\text{O}_2 \uparrow$

As 6 molecules of carbon dioxide and 6 molecules of water are needed to form the glucose molecule (6C).

21 (d) As the light intensity increases, the rate of photosynthesis process increases.

22 (c) Light + chlorophyll + ADP

23 (d) ADP from ATP in stroma.

24 (b) Formation of glucose.

25 (c) (a) and (b) respectively.

26 (c) ATP

27 (a)  $\text{NADPH}_2$  and ATP

28 (1) (d) From (d) to (e).

(2) (a)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$

29 (a) In grana and stroma respectively.

30 (d) Formation of simple sugars.

31 (c) Splitting of hydrogen sulphide and formation of water.

32 (c) Formation of ADP

33 (a) Formation of a 3-carbon compound.

34 (b) By combination of carbon dioxide with hydrogen.

35 (b) Glucose containing  $^{16}\text{O}$

36 (b) NADP reduction.

37 (a) 2

38 (c) Formation of oxygen.

39 (d)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$

40 (d)

41 (d) Soda water contains mineral salts and  $\text{CO}_2$  gas which increases the rate of the plant growth.

42 (a)

43 (b)  $\text{CO}_2$  fixation.

44 (c) From light to chemical / Glucose / Starch

45 (d)

46 (c) Resulted from the photosynthesis process.

47 (1) (b)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$

(2) (b) ADP

(3) (a)  $\text{NADPH}_2$

(4) (a) Grana / Stroma

48 (d) Grana and stroma together.

As NADP compound is reduced to  $\text{NADPH}_2$  in grana, to carry hydrogen to stroma, where it combines with  $\text{CO}_2$  gas to be reduced to carbohydrates. Therefore, the reduction reactions take place in grana and stroma together inside the chloroplast.

- 49 (b) The occurrence of dark reactions depends on the occurrence of light reactions.

As the occurrence of dark reactions depends on the occurrence of light reactions. As, the products of light reactions complete their action in the dark reactions to form the carbohydrates.

- 50 (a) As the production of  $^{16}\text{O}_2$  increases within the light periods, due to the occurrence of light reactions and the releasing of oxygen that is resulted from the water splitting  $\text{H}_2^{16}\text{O}_2$ , and the production of  $^{16}\text{O}_2$  decreases within the dark periods, due to the stopping of light reactions, while the alga uses the dissolved oxygen  $^{18}\text{O}_2$  in water in the respiration process and uses carbon dioxide  $\text{C}^{18}\text{O}_2$  in the dark reactions to form the carbohydrates, leading to the decrease in the concentration of  $^{18}\text{O}_2$  through the experiment period.

- 51 (a) As the amount of PGAL compound decreases, because its formation occurs by the reduction of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas. So, in case of the removal of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas, this compound will not be formed. Therefore, its level decreases, while the light blocking or light increasing doesn't affect the amount of PGAL, because the dark reactions take place in light and dark.

- 52 (c) To perform the photosynthesis process, four conditions must be provided, which are : carbon dioxide, water, light and the presence of chlorophyll, where the light absence from tube (a) took place due to the presence of the black cover, chlorophyll is absent from the colored leaf in tube (b), and carbon dioxide is absent from tube (d), because it is absorbed, which prevents the formation of starch, so that the color of iodine solution will not be changed, while the leaf in tube (c) is coloured due to the formation of starch as a result of the presence of chlorophyll and providing the other conditions. So, it becomes the tube that confirms that the presence of chlorophyll is necessary for performing the photosynthesis process.

- 53 (c) Oxygen enters in the structure of all the photosynthesis products.

As oxygen enters in the structure of all the photosynthesis products (carbohydrates, water and  $\text{CO}_2$  gas), while carbon enters in the structure of carbohydrates that are intended to be studied.

## Second Answers of Miscellaneous Questions

- 1 Because it contains chlorenchyma tissues that contain chloroplasts.
- 2 (a) Chlorophyll (A), chlorophyll (B), xanthophyll and carotene.  
(b) As the ATP and  $\text{NADPH}_2$  compounds that are formed in structure no. (5) "grana" during the light reactions are carried to the structure no. (1) "stroma" for accomplishing the dark reactions, where carbon dioxide gas is fixed by its combination with hydrogen that is carried on  $\text{NADPH}_2$  compound by the help of the stored energy in ATP molecule, leading to the formation of carbohydrates.  
(c) 1. (3) DNA                      2. (1) Stroma.  
3. (4) Starch granules.
- 3 The plant will die, due to the non-occurrence of photosynthesis process, because of :
- The stopping of the light reactions occurrence, due to the absence of the chlorophyll needed for absorbing the light energy.
  - The non-occurrence of dark reactions, due to the non-formation of ATP and  $\text{NADPH}_2$  that are required for the fixation of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas and the formation of carbohydrates.
- 4 Answer by yourself.
- 5 The plant will die, due to the inability to translocate the dissolved organic food substances from the mesophyll tissue where they had been manufactured to the different plant parts.



- 6** The statement is wrong / As the green and purple sulphur bacteria during the photosynthesis process use hydrogen sulphide as a source of hydrogen that is used in reducing  $\text{CO}_2$  to build the carbohydrates. So, sulphur is released and not oxygen.

**7** (a)

The mistake	The explanation
Using pure water.	It doesn't contain a source of salts needed for the plant to perform the photosynthesis process.
The absence of a source of $\text{CO}_2$ gas.	The plant will not be able to perform the photosynthesis process and form carbohydrates.
The evolving of gas bubbles in the glass tube.	The plant didn't perform photosynthesis process, therefore $\text{O}_2$ gas wouldn't evolve.

(b) 1. Photosynthesis process will not occur /

As most types of bacteria are heterotrophic organisms, and the others are autotrophic organisms, such as the green and purple sulphur bacteria, but they need hydrogen sulphide instead of water to perform the photosynthesis process.

2. The aquatic plant will perform the photosynthesis process.

- 8** The statement is wrong / Because most types of bacteria are heterotrophic organisms, as they don't contain the bacteriochlorophyll that enables them to perform the photosynthesis process.

- 9** The statement is correct / As a group of scientists used the oxygen isotope ( $^{18}\text{O}$ ) instead of ( $^{16}\text{O}$ ), in order to prove that water is the source of oxygen evolved in the photosynthesis process, as well as the scientist Calvin used the radioactive carbon isotope ( $^{14}\text{C}$ ) to reveal the nature of dark reactions and prove that the first stable compound formed in the dark reactions is the phosphoglyceraldehyde (PGAL).

- 10** The statement is wrong / As the dark reactions are called the enzymatic reactions, i.e. they need enzymes (co-factors) to occur.

- 11** The ability of sulphur bacteria to perform photosynthesis process will decrease, as hydrogen sulphide is the source of hydrogen needed to fix  $\text{CO}_2$  in the dark reactions to form carbohydrates.

- 12** (a) In the grana inside the chloroplast of a green plant leaf.

(b) In case of absence of (D) "NADP",

(B) "hydrogen" may escape or recombine with (C) "oxygen" again, therefore (E) "NADPH<sub>2</sub>" will not be formed which is essential for dark reactions, leading to the non-occurrence of photosynthesis process and the plant dies.

(c) The dark reactions will not occur, therefore the carbohydrates will not be formed, due to the absence of hydrogen that is carried on (E) "NADPH<sub>2</sub>" that is required to fix the carbon dioxide gas.

- 13** As when light falls on the molecules of chlorophyll, the electrons of their atoms become excited to move from their lower energy levels to the higher energy levels, therefore the kinetic energy of light is stored as chemical potential energy in the chlorophyll, and on releasing this energy, a part of it is used in the formation of ATP molecules that store chemical energy in the chemical bonds among their atoms.

- 14** The statement is correct / As the kinetic energy of light that falls on the molecules of chlorophyll is stored as chemical potential energy when released, a part of this energy is used in the combination of ADP molecule with a phosphate group to form ATP molecule, and this is known as the "photosynthetic phosphorylation".

- 15** The iodine solution doesn't change, on adding it to the leaf part that is present inside the glass jar, as the concentrated potassium hydroxide solution absorbs  $\text{CO}_2$  gas from the air that is present inside the jar, which prevents the occurrence of photosynthesis process, while the colour of iodine solution changes in the leaf part that was



exposed to light outside the glass jar from the brown colour to the dark blue colour, as the plant performed the photosynthesis process, and starch is formed in this part of the leaf.

- 16** The efficiency of photosynthesis process will decrease, where the rate of dark (enzymatic) reactions will decrease, because the limiting factor here is the temperature. So, the fixation of carbon dioxide will decrease, therefore the carbohydrates formation will decrease which affects the plant life.
- 17** As ATP and  $\text{NADPH}_2$  compounds are produced in the light reactions of the photosynthesis process and during the dark reactions in the stroma,  $\text{CO}_2$  gas is fixed by its combination with the hydrogen which is carried on  $\text{NADPH}_2$  compound and by the help of the stored energy in ATP molecule. So, carbohydrates will be formed.
- 18** **The statement is wrong** / As the high-energy organic substances are formed during the dark reactions in stroma by the help of ATP and  $\text{NADPH}_2$  compounds that were formed during the light reactions in grana.
- 19** (a) The direction of the arrow towards the label no. (1) "outside", as it represents  $\text{CO}_2$  gas that is needed by the alga to accomplish the photosynthesis process.  
 (b) The phosphoglyceraldehyde (PGAL) compound will not be formed, because of the absence of light "no.(4)" that is needed by the alga to perform the photosynthesis process.
- 20** (a) In the chloroplast.  
 (b) • (B) : light reactions.  
      • (C) : dark reactions.  
 (c) • (B) : light.  
      • (C) : temperature.  
 (d) • (A) : water.  
      • (D) :  $\text{H}_2$   
      • (E) : glucose.

- 21** As the plant uses the phosphoglyceraldehyde (PGAL) compound that is resulted from the dark reactions in the synthesis of different organic compounds, such as glucose, starch, proteins and lipids.

- 22** (a) • (A) : light.                      • (B) :  $\text{O}_2$  gas.  
      • (C) : ATP                            • (D) :  $\text{NADPH}_2$

(b) *Answer by yourself.*

(c) The mesophyll tissue of leaf / As it consists of the palisade layer and spongy layer, and the cells of each layer contain chloroplasts whose stroma contains a large number of starch granules.

## Answers of Chapter 1 Lesson Three

### First Answers of Multiple Choice Questions

- 1** (d) absorbed.  
**2** (a) stop.  
**3** (a) Enzyme (1) and (2) are the same enzyme.  
**4** (b) Maltose.  
**5** (c) Amylase.  
**6** (a) Mouth.  
**7** (d) Maltose.  
**8** (c) Pastries.  
**9** (a) A  
**10** (d) Decreasing the pH value to 2  
**11** (c) Eggs.  
**12** (b)

As the starch molecule is digested in mouth by the action of amylase enzyme into maltose that is a disaccharide sugar consisting of two glucose molecules linked together.

- 13** (a) oesophagus and stomach.  
**14** (c) Due to the difference in pH  
**15** (b) Fats.  
**16** (c) Bile.  
**17** (d) In small intestine.  
**18** (c) Peanut butter.

- 19 a Lipase.
- 20 a Pancreas.
- 21 b Lipase.
- 22 b Enterokinase.
- 23 d Lactase.
- 24 d Amylase and maltase.
- 25 c Gastric juice.
- 26 d Trypsin enzyme is secreted in an active form, while pepsin enzyme is secreted in an inactive form.
- 27 b Stomach / ileum.
- 28 c Oesophagus.
- 29 d Minerals and vitamins.
- 30 a Liver.
- 31 (1) c Mouth / stomach / small intestine.  
(2) a HCl acid.
- 32 b Amino acids.
- 33 d Stomach.
- 34 d In small intestine.
- 35 a Amino acids and simple sugars.
- 36 b Proteins / Polypeptides
- 37 d Sucrose molecule / Sucrase enzyme / Glucose molecule
- 38 b protein
- As the milk is the only source of protein for infants, and if it was not coagulated, it would leave the stomach without digestion. So, it must be present in stomach for a period of time for digestion of proteins.
- 39 c Trypsin.
- As enterokinase enzyme activates trypsinogen into trypsin (product) which is an enzyme having the ability of specific activation, where it acts on the hydrolysis of proteins into polypeptides.
- 40 c (2) + (4) + (6) / (3) + (4) + (5)
- By using the first solution, the protein (egg white) is hydrolyzed into polypeptides by the action of pepsin enzyme (2) in the presence of water (4) and acidic medium (i.e. in the presence of HCl acid (6) "pH = 1.5 : 2.5").

- By using the second solution, the protein (egg white) is hydrolyzed into polypeptides by the action of trypsin enzyme (3) in the presence of water (4) and alkaline medium (i.e. in the presence of sodium bicarbonate (5) "pH = 8").

- 41 b Not digested / Digested in a lower rate than the normal rate / Digested in a normal rate

As the digestion of proteins doesn't occur, due to the absence of enterokinase enzyme (that is secreted from the inner wall of the small intestine) from the pancreatic juice, and converts the inactive trypsinogen enzyme into active trypsin to affect the protein, the lipids are digested in a lower rate than the normal rate, due to the absence of the bile juice that is secreted from liver, where it acts on the conversion of fats into emulsified fats, which facilitates and accelerates the effect of lipase enzyme, and starch is digested due to the presence of pancreatic amylase enzyme that hydrolyzes the starch into disaccharide sugar (maltose).

- 42 d Bile juice and maltase.

As pepsin and trypsin act on the digestion of proteins, ptyalin and pancreatic amylase act on the digestion of starch and each of HCl and enterokinase enzyme acts on the activation of pepsinogen and trypsinogen respectively, but the bile juice hydrolyzes fats, while maltase hydrolyzes maltose sugar.

- 43 b Amylase.

As each of maltase, sucrase and lactase digests disaccharides which are maltose, sucrose and lactose respectively, while amylase digests polysaccharide which is starch.

- 44 c Pepsin – Trypsin – Peptidases – Lactase.
- As pepsin and trypsin act on the digestion of proteins in milk and their action is completed by the action of peptidases to make the body benefit from amino acids, while lactase enzyme hydrolyzes lactose sugar in milk to make the body benefit from glucose and galactose.

- 45 a It changes in test tube (1) faster than test tube (2).



As the mixture shape is changed in test tube (1) faster than test tube (2), due to the addition of bile juice that acts on the conversion of fats (oil) into emulsified fats (i.e. dividing the large masses of fats into small fat globules) to facilitate and accelerate the effect of lipase enzyme on fats and convert them into fatty acids and glycerol.

- 46 (b) will affect step (2).

As the protein digestive enzymes will digest the enzymes that are required for step (2), because they are protein substances.

- 47 (b) To release the medicine in the intestine without releasing it in the stomach.

As this capsule keeps the digestive enzymes that are present inside it away from the hydrolysis inside the stomach, as they consist of protein substances.

- 48 (b) Butter.

- 49 (d) Intestine.

- 50 (c) Fats.

- 51 (c) Enterokinase.

- 52 (c) Because of the need to an amount of energy to be absorbed.

- 53 (a) Anabolism.

- 54 (d) The body benefits from it as a source of energy.

- 55 (b) 2

- 56 (c) bile and pancreatic juice

As the bile acts on the digestion of fats into emulsified fats that are hydrolyzed by the action of lipase enzyme into glycerol and fatty acids which pass in the lymphatic route to be absorbed with those vitamins which dissolved in it.

- 57 (d) Superior vena cava.

As vitamin (B) dissolves in water. So, it takes the blood route during the absorption process, where it passes in the hepatic portal vein, then to liver and from it to the hepatic vein to be emptied into the inferior vena cava, then to the heart, while the superior vena cava is a way of the lymphatic route for the absorption process.

- 58 (d) Disturbance in HCl acid secretion.

As the disturbance in the pancreas or in the action of lipase enzyme or in the secretion of bile juice is accompanied by the indigestion of fats, then they pass in the large intestine without digestion to be expelled out with wastes, but the disturbance in the secretion of HCl doesn't affect the digestion of fats, but affects the digestion of proteins.

## Second Answers of Miscellaneous Questions

- 1 The body will not be able to digest the large and complex-structured food molecules (carbohydrates, proteins and fats) into small-sized and simple-structured molecules which are easily absorbed by the cell. Therefore, the body will not be able to benefit from them, leading to the human death.

- 2 The action of enzyme will be affected by increasing the temperature degree, as each enzyme has an optimum temperature at which it works efficiently. So, if the temperature increases above or decreases below this temperature, the enzyme activity will decrease.

- 3 As the enzyme that catalyzes the breaking down of a complex molecule into simpler molecules (digestion process), also it may be able to reunite the two molecules again into the same complex molecule (anabolism process).

- 4 Human will feel the sweet taste, due to the change of starch in the piece of bread into the maltose sugar by the action of amylase (ptyalin) enzyme that is present in saliva.

- 5 Due to the secretion of mucus and the continuity of peristalsis process along the alimentary canal.

- 6 The food will pass into the trachea, and this will lead to the human suffocation, as during the swallowing of food, the top of trachea and the larynx are elevated together, causing the epiglottis to close over the glottis.

- 7 (a) Along the alimentary canal / Peristalsis.  
 (b) By a series of muscular contractions and relaxations of the muscles of the alimentary canal.  
 (c) Sweeping, churning and mixing the food with the digestive juices along the alimentary canal.

8 Because the salivary glands pour saliva into the buccal cavity which contains mucus that softens the food and facilitates its swallowing, as well as the lining of oesophagus contains glands which secrete mucus.

9 As HCl acid creates acidic medium in the stomach ( $\text{pH} = 1.5 : 2.5$ ) which leads to the activation of pepsinogen enzyme and changing it into active pepsin to digest the protein.

10 The gastric medium will not be acidic. So, the action of ptyalin enzyme will continue, the harmful bacteria that enter with food will not be killed, as well as the pepsinogen enzyme will not be activated. So, the protein will not be digested.

11 Answer by yourself.

12 (a) Structure no. (3) "stomach muscles" participate in the digestion process through a group of muscular contractions and relaxations "peristalsis" that sweeps, churns and mixes the food with the gastric juice.

(b) **The functional suitability of structure no. (1) "oesophagus" :**

- Its lining contains glands to secrete mucus for softening the food and facilitating its passage.
- Its internal wall contains muscles that perform the peristalsis to sweep the food bolus to the stomach.

(c) The opening and closing of structure no. (2) "cardiac sphincter" and structure no. (4) "pyloric sphincter" are controlled by sphincter circular muscle.

13 As the gastric juice contains inactive pepsinogen enzyme that is converted by the action of HCl acid into active pepsin that hydrolyzes the proteins (red meat) into short polypeptide chains and doesn't contain digestive enzymes that affect the other types of food substances.

14 This will affect the stomach cells, then it will digest the stomach internal walls and this may cause the stomach ulcer.

15 Due to the presence of HCl acid which stops the action of amylase (ptyalin) enzyme, as HCl acid creates an acidic medium in the stomach ( $\text{pH} = 1.5 : 2.5$ ), while the ptyalin enzyme works in a weak alkaline medium ( $\text{pH} = 7.4$ ).

16 This experiment will be carried out again, where :

- The temperature of the water bath is adjusted at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- Using diluted HCl with  $\text{pH} = (1.5 : 2.5)$

17 Due to the stopping or reducing of heavy mucous secretions from the internal walls of stomach. So, these walls will be affected by the action of digestive juices (gastric juice), and this will lead to the inflammation of the stomach and the occurrence of stomach ulcer.

18 Due to the presence of pepsinogen enzyme in an inactive form and it is not activated unless it comes out from the stomach cells into its cavity by the action of HCl acid, as well as the heavy mucous secretions that cover the internal wall of the stomach protect it against the digestive juices.

19 Because it doesn't contain any digestive enzymes.

20 As the liver secretes the bile juice during the passage of food in the duodenum which works on changing the fats into emulsified fats. So, it facilitates and accelerates the enzymatic action on the fats that don't dissolve in water.



- 21** The digestion of fats and making benefit from them become difficult, because the bile juice converts the fats into emulsified fats to facilitate and accelerate the enzymatic action on fats that don't dissolve in water.
- 22** Because in the small intestine, sodium bicarbonate is secreted which changes the pH of the medium into alkaline ( $\text{pH} = 8$ ). So, the action of pepsin enzyme stops, as it works in an acidic medium ( $\text{pH} = 1.5 : 2.5$ ) as in the stomach.
- 23** HCl acid will not be neutralized inside the duodenum and the medium will not be alkaline that leads to the continuity of pepsin enzyme action and stopping the enzymes of the pancreatic juice (amylase, trypsinogen and lipase) which work in an alkaline medium that affect the digestion process.
- 24** Because it works on converting the trypsinogen enzyme (inactive form) into the trypsin enzyme (active form) which breaks down the proteins into polypeptides.
- 25** Both of them activate the digestive enzymes for proteins to be converted into polypeptide chains.
- 26** **The statement is wrong** / As fast food meals contain a large amount of fats and this stimulates the activity of bile juice to convert them into emulsified fats, which facilitates and accelerates the action of lipase enzyme on the fats and converts them into fatty acids and glycerol.
- 27** As the trypsin enzyme has a limited effect on the digestion of protein substances, where it breaks down the proteins into polypeptides, and this is due to its inability to break the peptide bonds that are present among the amino acids.
- 28** (a) **The role of pH in :**
- Mouth (weak alkaline medium  $\text{pH} = 7.4$ ) is the stimulation of amylase "ptyalin" enzyme to hydrolyze the starch into disaccharide which is maltose.
  - Stomach (acidic medium  $\text{pH} = 1.5 : 2.5$ ) is the activation of pepsinogen enzyme (inactive form) into pepsin enzyme (active form) that digests the proteins into short chains of polypeptides.
  - Duodenum (alkaline medium  $\text{pH} = 8$ ) is the stimulation of the activity of the pancreatic juice that contains pancreatic amylase enzyme, trypsinogen enzyme and lipase enzyme.
- (b) Protein, it is digested in stomach at ( $\text{pH} = 1.5 : 2.5$ ) and in the duodenum at ( $\text{pH} = 8$ ).
- 29** (a) 1. (6) Stomach / (7) Pancreas / (8) ileum.  
2. (3) Liver.  
3. (2) Salivary glands / (7) Pancreas.  
4. (1) Mouth / (5) Duodenum / (8) Small intestine.
- (b) *Answer by yourself.*
- 30** (a) (X)  $\longrightarrow$  Maltase enzyme.  
(A)  $\longrightarrow$  Maltose sugar.
- (b) Enzyme (X) "maltase" is secreted from special cells in the wall of the small intestine / Molecule (A) "maltose sugar" is formed in :
- Mouth : as a result of the hydrolysis of starch by the amylase (ptyalin) enzyme.
  - Duodenum : as a result of the hydrolysis of starch and glycogen by the pancreatic amylase enzyme.
- 31** *Answer by yourself.*
- 32** (a) (A) : starch. (B) : maltose.  
(C) : fructose. (D) : lactose.  
(E) : amylase enzyme.  
(F) : maltase enzyme.  
(G) : sucrase enzyme.  
(H) : lactase enzyme.
- (b) Glucose will not be formed / Because amylase enzyme catalyzes the hydrolysis of starch into maltose sugar, where maltose will be digested into a simpler form that is glucose by the action of maltase enzyme.



(c) (E) : salivary glands and pancreas.

(F), (G) and (H) : special cells in the wall of the small intestine.

- 33** (1) Lipids (Fats). (2) Liver.  
 (3) Proteins. (4) Pepsin.  
 (5) Starch. (6) Amylase (Ptyalin).  
 (7) Maltose sugar.

**34** As the intestinal juice that is secreted from special cells in the wall of the small intestine contains a group of digestive enzymes for disaccharides that are resulted from the digestion of carbohydrates to convert them into monosaccharides that are absorbed by the villi to pass through the blood route.

**35** The statement is correct / As eating carbohydrates stimulates the activity of digestive enzymes of carbohydrates, such as the amylase (ptyalin) and pancreatic amylase enzymes, and also the digestive enzymes of disaccharides, while eating proteins stimulates the activity of pepsin and trypsin enzymes, as well as the peptidases enzymes, but eating fats stimulates the activity of bile juice and lipase enzyme.

**36** To absorb some of the finely emulsified fats that are not hydrolyzed by the enzymes through the engulfment process.

- 37** (a) (1) Bile juice. (2) Emulsified fats.  
 (3) Lipase enzyme. (4) Glycerol.  
 (5) Villi. (6) Lacteal vessel.

(b) Answer by yourself.

- 38** (a) The blood capillaries transport amino acids, and the lacteal vessels transport fatty acids.  
 (b) Structure no. (5) "vein" / Because it carries the blood from blood capillaries carrying glucose to the liver, then from it to the inferior vena cava and finally to the heart.  
 (c) Structure no. (1) "lymphatic vessel".

(d) The absorption of digested food, in addition to the engulfment of the fat globules that are not hydrolyzed by the enzymes through the engulfment process.

(e)

P.O.C.	Structure no. (1) "Lymphatic vessel"	Structure no. (5) "Vein"
<b>Absorbed substances that pass through it :</b>	Glycerol, fatty acids and fat soluble vitamins which are A, D, E and K vitamins.	Water, mineral salts, monosaccharides, amino acids and water soluble vitamins.
<b>Path of the absorbed substances :</b>	Lacteal vessels inside the villi ↓ Lymphatic system ↓ Superior vena cava ↓ Heart	Blood capillaries in the villi ↓ Hepatic portal vein ↓ Liver ↓ Hepatic vein ↓ Inferior vena cava ↓ Heart

**39** As the absorption process of digestion products consumes energy to force these products to diffuse against the concentration gradient through the blood and lymph.

**40** The statement is correct / As the inferior vena cava carries water, mineral salts, monosaccharides, amino acids and water soluble vitamins.

- 41** (a) (3) Maltose.  
 (4) Maltase enzyme.  
 (5) Blood vessel (vein).  
 (b) By diffusion and active transport.  
 (c) Villi of the small intestine.

**42** The statement is wrong / As the epithelial layer cells of villi participate in the absorption process and not the digestion process, where they don't secrete any digestive enzymes, but they absorb the fat globules that are not hydrolyzed by the enzymes through the engulfment process.

**43** Because these vitamins (A, D, E and K) are soluble in the fatty acids, while vitamin (B) is soluble in water.

**44** (a) If the meat piece (protein) is :

• **Digestion of fats :**

- The meat protein will be digested into polypeptide chains by the pepsin enzyme that is secreted from the stomach and by the trypsin enzyme that is secreted from the pancreas in the duodenum.
- The peptide bonds in the polypeptide chains will be broken, producing different amino acids by the peptidases enzymes that are secreted from the special cells in the wall of small intestine.

• **Containing fats :**

- The fats will change into emulsified fats by the bile juice that is secreted from the liver and is poured in the duodenum.
- The emulsified fats will change into fatty acids and glycerol by the lipase enzyme that is secreted from the pancreas in the duodenum, besides the digestion of proteins as mentioned before.

(b) *Answer by yourself.*

**45** (a)

Food substance	First place of digestion	Juice which digests it
Bean	Stomach	Gastric juice
Oil	Duodenum	Bile juice
Bread	Mouth	Saliva

(b)

Food substance	The final form of digestion
Bean	Amino acids
Oil	Fatty acids + Glycerol
Bread	Monosaccharides (Glucose)

(c) The glucose sugar transfers from the blood capillaries inside the villus to the hepatic portal vein, then to the liver and from it to the hepatic vein to pour its contents into the inferior vena cava, then to the heart.

**46** The statement is wrong / As some of the fatty acids and glycerol recombine again to form fats, and these fats pass to the lacteal vessels inside the villi, then to the lymphatic system which carries them slowly and pour them into the superior vena cava, then to the heart.

**47** As the stomach digests the protein substances only, while inside the small intestine the digestion of all food substances in the duodenum is completed, then the absorption of digested food in the ileum (by villi) and transporting it to the blood or lymph to be distributed to all the body cells.

**48** The animal will die, as its body will not make benefit from the digested food substances, due to its inability to absorb them and transfer them to the blood.

**49** The liver will not be able to convert the monosaccharides that are resulted from the carbohydrates digestion into glycogen that is stored in the liver to be used by the body again after its oxidation to produce energy that is required for performing the body vital functions, leading to their stop and the death of the living organism.

**50** The body will lose (excrete) a high percentage of mineral salts and water with the faeces. So, they will lose their semi-solid shape.

**51** The statement is correct / As the absorption process that takes place in the small intestine occurs to the digested food substances and passes them to the blood or lymph, while the absorption process that takes place in the large intestine occurs to water and some salts from the wastes of undigested food, this is occurred through many convolutions found in its lining.

**52** *Answer by yourself.*

**53** (a) (1) Mouth. (2) Oesophagus  
(3) Stomach. (4) Small intestine.  
(5) Large intestine.

(b) As in part (2) "oesophagus", the action of ptyalin enzyme that is secreted from the salivary glands in the "mouth" (1) continues for the digestion of carbohydrates only, and its action stops in the "stomach" (3), while



in part (5) "large intestine", no food digestion occurs, but the absorption of stored water and mineral salts from the wastes of the undigested food is occurred in it.

(c) Starch.

(d) As the food is not digested completely, but it results in the wastes of the undigested food that pushed to the large intestine, where they are expelled out in the form of faeces.

(e) 1. (4) Small intestine.

2 & 3. (5) Large intestine.

## Answers of Test on Chapter

1

- 1 (d) The heterotrophic plant doesn't contain chlorophyll (A) or (B).
- 2 (d) Pepsin enzyme / polypeptide.
- 3 (b) active transport
- 4 (a) (1) & (2).
- 5 (b) (2) only.
- 6 (c) (3) only.
- 7 (a) Oxygen.
- 8 (c) The increase in distance between the light source and the plant.
- 9 (d) D and E
- 10 (b) 0/17/6
- 11 (d) PGAL containing  $^{18}\text{O}$
- 12 (d) Peptidase.
- 13 (c) Active transport process decreases.
- 14 (d)  $\text{CO}_2$  reduction.
- 15 (c)
- 16 (d) Desert plants and salty water environment plants.
- 17 (b) PGAL
- 18 (d) Peanuts and sesame.
- 19 (a) Increases / Increases
- 20 (d)  $\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{NADPH}_2 \longrightarrow \text{Dark reactions.}$
- 21 (d) Deficiency in the amount of glucose formed from photosynthesis.

22 As the purple sulphur bacteria can synthesize their food by bacteriochlorophyll (which is simpler in structure than the normal chlorophyll) and they use hydrogen sulphide ( $\text{H}_2\text{S}$ ) as a source of hydrogen to reduce  $\text{CO}_2$  in order to build-up carbohydrates and sulphur is released. but green plants use  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  as a source of hydrogen to reduce  $\text{CO}_2$  into carbohydrates and oxygen is evolved.

23 Answer by yourself.

24 In order to receive the greatest light intensity to perform photosynthesis process and obtain its food.

25 The statement is wrong / Because enterokinase is a co-enzyme that activates trypsinogen (inactive form) into trypsin (active form).

26 (a) The cells of structure (X) "upper epidermis" are parenchyma cells that are barrel-shaped to converge (collect) sunlight to inside the leaf to perform photosynthesis process.

(b) Answer by yourself.

27 (a) The functional suitability of structure no. (1) "Epithelial layer" is that :

- It encloses lymphatic vessel that is surrounded by a network of venous and arterial blood capillaries. So, the products of digestion can be absorbed by transferring them to the blood route by the help of blood capillaries network or to the lymphatic route through the lymphatic vessels, also the epithelial cells can absorb the fat globules that aren't hydrolyzed by enzymes directly by engulfment.
- It contains micro-villi that are very tiny projections from epithelial layer of the villus, where they increase the surface area of absorption.

(b) The absorbed substances through structure no. (2) "lacteal vessel" are fatty acids, glycerol, vitamins (A, D, E and K) and some emulsified fats.

## Answers of Exercise on Chapter 1

- 1 (d) (2) only.
- 2 (b) 12
- 3 (d) Protein / Amino acids / Enzyme
- 4 (d) parasites
- 5 (a) Mouth.
- 6 (c) dark reactions in both of them.
- 7 (d)  $H_2O - NADPH_2$  - Dark reactions.
- 8 (d) autotrophs.
- 9 (d) Calcium.
- 10 (b) diffusion.
- 11 (a) water.
- 12 (a) Increasing the diffusion of substances against gradient.
- 13 (c) diffusion.
- 14 (b) carbohydrates.
- 15 (d) Youth - Elderhood - Childhood.
- 16 (d) Peristalsis
- 17 (c) fats, lipids.
- 18 (b) He can eat fats in small quantities.
- 19 (c) (P).
- 20 (d) Inferior vena cava.
- 21 (a) Enzymes break down large, complex food molecules into smaller ones which can be absorbed.
- 22 **The statement is wrong** / Because the enzymes have the properties of the catalysts, where they activate particular chemical reactions (like cellular respiration) not restricted on digestion of food.
- 23 *Answer by yourself.*
- 24 Because the epidermal cells are lost from time to time, but they are regenerated continuously from the elongation zone of root.
- 25 *Answer by yourself.*
- 26 (A) : Maltose.  
(X) : Maltase enzyme.
- 27 (a) :  $CO_2$   
(b) :  $NADPH_2$

## Answers of Chapter 2 Lesson One

### First Answers of Multiple Choice Questions

- 1 (c) *Spirogyra* - Bean - Hawk.
- 2 (b) transfers gases to it from the surrounding medium by diffusion.
- 3 (d) The innermost row of cells in cortex.
- 4 (c) Xylem transports water and salts, while phloem transports the ready-made sap.
- 5 (d) Barrel-shaped cells that have a storage function.
- 6 (a) Xylem tissue.
- 7 (d) It contains vascular bundles that are scattered through the pith tissue.
- 8 (1) (a) Vessels and tracheids.  
(2) (b) Transporting water.  
(3) (d) the stages of their formation.
- 9 (1) (d) Each of the xylem and phloem will not be formed.  
(2) (c) Because its cells don't contain nucleus or cytoplasm.  
(3) (b) Transporting high-energy food only.
- 10 (c) Cambium tissue.
- 11 (1) (b) Sieve tube.  
(2) (c) Xylem vessel.
- 12 (1) (a) (1).  
(2) (b) (2).
- 13 (b) Each of them is arisen from the same type of cells.
- 14 (1) (d) (1) and (4).  
(2) (c) (2) and (3).
- 15 (d) Formation of specialized vascular tissues stops.
- 16 (b) The two statements are wrong.  
As the transport process in plant takes place through a group of tissues which includes non-living cells in their structure, we found that xylem consists of non-living tissues (vessels and tracheids) and living tissues (xylem parenchyma), also phloem consists of living cells (sieve tubes, companion cells and parenchyma cells).



**17** (c) Cambium.

As the vascular bundle in the stem consists of phloem, cambium and xylem, while the vascular bundle in the leaf consists of xylem vessels and phloem only, as the epidermal cells are present in both the plant stem and its leaves.

**18** (d) A transverse section in the stem.

As when a transverse section was made at the stem of the two plants, then examining the vascular bundles structure in the stem by the light microscope, we found that the older plant vascular bundle contains a secondary phloem outward and secondary xylem inward more than the younger plant. So, the cross-sectional area in the older plant is larger than that in the younger plant.

**19** (d) Companion cells.

As tracheids, xylem vessels and sieve tubes are devoid of nuclei, but they are present in the companion cells, and make them able to divide.

**20** (a) Companion cells / Cytoplasm / Sieve tubes / Absence of nucleus / Xylem vessels

As the companion cells (a) share the sieve tubes (c) in the presence of the cytoplasm (b) in each of them, and the xylem vessels (e) share the sieve tubes (c) in the absence of the nucleus in each of them.

**21** (d) Amino acids and sugar will not be transported to roots.

As the cut ring represents the phloem which is the tissue that is responsible for transporting the organic substances in the plant, therefore the amino acids and sugar won't be transported downwards to the roots.

**22** (1) (d) The tissue changes into xylem tissue.  
(2) (b) cytoplasm.  
(3) (d) Glucose.

**23** (b) pulling

**24** (d) Water evaporation from the mesophyll tissue cells.

**25** (c) Pectin and lignin.

**26** (b) Planting its roots in a moist soil.

**27** (d) It is a permeable substance to water and solutes.

**28** (d) Root / Leaf / Stem

**29** (d)

**30** (a) The adhesion force among water molecules

**31** (1) (c) (C).

(2) (b) (B).

**32** (b) The presence of cohesion force.

**33** (b)

**34** (b) Fatty acids.

**35** (c) Increasing both the temperature and the concentration of oxygen.

**36** (c) (3).

As the transpiration process takes place during the day with a higher rate, which is one of the forces affecting the sap ascent in the plant.

**37** (b) In phloem only.

As the plant will use the radioactive isotope ( $^3\text{H}$ ) that is present in water during the photosynthesis process that takes place in the leaves, where  $\text{CO}_2$  gas was fixed to form the high-energy carbohydrates that are transferred to all the plant parts through phloem tissue only.

**38** (d) By active transport through phloem.

As phloem tissue transfers the insecticide with the high-energy organic compounds that are formed in the plant leaves during the photosynthesis process, also the transport process in the phloem is an active process, because it needs energy carrier compounds (ATP).

**39** (b) The absorbed heat from the Sun.

As the water ascent in the plant stem is affected by the transpiration pull that originated from the transpiration, which is affected by the absorbed heat from the Sun.

## Second Answers of Miscellaneous Questions

**1** The statement is wrong / Because the

*Spirogyra* alga belongs to the aquatic algae that don't need the presence of specialized transport tissues, where the raw materials transfer with the products of photosynthesis process from one cell to another by diffusion and active transport.

**2** Vessels and tracheids in the xylem tissue.



3 (a)

The structure	The importance
No. (2) "Cytoplasmic threads":	Carry the high-energy organic food substances from a sieve tube to another through the pores of sieve plates, till reaching all the plant parts.
No. (4) "Companion cell":	Regulating the vital processes of sieve tubes and supplying them with energy in the form of ATP molecules, as it contains a large number of ribosomes and mitochondria.

(b) The transport of energy carrier compounds (ATP molecules) that are formed abundantly in part no. (4) "companion cell" to part no. (1) "sieve tubes", where plasmodesmata connects the cytoplasm of the sieve tube with the cytoplasm of the companion cell.

(c) Structure no. (4) "companion cell" will die, therefore it will not be able to regulate the vital processes of structure no. (1) "sieve tubes", leading to the stop of the ready-made sap transportation to all the plant parts. So, the plant die.

4 The thickness of the plant stem will not increase, due to the absence of the meristematic cells (cambium) that divide to give rise to a secondary phloem externally and a secondary xylem internally.

5 As the phloem of leaves is connected with the phloem of the stem and roots, so that a connected network of transporting vessels is formed in all the plant parts, therefore the roots obtain their food after the performance of photosynthesis process and formation of high-energy organic compounds inside the plant leaves.

6 As the xylem tissue contains xylem parenchyma which is represented by rows of living parenchyma cells (contain nuclei) that are present among the xylem vessels.

7 (a) Because the lining of structure no. (1) "xylem vessels" contains strands of lignin that work on the non-collapsing of its wall inward.

(b) Structure no. (1) "xylem vessels" / Because structure no. (1) consists of a series of elongated cylindrical cells that are joined end to end, therefore it is opened from the two ends, while structure no. (2) "tracheids" each of them consists of one cell with tapered ends. So, structure no. (1) has a greater role than structure no. (2) in transporting water and salts inside the plant.

(c) Structure no. (1) is characterized by several characteristics, such as :

1. The walls of xylem vessels consist of cellulose and lignin that have a colloidal nature which is able to imbibe water, which explains the imbibition theory.
2. The diameter of xylem vessels ranges between 0.2 : 0.5 mm, which explains the capillarity theory.
3. The adhesion force between water molecules and the walls of xylem vessels that keeps the water columns held continuously against gravity, which explains one principle of the cohesion - adhesion - transpiration pull theory.

(d) Water will not pass from inside the xylem vessel to its outside.

## 8 The functional suitability :

(a) Xylem vessels :

- Consist of a series of elongated cylindrical cells that are joined end to end and have opened ends, in order to allow the movement of water and salts from the root to the leaves for performing the photosynthesis process.
- Their walls consist of cellulose and lignin with a colloidal nature that has the ability to imbibe water, as well as lignin is impermeable to water and solutes.
- Their walls contain many pits that allow the passage of water from inside the vessel to its outside.
- Their lining contains strands of lignin in different shapes, such as spiral and annular, to support the vessel and prevent the inward collapse of its wall working on the plant support.

**(b) Tracheids :**

They are similar to xylem vessels, but each one of them consists of one cell with tapered end, and it is pitted more than the vessels, as well as the passage of water and salts through them is less than their passage in the xylem vessels.

**(c) The functional suitability of phloem :**

## • Sieve tubes :

- Elongated cells contain cytoplasmic threads, acting on transporting the ready-made food substances (sap) from the leaf to all the plant parts.
- They are separated from each other by perforated cross-walls "sieve plates" to allow the passage of cytoplasmic threads through them.

## • Companion cells :

Living cells, where each of them accompanies a sieve tube, they contain a large number of ribosomes and mitochondria to be able to organize the vital processes of sieve tubes and supply them with the energy needed for the transport process in the form of ATP molecules.

**9** Answer by yourself.**10** (a) • The function of structure no. (3) "collenchyma cells" :

- Have a supporting function.
- Perform photosynthesis process, if they contain chloroplasts.

## • The function of structure no. (5) "starch sheath" : storage of starch granules.

**(b) The non-living structures that are penetrated by living cells are :**

## 1. Xylem tissue that consists of :

- Non-living cells :
  - Structure no. (9) "secondary xylem".
  - Structure no. (12) "primary xylem".
- Living cells :
  - Structure no. (10) "xylem parenchyma".

## 2. Phloem tissue : "structure no. (7)" consists of sieve tubes "living cells" and companion cells "living cells".

**(c) Parenchymatous tissue is present in :**

- Epidermis layer "structure no. (2)".
- Parenchyma cells in the cortex layer "structure no. (4)".
- Pericycle "structure no. (6)".
- Phloem parenchyma "structure no. (7)".
- Xylem parenchyma "structure no. (10)".
- Medullary rays "structure no. (11)".
- Pith "structure no. (13)".

**11** As the cotton plant's stem contains :

- Collenchyma cells in the cortex layer that have a supporting function.
- Pericycle tissue in the vascular cylinder region which consists of parenchyma cells alternate with groups of fibrous cells, acting on strengthening the stem and making it erect.
- Xylem tissue, where the lining of its vessels and tracheids contains lignin which supports the stem.

**12** (a) The curve (AB) illustrates the inversely relationship between the diameter of xylem vessels and the height of water inside them, as when the diameter of xylem vessel decreases, the height of water inside it increases by the capillarity phenomenon.**(b)** Because the maximum height of water in the finest tube never exceeds 150 cm (1.5 m).**(c)** Water will not rise in the xylem vessel by capillarity phenomenon.**13** Because the hydrogen bonds work on the cohesion of water molecules with each other strongly inside the xylem vessels and tracheids, which keep the presence of water column inside the xylem vessels connected (continuous).**14** Because the walls of xylem vessels consist of cellulose and lignin with a colloidal nature that has the ability to imbibe water, helping in the adhesion force between water molecules and walls of xylem vessels, therefore it works on the presence of water columns held continuously.**15** The statement is wrong / As water transfers from the root to the leaves, according to the following arrangement : root hair - cortex - xylem - mesophyll tissue - stomata.



**16** Answer by yourself.

- 17** (a) • Cohesion force among the water molecules with each other inside the xylem vessels and tracheids.
- Adhesion force between water molecules and walls of xylem vessels.
  - Transpiration pull force that results from the continuous transpiration in the leaves.

(b) Answer by yourself.

- (c) The water comes out from the stump (exudation phenomenon), and this occurs due to the action of a pressure or force from the root "root pressure".

**18** (a) Air chambers of stomata in the leaf.

(b) Answer by yourself.

- (c) The high-energy organic compounds (carbohydrates, proteins and fats).

**19** **Transpiration process** / As plant physiologists had proved that the cohesion, adhesion and the pulling force that results from transpiration are the main forces that work on pulling water in the stem for high and long distances reaching about 100 m, while the maximum level of water in the finest xylem tube doesn't exceed 150 cm under the effect of capillarity phenomenon.

**20** **The statement is correct** / As the two scientists Thain and Canny could see long cytoplasmic threads carrying organic substances inside the sieve tube and extending from a tube to another through the pores of sieve plate, and this is called by "cytoplasmic streaming".

**21** The cytoplasmic streaming movement through the sieve tubes needs energy, where the transport process in phloem is active process which needs energy carrier compounds (ATP molecules) that are formed abundantly in the companion cells and transfer from them by the plasmodesmata that connects the cytoplasm of companion cell with the cytoplasm of sieve tube.

**22** Answer by yourself.

- 23** As the transport process of water and salts through the xylem vessels is affected by :
- The root pressure which is affected rapidly by the external factors.
  - The pulling force that is arisen from transpiration and affected by external factors, such as temperature, humidity and light.

As well as the transport process of organic substances in the phloem is affected by external factors, such as temperature and oxygen.

- 24** Because decreasing the temperature or the shortage of oxygen in the cells slows down the movement of cytoplasm and its streaming in the sieve tubes.

## Answers of Chapter 2 Lesson Two

### First Answers of Multiple Choice Questions

- 1** (d) Atrio-ventricular node → His fibers → Purkinje fibers → Wall of ventricles.
- 2** (c) (3).
- 3** (c)
- 4** (a) Pulmonary vein.
- 5** (b) They are present at the connection of the heart with the superior and inferior venae cavae.
- 6** (c) The release of the contraction impulse from the sino-atrial node / Contraction of two atria / Contraction of two ventricles / Relaxation of two ventricles
- 7** (c) Blood vessels contain valves.
- 8** (d) (2) & (3) only.
- 9** (a) Deoxygenated / Thick / Small
- 10** (d) It carries deoxygenated blood.
- 11** (c) Vein – Blood capillary – Artery.
- 12** (d) Their wall contains tiny pores.
- 13** (a) (1).
- 14** (b) blood with high pressure.
- 15** (c) (Z).
- 16** (b) Aorta – Pulmonary vein – Renal artery.
- 17** (a) resembles its type in animal (X).  
As the circulatory system in animal (X) is a closed system, as the heart and the blood vessels are connected together in a complete ring. So, the blood didn't come out to the body cavity.

- 18** (d) The contraction of the lower side of heart is delayed than that of the upper side.

As the contraction impulse connects directly from the sino-atrial node to the two atria muscles (the upper side of heart). So, it contracts firstly, then the contraction impulse reaches the two ventricles muscles (the lower side of heart) from the atrio-ventricular node through His fibers, and spread from the inter-ventricular septum to the wall of both ventricles through Purkinje fibers. So, the contraction of the lower side of heart is delayed than that of the upper side.

- 19** (a) foot to heart.

As the blood vessel contains a valve which is a vein carrying deoxygenated blood, whose branched ends pour at the inferior vena cava which pours at the heart. While the blood that passes through the hepatic portal vein, its passage is from the intestine to the liver not vice versa, as the blood reaches the kidney and the two lungs by the arteries which are devoid of valves.

- 20** (b) (1) & (3).

As vessel no. (3) carries deoxygenated blood from the body parts to enter the heart which pumps it through vessel no. (1) to the two lungs, as the process of exchanging gases takes place.

- 21** (1) (d) It carries oxygenated blood.

As the direction of the blood in this vessel is upward in the arm to reach the heart, which represents a vein that carries deoxygenated blood, contains valves and not pulsating.

- (2) (b) It carries deoxygenated blood.

As the direction of the blood in this vessel is downward in the arm away from the heart, which represents an artery that carries oxygenated blood under high blood pressure.

- 22** (b) glucose, oxygen and carbon dioxide

As the cell gets its need from glucose (X) that is found in the blood plasma, and oxygen (Y) is from the red blood cells haemoglobin (oxyhaemoglobin), while carbon dioxide (Z) comes out to bind with the haemoglobin (carbo-aminohaemoglobin).

- 23** (c) Amino acids.

As when the blood passes through the blood capillary to be poured at the end in the hepatic portal vein, the absorption of amino acids from the villi that are present in the wall of the small intestine will be continued. So, their concentration increases at point (Y) than at point (X). While starch is a complex substance can't be absorbed, urea is an excretory substance and the concentration of oxygen decreases with continuing its passage through the blood capillary.

- 24** (c) (2) & (3).

As vessel no. (2) carries oxygenated blood which comes from the blood capillaries of the two lungs which represents the veins, while vessel no. (3) carries deoxygenated blood that comes from the different body parts. So, it represents veins, and the veins carry blood at low pressures.

- 25** (a) Glucose, hormones and urea.

- 26** (d) Two lungs.

- 27** (a) Red blood corpuscles.

- 28** (b) the blood liquidity (haemophilia).

- 29** (a)

- 30** (b) The rate of coagulation occurrence when exposed to blood bleeding.

- 31** (d) Fibrinogen.

- 32** (c) vitamin (K).

- 33** (d) Because they obstruct the movement of blood in normal manner.

- 34** (d) Breaking down of blood platelets inside the blood vessel.

- 35** (c) Prothrombin and heparin.

- 36** (a) Transferring of oxygen.

- 37** (d) Fibrin.

- 38** (b) Arteries of the right arm.

- 39** (b) The number of WBCs.

- 40** (c) Plasma / Red and white blood corpuscles and blood platelets

As the red and white blood corpuscles and blood platelets are high density components. So, they settle down in the tube due to the centrifugation process, while the plasma is a low density component. So, it floats on the surface.



- 41 © The two statements are correct.

As the blood in its normal state contains various group of soluble proteins in plasma, such as : albumin, globulin and fibrinogen. While in case of a blood clot the blood contains an insoluble protein called fibrin.

- 42 a The increase in the number of RBCs.

As when the distance from the sea level increases, the percentage of oxygen decreases in the atmosphere, which leads to increasing the number of RBCs to transfer the highest amount of oxygen required for the body.

- 43 a the artery and mixing with heparin substance.

As the artery contains the red blood corpuscles that carry the oxygenated blood and to avoid the measuring mistakes, the sample is mixed with heparin substance to avoid the blood coagulation.

- 44 © White blood corpuscles.

As the white blood corpuscles attack the microbes. So, their number increases in the presence of an inflammation.

- 45 © The two statements are correct.

As the liver secretes :

- The prothrombin protein by the help of vitamin (K) to be poured in the blood, then changed into thrombin in the presence of thromboplastin, calcium ions and coagulation factors, then thrombin stimulates the process of converting fibrinogen into fibrin. So, the blood clot is formed.
- The heparin substance which prevents the conversion of prothrombin into thrombin, therefore the blood isn't coagulated inside the blood vessels in its normal state.

- 46 © suffers from anemia.

As the percentage of plasma that found in the blood is more than 54%, which means a decrease in the number of the red blood corpuscles, therefore a decrease in the haemoglobin level in blood which leads to the occurrence of anemia.

- 47 © 2.9 L

∴ The percentage of plasma that found in blood is 54%

∴ The amount of plasma that found in blood  

$$= \frac{6 \times 54}{100} = 3.24 \text{ liters}$$

∴ Water represents 90% of the plasma volume.

∴ The amount of water that found in blood  

$$= \frac{90 \times 3.24}{100} = 2.9 \text{ liters}$$

- 48 (1) (b) (2).

As food substance no.(2) contains the highest amount of iron that enters in the formation of the haemoglobin substance of the red blood cells which transports oxygen from the two lungs to all the body parts through the blood circulation.

- (2) a (4).

As food substance no.(4) contains the highest amount of calcium which is needed for the conversion of the prothrombin substance into thrombin, which is one of the steps of the blood clot formation in the regions that exposed to wounds.

- 49 d (D).

As direction (D) represents oxygenated blood comes from the heart to arteries, arterioles, then to this blood capillary. So, the pressure will be higher than the other points, then the gases exchange process occurs with the cells to make the deoxygenated blood reach point (A) under a slightly low pressure to pass through the venules, veins, then to one of the venae cavae.

- 50 b

As the heartbeats rate (number of heartbeats) increases gradually after waking up till reaches its normal rate.

- 51 (1) © (C).

(2) a (A).

(3) b (1) / (2) / (4) / (3)

At stage (A) the ventricle is full of blood. So, it contracts and closes the mitral valve at point (3) and the blood pressure increases to let the blood pass through the aortic valve which opens at point (1), then closes again at point (2), as the ventricle relaxes and empties the blood at the end of stage (C) and opens the mitral valve at point (4) again.

- 52 © The contraction of left ventricle.

As the aortic valve opens at point (X) and the blood transfers from the left ventricle to the aorta, due to the contraction of the left ventricle muscles.

- 53 © Y / Z / X

As starting from the arteries till reaching the blood capillaries the surface area increases



gradually (as the summation of the cross-sectional area of the blood capillaries is greater than the cross-sectional area of the artery where they branched from). So, the speed of the blood flow decreases, and from the blood capillaries till reaching veins, the surface area decreases gradually. So, the speed of the blood flow increases. While the blood pressure is maximum at arteries till reaching its minimum level at blood capillaries and veins.

## Second Answers of Miscellaneous Questions

- 1 • **Mesentery** : it is a membrane that joins the folds of the small intestine in the digestive system.
- **Pericardium membrane** : it is a membrane that surrounds the heart and works on its protection and facilitating its movement.
- 2 The statement is correct / As the heart valves allow the blood to pass in one direction only.
- 3 Blood will return back from the two ventricles to the two atria, as the valves work on preventing the backflow of blood to the two atria, therefore a disturbance occurs in the blood circulation.
- 4 Answer by yourself.
- 5 (a) (A) : aortic valve "semi-lunar valve".  
(B) : left bicuspid "mitral" valve.  
(C) : right tricuspid valve.  
(D) : pulmonary valve "semi-lunar valve".  
(b) (1) : oxygenated blood / under low pressure.  
(2) : oxygenated blood / under high pressure.  
(3) : deoxygenated blood / under high pressure.  
(4) : deoxygenated blood / under low pressure.  
(c)

The structure no. (6) "Right ventricle"	The structure no. (7) "Left ventricle"
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It carries deoxygenated blood.</li> <li>• Its wall is less thick.</li> <li>• It is separated from the right atrium by a tricuspid valve.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It carries oxygenated blood.</li> <li>• Its wall is more thick.</li> <li>• It is separated from the left atrium by a bicuspid valve.</li> </ul>

(d) By changing the physical or psychological states, where the structure no. (5) "sino-atrial node" is connected with a nerve "sympathetic" that increases the rate of heartbeats gradually after waking up, in states of joy and when performing a vigorous physical effort.

- 6 The heartbeats can be differentiated into two sounds, as follows :
  - Long and low-pitched (Lubb) sound, as a result of the closure of two valves between the atria and ventricles, during the ventricular contraction.
  - Short and high-pitched (Dupp) sound, as a result of the closure of the aortic and pulmonary valves, during the ventricular relaxation.
- 7 To protect them from any damage, as even a minor damage in the arteries may result in the loss of a great amount of blood, due to the high blood pressure in the arteries which is higher than the veins.
- 8 To bear the blood pressure, whereas the artery carries blood from the heart to all the body parts during the contraction of two ventricles, while the vein carries blood from the different body cells to the heart.
- 9 (a) • Vein.
  - **The reasons :**
    1. The blood is directed upward (in the direction of the heart).
    2. The presence of valves in it.
  - (b) When the two muscles contract, the blood is pushed upward and the valves prevent its backflow in the opposite direction.
  - (c) The contraction of the two muscles leads to an increase in the rate of heartbeats, where the change in the physical state "performing effort" is followed by an increase in the number of heartbeats by the action of the nerve "sympathetic" that is connected with the sino-atrial node which is considered the pacemaker of the heart.
  - (d) • The presence of valves inside the vein.
    - The muscles that surround the vein.

**10** Because of the increased blood pressure in it more than that in the vein, therefore its difficult to be healed after injury.

**11** (a) (X) : artery. (Y) : vein.

(b) • The inner layer of vessel (X).

• Their presence is rare in vessel (Y).

**12** Due to the presence of valves in some veins that allow the passage of blood in the direction of the heart and prevent its backflow, such as the veins that are present in limbs which are near to the skin surface and the presence of the muscles that surround these veins.

**13**

Pulmonary vein	Pulmonary artery
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It carries oxygenated blood.</li> <li>• The oxygenated blood inside it moves from the two lungs to the left atrium of the heart.</li> <li>• Its wall is less thick.</li> <li>• Not pulsated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It carries deoxygenated blood.</li> <li>• The deoxygenated blood moves from the right ventricle of the heart to the two lungs.</li> <li>• Its wall is more thick.</li> <li>• Pulsated.</li> </ul>

**14** The blood will return back in the veins and will not be directed towards the heart, because the valves always work on the passage of the blood in one direction, so that a disturbance in the blood circulation will occur.

**15** (a) • The walls of structure no. (2) "blood capillaries" are thin and the presence of tiny pores among their cells help in the rapid exchange of substances between the blood and tissues' cells.

• Structure no. (2) "blood capillaries" spread in the spaces between the cells of all the body tissues to supply them with their requirements of food and oxygen.

(b) It spreads in the spaces among the cells of all body tissues.

(c) 1. Structure no. (1) "artery".

2. Structure no. (3) "vein".

(d) 10 mm Hg.

**16** The statement is correct / As some veins contain valves that allow the passage of blood in the direction of heart and prevent its backflow, such as the veins that are present in limbs and near to the skin surface.

**17** Each of them has thin wall.

**18** The individual will be infected with anemia which is accompanied by a decrease in the haemoglobin efficiency in transporting oxygen from the two lungs to all the body parts, and transporting carbon dioxide from all the body parts to the two lungs.

**19** The percentage of haemoglobin in red blood corpuscles will decrease below the normal percentage (level), whereas haemoglobin consists of protein and iron, leading to the infection of the person with anemia disease.

**20** As the prothrombin (protein secreted by the liver with the help of vitamin (K) and poured in the blood) has a role in the formation of blood clot, where it is converted into thrombin in the presence of thromboplastin, calcium ions and clotting factors, while fibrinogen (soluble protein in the blood plasma) is converted into fibrin in the presence of thrombin enzyme.

**21** The liver secretes prothrombin protein by the help of vitamin (K) and pours it in the blood to be converted into thrombin that has an important role in the formation of blood clot, when the blood vessel is cut or teared.

**22** Oxygen gas ( $O_2$ ).

**23** Answer by yourself.

**24** As fibrin protein is insoluble in blood plasma, it precipitates in the form of a network of microscopic interlacing fibers in which the blood cells are aggregated, forming a clot which blocks the cut in the damaged blood vessel to stop the bleeding.



**25** The liver secretes the prothrombin protein by the help of vitamin (K) and pours it in the blood, then it is converted into thrombin in the presence of thromboplastin, calcium ions and clotting factors, then it stimulates the conversion process of fibrinogen into fibrin, therefore the blood clot is formed.

**26** (a) Answer by yourself.

(b) 1. Protecting blood from bleeding that may lead to death.

2. Protecting the body from the invasion of microbes and pathogens in the site of injury or the cut blood vessel.

(c) Thrombin enzyme / It stimulates the conversion process of fibrinogen into fibrin, forming the blood clot that blocks the opening of the cut blood vessel to stop the bleeding.

**27** As the deposition of some types of lipids (that result from the digestion of fatty food) inside the blood vessels, leads to the formation of rough surface which obstructs the flow of blood inside the blood vessels in a normal manner, therefore it stimulates the formation of blood clot inside the blood vessel.

**28** Figure no. (2) represents the systolic blood pressure, and figure no. (1) represents the diastolic blood pressure / Because the level of mercury column is higher in figure no. (2) which represents the maximum blood pressure "systolic".

**29** The statement is wrong / The maximum blood pressure is in the arteries that are present close to the heart, where the ventricles contraction (heart beating) leads to increasing the blood pressure.

**30** It means that the number 110 mm Hg indicates the blood pressure when the two ventricles contract, while the number 70 mm Hg indicates the blood pressure when the two ventricles relax.

**31** (a) • Figure (X) represents the maximum value of blood pressure.

• Figure (Y) represents the minimum value of blood pressure.

(b) The sound in (X) is long and low-pitched (Lubb), while the sound in (Y) is short and high-pitched (Dupp).

**32** (a) • At point (X) : the blood pressure increases inside the artery when the two ventricles contract within a heartbeat.

• At point (Y) : the blood pressure decreases inside the artery when the two ventricles relax within a heartbeat.

(b) The blood pressure decreases gradually, as we go far from the arteries that are near to the heart, till reaching the minimum value in the venules and blood capillaries (10 mm Hg).

(c) To allow the exchange of gases, digested food substances and excretory substances easily between the blood that is present in the blood capillaries and body cells.

(d) As the walls of blood capillaries are very thin and consist of one cellular layer that consists of one row of thin epithelial cells, so that the blood passes very slowly through them, in order not to rupture the blood capillaries and to prevent the occurrence of bleeding.

**33** As the occurrence of bleeding leads to the loss of large amount of blood, leading to a decrease in the blood level in the body, therefore the blood pressure decreases.

## Answers of Chapter 2 Lesson Three

### First Answers of Multiple Choice Questions

- 1 (c) left ventricle.
- 2 (b) Aortic valve.
- 3 (b) (2).
- 4 (a) The pressure of aorta increases.
- 5 (d) The closure of the pulmonary valve.
- 6 (a) 1
- 7 (d) The two ventricles are filled with blood at the same time.
- 8 (b) Opening of atrio-ventricular valves.
- 9 (b) Two times.
- 10 (b) Pulmonary artery.
- 11 (c) Aorta.
- 12 (c) The opening of semi-lunar valve and the closure of tricuspid valve.

- 13 (a) (1) & (2).
- 14 (b) The closure of mitral valve and opening of aortic valve.
- 15 (1) (c) Transporting the deoxygenated blood from the heart to the two lungs.  
(2) (d) Inferior vena cava.
- 16 (b) (X)  $\rightarrow$  (Z)  $\rightarrow$  (Y)  $\rightarrow$  (L).
- 17 (a) Superior vena cava / Aorta.
- 18 (1) (a) Glucose.  
(2) (b) carbo-aminohaemoglobin.  
(3) (c) upper part of inferior vena cava.
- 19 (c)
- 20 (1) (c) (6)  $\rightarrow$  (7)  $\rightarrow$  (8)  $\rightarrow$  (5).  
(2) (b) Liver.
- 21 (c) Hepatic portal vein.
- 22 (c) (W)  $\rightarrow$  (X)  $\rightarrow$  (Z)  $\rightarrow$  (Y)
- 23 (c) The two statements are correct.
- 24 (c) Bone marrow.
- 25 (b)
- 26 (a) 2
- 27 (d) Oxygen / Carbon dioxide
- 28 (a) Calcium ions.
- 29 (d) (1), (2), (3) and (4).
- 30 (a) ✓ / ✓ / ✓
- 31 (c) 3
- 32 (d) Two atria / Right ventricle / Left ventricle.  
As the thickness of the heart chamber depends on the distance where the blood is pumped to, as the left ventricle pushes the blood from the heart to all the body parts (long distance). So, it will be the thickest and the right ventricle pushes the blood from the heart to the lungs (shorter distance). So, it will be less thick than the left ventricle, while the two atria push the blood to the adjacent two ventricles only. So, they will be the thinner.
- 33 (a) Left atrium.  
As the nicotine enters with the inhaled air to the two lungs and after the gases exchange process, it takes the pathway of the pulmonary circulation to reach the left atrium with the oxygenated blood through the pulmonary veins.

- 34 (b) Left ventricle  $\rightarrow$  Aorta  $\rightarrow$  Renal artery.  
As the oxygenated blood enters the kidney through the renal artery. So, the red blood corpuscle pathway starts from the left ventricle to aorta, then to the renal artery.
- 35 (c) Vena cava.  
As the veins carry deoxygenated blood (contain the highest level of carbon dioxide) and under low pressure than the arteries.
- 36 (b) Pulmonary and aortic valves.  
As the two ventricles contract at the same time. So, the pulmonary valve opens to permit the blood passage to the pulmonary artery and the aortic valve permit the passage of the blood to the aorta, while the remaining choices include the opening of one of the valves that is synchronized with the closure of the other valve and vice versa with the contraction and relaxation of the heart chambers.
- 37 (b) Mitral and aortic valves.  
As the mitral (bicuspid) valve permits the passage of the oxygenated blood that comes from the two lungs through the pulmonary veins to the left atrium to enter to the left ventricle during the contraction of the left atrium, as the aortic valve permits the passage of the oxygenated blood to pass from the left ventricle to the aorta during the contraction of the left ventricle.
- 38 (b) (L)  $\rightarrow$  (X)  $\rightarrow$  (Z).  
As stage (L) represents reaching the blood to the two ventricles, as with their contraction the semi-lunar valves open and the blood is pumped in stage (X), then the oxygenated blood is distributed through the aorta to the different body parts and the deoxygenated blood is distributed through the pulmonary artery to the two lungs with closing of the atrio-ventricular valves to prevent the backflow of blood which is represented by stage (Z).
- 39 (d) Foot  $\rightarrow$  Heart  $\rightarrow$  Two lungs  
 $\rightarrow$  Heart  $\rightarrow$  Arm.  
As the deoxygenated blood passes from the foot veins till reaching the inferior vena cava at the end which pours in the right atrium of the heart to be pumped after that by the right ventricle to



pass through the pulmonary artery to the two lungs, then returns to the left atrium of the heart oxygenated, after that it is pumped by the left ventricle to the aorta which distributes the blood to the different body parts including the arm.

- 40** (1) (C) (L)  $\rightarrow$  (Z)  $\rightarrow$  (Y)  $\rightarrow$  (X).  
 (2) (a) (X).

As stage (L) represents the reaching of the deoxygenated blood to the right atrium through the vena cava followed by stage (Z), as the blood is pumped by the right ventricle to the two lungs through the pulmonary artery, and followed by stage (Y) which represents the reaching of the oxygenated blood to the left atrium through the pulmonary veins till reaching the left ventricle to be pumped by stage (X), as it is the strongest stage of pumping blood by the heart, as it pushes the blood to all the body parts through the aorta.

- 41** (C) Small intestine.

As amino acids and glucose are absorbed from the small intestine to pass through the blood route that includes veins carrying deoxygenated blood in its pathway, which contains a high percentage of carbon dioxide and low percentage of oxygen.

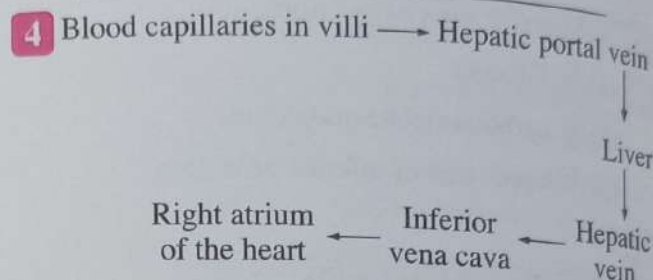
## Second Answers of Miscellaneous Questions

- 1** As aorta pushes the oxygenated blood from heart to all the body parts (i.e. to long distance). So, it needs higher blood pressure, while the pulmonary artery pushes the deoxygenated blood from heart to the two lungs (i.e. to short distance), so that it needs lower blood pressure.

**2**

Bicuspid valve	Tricuspid valve
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lies between the left atrium and left ventricle.</li> <li>Allows the passage of blood (oxygenated) from the left atrium to the left ventricle in one direction and prevents its return back to the left atrium again.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lies between the right atrium and right ventricle.</li> <li>Allows the passage of blood (deoxygenated) from the right atrium to the right ventricle in one direction and prevents its return back to the right atrium again.</li> </ul>

- 3** As the food (glucose and amino acids) that is absorbed from the small intestine passes first to the liver, in order to filter some food substances that exceed the body needs, therefore some changes occur inside the liver, where the monosaccharides, such as glucose are converted into polysaccharides stored in the form of glycogen.



- 5** (a) Some changes occur to them in the liver, where the monosaccharides, such as glucose are converted into polysaccharides stored in the form of glycogen that is stored in the liver.  
 (b) Pancreas, spleen and stomach.  
 (c) The blood vessel no. (3) "Hepatic portal vein".

- 6** Answer by yourself.

- 7** (a) • Hepatic portal circulation.  
 • Monosaccharides (as glucose) and amino acids.  
 (b) • Lymphatic route.  
 • Glycerol and fatty acids.  
 (c) The blood vessel no. (1) "Hepatic portal vein".  
 (d) • The blood vessel no. (2) "Hepatic vein" pours in the inferior vena cava.  
 • The "lymphatic vessel" no. (4) pours in the superior vena cava.

- 8** (a) 1. No. (4).  
 2. No. (1) & (2).  
 3. No. (4).  
 (b) & (c) : (X).  
 (d) • The type of blood in the blood vessel no. (2) "Aorta" : oxygenated blood.  
 • The type of blood in the blood vessel no. (7) "Pulmonary artery" : deoxygenated blood.



**9** The body will not be able to destroy the microbes that attack it, and couldn't filterate the lymph from the microbes before its transfer into the bloodstream that passed in the superior vena cava, so that it causes the spreading of microbes inside the body and exposing it to the infectious diseases.

**10** Spleen has a great importance in the circulatory system, as new white blood corpuscles are formed continuously inside it and the red blood corpuscles are destroyed after ending their age, as well as it has a great importance in the lymphatic system, where it is considered one of the most important lymphatic organs in the body that is responsible for the production of antibodies to destroy the microbes and providing the body with immunity.

**11** (a) The defensive ability of the body will decrease, where structure no. (1) "spleen" is considered from the most important lymphatic organs in the body that are responsible for providing the body its immunity.

(b) The production of white blood corpuscles from structure no. (2) "lymphatic nodes" will increase, when the body is exposed to an infection to destroy the microbe that causes the disease.

(c) The fluid (lymph) that is present in structure no. (3) "lymphatic vessels" contains all the components of plasma, in addition to a large number of white blood corpuscles.

## Answers of Test on Chapter

**2**

**1** (c) The ventricles relax.

**2** (a) right atrium.

**3** (d) Its wall is thick.

**4** (b) transfers gases to it from the surrounding medium by diffusion.

**5** (d) Vitamin (K).

**7** (b) B

**9** (b) (2).

**11** (b) (B).

**6** (d) D

**8** (d) D

**10** (c) BC

**12** (a)

**13** (c) (C).

**14** (c) Hepatic portal vein.

**15** (c) Q & R

**16** (c) Aeration and storage.

**17** (d) 130

**18** (b) Adhesion force.

**19** (c) Blood plasma.

**20** (c) Bicarbonate.

**21** (c) Transpiration process and transporting of ready-made food decreases.

**22** The WBCs count will increase when exposed to an injury as a result of the infection which caused due to the invasion of microbes.

**23** As the lymphatic system is considered a transport system, because the lymphatic vessels carry the absorbed food substances (fatty acids, glycerol and fat soluble vitamins) and pass them to the superior vena cava then to the heart. Also, it is considered an immune system, because it produces antibodies and the lymph has a large number of WBCs. So, it plays a major role in the defensive ability.

**24** Both of them contain parenchyma cells.

**25** (a) • The components in blood vessel no. (1) : "artery" :  $O_2$  "oxyhaemoglobin".

• The components in blood vessel no. (2) "vein" :  $CO_2$  "carbo-aminohaemoglobin".

(b) • In blood vessel no. (1) : from the heart to the body parts.

• In blood vessel no. (2) : from the body parts to the heart.

**26** (a) An artificial valve (tricuspid valve) / It allows the passage of blood in one direction only from the right atrium to the right ventricle and prevents its backflow in the opposite direction.

(b) (Z) : downwards to the right ventricle.

(L) : upwards to the right atrium.

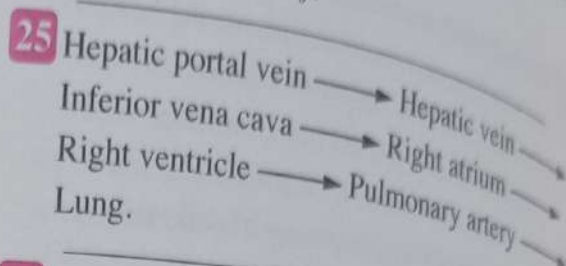
**27** Water won't be absorbed by osmosis and salts won't be absorbed by diffusion, therefore the plant will die and the root pressure becomes equal to the water column pressure.

- 1 (c) Increasing of transporting rate.
- 2 (b) bicuspid
- 3 (c) cambium tissue.
- 4 (c) brain to heart.
- 5 (b)
- 6 (b) the 2 ventricles would stop the contracting.
- 7 (a) The statement is incorrect, because the stem cortex also can take part in photosynthesis process.
- 8 (d) Having small pores that facilitate the exchange of substances between blood and cells of tissues.
- 9 (d) blood capillaries
- 10 (a) the level of glucose in the blood.
- 11 (a) They contain many mitochondria that provide energy via cellular respiration.
- 12 (b) (B).
- 13 (c) In the two lungs.
- 14 (d) The innermost row of cells in cortex.
- 15 (b) Pulmonary valve and aortic valve.
- 16 (a) Right atrium.
- 17 (b) Osmosis.
- 18 (a) Superior vena cava.
- 19 (d) Cambium.
- 20 (c) Pulmonary vein.
- 21 (b)

**22** Red blood cells are adapted for the transport of oxygen. They are small and flexible, so they can fit through narrow vessels, have a bi-concave shape which maximises their surface area to absorb oxygen, have a thin membrane, so gases easily diffuse through them, and contain haemoglobin which binds to oxygen.

**23** As blood flows normally inside the blood vessels without slowing down. Blood platelets slide easily and smoothly inside the blood vessels without being broken. Besides, the presence of heparin substance that is secreted by the liver and prevents the conversion of prothrombin into thrombin.

**24** Answer by yourself.



**26** The statement is correct / where :

- It secretes heparin substance that prevents the conversion of prothrombin into thrombin that prevents the formation of blood clots.
- Also, it secretes the prothrombin with the help of vitamin K that is converted into thrombin (an active enzyme) which consequently converts the fibrinogen (soluble protein in plasma) into fibrin (insoluble protein in plasma).

**27** Blood has an immunization function, as it contains white blood corpuscles which are a type of leucocytes whose function is the protection of the body against the infectious diseases. Lymph also contains a large number of leucocytes that work on protecting the body against any infection.



**First** Answers of Multiple Choice Questions

- 1 (1) (a) Energy. (2) (a) (X).
- 2 (c) They transfer the energy easily to perform the function of the cell.
- 3 (c) Number of phosphate groups.
- 4 (c) Fructose 1,6-diphosphate.
- 5 (b) Photosynthesis process.
- 6 (a) ATP
- 7 (d) pyruvic acid
- 8 (b) 6
- 9 (b) 8
- 10 (b) (2C)
- 11 (a) 4
- 12 (c) Two molecules.
- 13 (d) Dark reactions in stroma.
- 14 (d) Four times.
- 15 (b) (2) and (4).
- 16 (b) (2C)
- 17 (c) Oxidation by losing electrons.
- 18 (d) Phosphoglyceraldehyde.

As when the oxidation of phosphoglyceraldehyde to pyruvic acid occurs, the ADP molecules combine with phosphate groups which are lost by the phosphoglyceraldehyde molecule to be converted into ATP molecules.

19 (c) 3

As the conversion of one molecule of pyruvic acid into acetyl group includes the production of one NADH molecule which gives 3 ATP molecules.

20 (d) By losing electrons from glucose.

21 (b) 9

22 (1) (d)  $O_2$  / ATP /  $H_2O$  /  $CO_2$

(2) (a) Coenzymes oxidation.

(3) (a) 1

23 (c) It moves outwards.

24 (c) Before and during Krebs cycle.

25 (a) Bean.

26 (c) No change / Inflate

27 (b)  $NAD^+$

28 (b) 34

29 (c) In mitochondria and cytosole.

30 (c) A sequence of oxidation and reduction reactions.

31 (a) Glycolysis.

32 (a) Glycolysis.

33 (a) 2

34 (b) 19 : 1

35 (a) pyruvic acid.

36 (c) Water.

37 (a) Zero.

38 (d) The formation of lactic acid from pyruvic acid.

39 (a) 10 and 2

40 (c) 4

41 (c) The remaining of energy stored in the pyruvic acid.

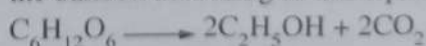
As a large amount of energy is released when a bigger number of bonds are broken down among carbon atoms in the organic compound, and in the anaerobic respiration a large amount of energy is remained stored in the bonds among 3 carbon atoms in pyruvic acid before its conversion to lactic acid, while in the aerobic respiration a complete breaking down of bonds occurs among the carbon atoms in the glucose molecule to finally produce carbon dioxide and water.

42 (c) (3).

As at the end of the race, the muscle resorts to the anaerobic respiration, as it consumes all the oxygen that is present in it and resorts to reducing the pyruvic acid into lactic acid till reaching the maximum amount at point (3), and when the oxygen is present after the end of the race the lactic acid is oxidized into pyruvic acid again to complete the aerobic respiration. So, the lactic acid decreases.

43 (c) The volume of balloon no. (3) is greater than that of no. (1) and (2).

As in balloon no. (3) alcoholic fermentation occurs to the glucose which produces carbon dioxide gas which increases the volume of the balloon according to this equation :

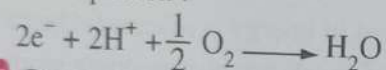


44 (a) from alcoholic fermentation is greater than that from the acidic fermentation.

As in the acidic fermentation 3 carbon compound (lactic acid) is produced, while in the alcoholic fermentation a 2 carbon compound (ethyl alcohol) is produced, i.e. in the alcoholic fermentation a breakdown of a larger number of bonds among the carbon atoms in the pyruvic acid occurs to produce a molecule of carbon dioxide. So, the number of the resulted kilocalories from the breaking down of the ATP molecules in the alcoholic fermentation is greater than the acidic fermentation, but the energy produced from both of them is smaller than the energy produced from aerobic respiration.

**45** (b) 2

As NADH is converted into  $\text{NAD}^+$ . So, two electrons are lost which are carried by NADH and combine at the end with a pair of  $\text{H}^+$ , then with an oxygen atom to form water according to this equation :



**46** (b) 15

As the pyruvic acid converts into acetyl group which produces one molecule of NADH which gives 3 ATP molecules, and the acetyl group combines with the CoA to perform Krebs cycle once and produces :

- 3 NADH molecules that give 9 ATP molecules.
- One  $\text{FADH}_2$  molecule that gives 2 ATP molecules.
- One ATP molecule directly.

So, the number of the resulted ATP molecules is 15 molecules.

**47** (b)

As completing the cellular respiration reactions require the presence of the respiratory enzymes and the enzymes are sensitive to the thermal changes, as they are protein substances. So, their activity is determined in a small temperature ranges that include an optimum temperature as the efficiency of the enzyme action decreases either by increasing or decreasing from this temperature.

**48** (c) The two statements are correct.

As the muscle cells resort to the anaerobic respiration after consuming all the oxygen amount that is found in it, as the anaerobic respiration occurs after the aerobic one, as in case

of the presence of oxygen during the anaerobic respiration the lactic acid is oxidized to pyruvic acid again, then to CoA to complete the aerobic respiration stages and produce energy.

## Second Answers of Miscellaneous Questions

**1** Because the majority of living organisms' cells use the glucose molecule to produce energy more than using any other available food molecule.

**2**

ATP	ADP
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adenosine triphosphate.</li> <li>• It consists of : adenine base - ribose sugar - three phosphate groups.</li> <li>• When ATP is converted into ADP, an amount of energy is released.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adenosine diphosphate.</li> <li>• It consists of : adenine base - ribose sugar - two phosphate groups.</li> <li>• When ADP is converted into ATP, an amount of energy is stored.</li> </ul>

**3** As the cellular respiration occurs either in the presence, absence or lack of oxygen at the body temperature ( $37^\circ\text{C}$ ), producing an energy that is stored in the form of ATP molecules, while the occurrence of burning process requires the presence of oxygen at high temperature to oxidize the organic substances, producing energy that is not stored.

**4** Because energy is released rapidly from each ATP molecule, when it loses a phosphate group to change into an ADP molecule, and this occurs when the cell needs energy.

**5** The statement is correct / As when breaking down the bond that is present between the two phosphate groups, ATP molecule changes into ADP and an amount of energy is released.

**6** Because glycolysis stage is the first step in aerobic respiration and anaerobic respiration and it doesn't require the presence of oxygen, so that it occurs in case of the presence or absence of oxygen to produce energy.



**7** The statement is correct / As proteins are digested into amino acids which are broken to form acetyl groups that combine with the coenzyme (A) to join the Krebs cycle.

**8** The acetyl groups will not be transferred to the reactions of Krebs cycle, so that the reactions of aerobic respiration will stop.

**9** (a) • Starch in plant cells.

• Glycogen in animal cells.

(b) Glycolysis / In the cytosole.

(c) They are carried on  $\text{NAD}^+$  and FAD molecules to enter in the electron transport chain, in order to release energy from them.

**10** 4 coenzymes (3  $\text{NADH}$ , 1  $\text{FADH}_2$ ).

**11** The statement is wrong / As the number of ATP molecules that are formed in one Krebs cycle equals one ATP molecule, i.e. when Krebs cycle is repeated for 4 times, 4 molecules of ATP will be produced directly.

**12** To remove the electrons that are received by FAD and  $\text{NAD}^+$  molecules, in order to transport them to the cytochromes to release the energy required for producing ATP molecules, leading to an increase in the released energy.

**13**

$\text{NAD}^+$	NADP
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Coenzyme is present in the mitochondria and cytoplasm.</li> <li>• Receives hydrogen (<math>\text{H}_2</math>), forming <math>\text{NADH}</math> compound.</li> </ul> $\text{NAD}^+ + \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Reduction}} \text{NADH} + \text{H}^+$ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Receives the electrons that are removed from the oxidation of carbon atoms during the group of reactions of cellular respiration to transport them to the cytochromes for releasing the energy required to produce ATP</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Coenzyme is present in the chloroplasts.</li> <li>• Receives hydrogen (<math>\text{H}_2</math>), forming <math>\text{NADPH}_2</math> compound.</li> </ul> $\text{NADP} + \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Reduction}} \text{NADPH}_2$ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Carries the hydrogen required to reduce <math>\text{CO}_2</math> for forming carbohydrates during the dark reactions in photosynthesis process.</li> </ul>

**14** Due to the absence of cytochromes.

**15** The case no. (2) / It represents the electron transport chain, because the cytochromes that are present in the inner membrane of mitochondria carry the electrons at different energy levels.

**16** Answer by yourself.

**17** The statement is wrong / As the oxidation of 1 glucose molecule during electron transport chain produces 34 ATP molecules, therefore the oxidation of 3 molecules of glucose during the electron transport chain produces 102 molecules of ATP

**18** As some living organisms can obtain energy from food (glucose) molecule in the absence or lack of oxygen by the help of a group of enzymes through the anaerobic respiration (fermentation), as in yeast and bacteria.

**19** 2 molecules of lactic acid.

**20** (a) • W : maltose. • X : glucose.  
 • Y : pyruvic acid. • Z : lactic acid.  
 • (1) : digestion. • (2) : glycolysis.  
 • (3) : acidic fermentation.

(b) • The number of carbon atoms decreases into half, on the occurrence of :

- Step no. (1) : because of the digestion of maltose molecule (disaccharide) by the action of maltase enzyme and the formation of 2 molecules of glucose (monosaccharide).
- Step no. (2) : because of the glycolysis of glucose molecule into 2 molecules of pyruvic acid.

(c) • The presence of maltase enzyme and an alkaline medium ( $\text{pH} = 8$ ) to accomplish step no. (1).  
 • The presence of 2 molecules of ATP to accomplish step no. (2).  
 • The presence of a group of enzymes to accomplish step no. (3) in the absence or lack of oxygen.

(d) 4 ATP molecules.

**21** As the acetyl groups that are resulted from the breaking down of the fatty acids and amino acids molecules can combine with the coenzyme (A) and join the Krebs cycle, then the electron transport chain without forming pyruvic acid.

**22** They resort to the anaerobic respiration, as the pyruvic acid that is resulted from the glycolysis is reduced into lactic acid "acidic fermentation", and produces 2 molecules of ATP

**23** (a) The graduated cylinder no. (2) / As carbon dioxide gas that is resulted from the alcoholic fermentation process in yeast increases the volume of the mixture.

(b) • **The importance of no. (1) "acidic fermentation"** : used in dairy industries, such as cheese, butter and yoghurt.

• **The importance of no. (2) "alcoholic fermentation"** : used in the bread and alcohol industries.

**24** (a) : (4).      (b) : (3).      (c) : (1).  
(d) : (5).      (e) : (2).

**25** As the hydrolysis of sugar molecules into glucose occurs to facilitate their use in the anaerobic respiration process.

**26** (a) 1. (3) "Inner membrane of mitochondria".  
2. (4) "DNA"

(b) The reason for the presence of structure no. (1) "ribosomes" is the formation of the enzymes required for the aerobic respiration process inside the mitochondria.

(c) The structure no. (3) "cristae" which represent the inner membrane of mitochondria and contain sequences of coenzymes that carry the electrons at different energy levels to accomplish the last stage of aerobic respiration which is the electron transport chain.

**27** • **Similarity** : both of them are vital processes that occur in the cells of living organism to obtain the energy stored in food molecules, especially glucose and store it in the form of ATP molecules.

• **The main conditions for the occurrence of fermentation process :**

- The absence or shortage of oxygen.
- The presence of a group of enzymes.

## Answers of Chapter 3 Lesson Two

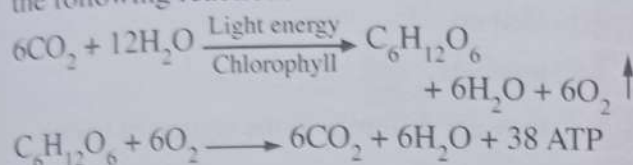
### First Answers of Multiple Choice Questions

- 1** (1) (a) Part no. (2).  
(2) (d) Parts no. (2) and (7).  
(3) (b) (4).      (4) (b) (6).  
(5) (c) Parts no. (2) and (9).
- 2** (c) pharynx.
- 3** (c) Exchanging gases.
- 4** (c) Respiratory enzymes.
- 5** (b) Chloroplast / Glucose + O<sub>2</sub> / Mitochondria / ATP
- 6** (b) An amount of sugar is released from it.
- 7** (b) (2).
- 8** (a) Air that enters the two lungs contains a greater amount of oxygen than the air that comes out of them.
- 9** (b)
- 10** (c) Stomata.
- 11** (c) Photosynthesis.
- 12** (c) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>12</sub>O<sub>6</sub>
- 13** (a)
- 14** (c) Upwards / CO<sub>2</sub> Absorption
- 15** (c) Clear / Turbid
- 16** (1) (a) (X).      (2) (d) (L).

As the columns in (X) represent the normal percentages of gases in the atmospheric air (nitrogen 78%, oxygen 21% and carbon dioxide 0.03%) which enters the two lungs through the inhaled air, and after the gases exchange process occurs in the two lungs the exhaled air comes out with a higher percentage of carbon dioxide gas and a lower percentage of oxygen gas without changing the nitrogen gas percentage which is represented in columns (L).



- 17** ⑥ chloroplast is reversed in the mitochondria. As the chemical reactions that are performed in the chloroplast happen to form glucose (high-energy organic compound) through carbon dioxide gas fixation in the presence of water and light, and the vital functions that the cell performs, need energy which the cell gets from the oxidation of the glucose to carbon dioxide gas and water in mitochondria, and it is shown in the following reactions :



- 18** ④ No change in  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  levels / Increasing  $\text{O}_2$  level / Increasing  $\text{CO}_2$  level

As in tube no. (1), the percentage of  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  gases remains relatively constant in water, where  $\text{O}_2$  gas that is resulted from the photosynthesis process of the aquatic plant is consumed by the aquatic snail in respiration process, producing  $\text{CO}_2$  gas that is consumed by the plant in photosynthesis process.

In tube no. (2), the percentage of  $\text{O}_2$  gas increases in the tube, as a result of performing photosynthesis process by the plant.

In tube no. (3), the percentage of  $\text{CO}_2$  gas increases in the tube, as a result of performing respiration process by the snail.

- 19** ④ Remains constant / Inwards

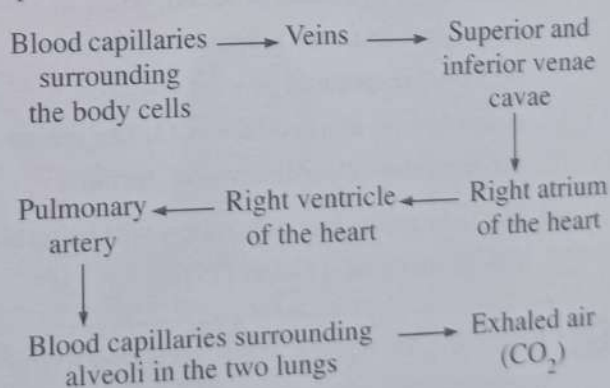
As in tube no. (1), the small animals respire the oxygen gas during the inhalation process and replaced by the carbon dioxide gas that is resulted from the exhalation process. So, the amount of air in the tube isn't affected and the ink drop remains constant, while the resulted carbon dioxide in tube no. (2) will dissolve in the limewater, so that the amount of air in the tube decreases. So, the ink drop will move inwards as a result of the withdrawal of an amount of air from outside the tube.

- 20** ② Increasing the pH value in blood.

As decreasing the pH value (blood acidity) is related to increasing the carbon dioxide gas level which requires increasing the respiration rate to get rid of it, as decreasing the haemoglobin level in the red blood corpuscles means decreasing the level of the oxygen gas in blood. Therefore, the respiration rate increases according to the body need for more oxygen.

## Second Answers of Miscellaneous Questions

- The microbes and foreign materials will enter into the two lungs with the inhaled air and the nose will be dry, as the hairs inside the nose work as sieves and the mucus works as a moisturizer and filter for air.
- They filter the air that enters into the alveoli by moving the foreign particles that may be present in it.
- If the trachea is devoid of cartilaginous rings, the walls of trachea would collapse, leading to its closure, suffocation of the living organism and his death, because these rings keep the trachea opened permanently.
- To increase the respiration surface area and the occurrence of gases exchange between the alveolar air and blood in the surrounding blood capillaries.
- The gases exchange process between the alveolar air and blood in the surrounding blood capillaries will not occur.
- Carbon dioxide is formed in the body cells, as a result of the occurrence of cellular respiration process.



- Answer by yourself.
- The plant will wilt and die, due to the absence of oxygen that is necessary for respiration process, as a result of the non-occurrence of photosynthesis process.

**9** The reason for the death of mouse and burning out of candle in figure no. (2) is that all the amount of oxygen that is present inside the bell jar is consumed in the mouse respiration and candle burning processes, while in figure no. (4), the reverse occurs, as the plant performs photosynthesis process, where it consumes  $\text{CO}_2$  gas that is resulted from the burning of the candle to perform photosynthesis process which produces  $\text{O}_2$  gas that is used by the mouse to perform respiration process and helps in keeping the candle light.

**10** Answer by yourself.

**11** The plant may perform photosynthesis process by using the carbon dioxide gas that is resulted from the respiration process, therefore the limewater that is present in the beaker next to the plant will not be turbid, therefore the release of carbon dioxide gas during the aerobic respiration in the green plant parts will not be proven.

**12** (a) Clear limewater.

(b) The indicator doesn't change in tube no. (2), as the green plant in the opposite tube performs respiration and photosynthesis processes (i.e.  $\text{CO}_2$  that is resulted from respiration process is consumed by the plant in the photosynthesis process), while in the tube opposite to the tube no. (1), the insect performs respiration process only (i.e. it consumes  $\text{O}_2$  and produces  $\text{CO}_2$  that makes the indicator "clear limewater" turbid).

(c) The indicator (clear limewater) will be turbid in both tubes no. (1) and (2).

- 13** • Removing the aquatic snails and other living organisms that consume the dissolved oxygen in water that is required for fish respiration.
- Planting the aquatic green plants as algae to consume carbon dioxide that is resulted from the respiration of fish and use it in the photosynthesis process for producing the dissolved oxygen in water that is required for fish respiration.

**1** (b)

**2** (d) Each of them depends on the other.

**3** (a) Glucose molecules.

**4** (a) 1 : 5

**5** (c) (3).

**6** (d) Glycolysis – Electron transport chain – Krebs cycle.

**7** (c) Cell no. (3).

**8** (c) lenticels.

**9** (d) they are different in the source of energy.

**10** (a)  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{O}_2$

**11** (a) One molecule.

**12** (b) pyruvic acid reduction.

**13** (a) Carbon dioxide / Oxygen.

**14** (c)  $\text{NAD}^+$

**15** (b) Companion cell.

**16** (d) 5 / 5

**17** (a) enzymes synthesis.

**18** (a) similar, because both have similar cellular enzymes.

**19** (b) 4

**20** (b) reduction.

**21** (d) It loses electrons.

**22** Answer by yourself.

**23** Dust will be filtered by hairs in the nose and trachea, cilia will beat upwards to filter air by moving the small foreign bodies to the pharynx, so that they maybe swallowed.

**24** Both of them produce 2 ATP molecules, occur in lack or absence of oxygen and represent reduction reactions.

**25** The statement is wrong / As the lung excretes  $500 \text{ cm}^3$  of water per day in the form of water vapour out of  $2500 \text{ cm}^3$  lost daily.

**26** Sperm / As it needs more glucose molecules to produce more ATP molecules to be used in the sperm movement. So, it has large number of mitochondria.



- 27** (a) To prevent  $O_2$  passage and allow anaerobic respiration to take place.  
 (b) Yellow colour, due to high concentration of  $CO_2$  that is produced from the alcoholic fermentation.

### Answers of Exercise on Chapter 3

- 1** (a) diffusion. **2** (a) 150  
**3** (b) 4  
**4** (a) the thin alveolar walls. **5** (a)  $NAD^+$   
**6** (b) 10 molecules.  
**7** (b) Lactic acid, Glucose. **8** (c)  
**9** (b) 12 ATP  
**10** (a) the increase of released energy amount from one molecule of glucose.  
**11** (b) (B). **12** (b) two carbon  
**13** (c) glucose 6 phosphate. **14** (c)  
**15** (c) four molecules of glucose.  
**16** (b) with one turn of Krebs cycle.  
**17** (d) Pulmonary valve.

- 18** (b) NADH and ATP  
**19** (a) Both take place in absence of  $O_2$   
**20** (a) ATP is an immediate source of energy for the cell and is continuously being broken down and reformed.  
**21** (c) 3  
**22** Answer by yourself.  
**23** (a) Krebs cycle.  
 (b) 1 ATP  
**24** Answer by yourself.  
**25** (a) Glycolysis.  
 (b) ATP molecules.  
**26** (a) Succinic acid.  
 (b)  $FADH_2$   
**27** Answer by yourself.

## ASK FOR


**EL-MORASSER**

- in • Pure Mathematics  
 • Mathematics Applications  
 • New Hello English  
 • En Français



for

# 2<sup>nd</sup> Sec.

## Answers of Chapter 1 Lesson One

- 1 a Plant (1) is the host for plant (2).
- 2 1 b (2). 2 b It loses water.
- 3 1 b From (Y) to (X) by osmosis.  
2 d  
3 a high in both of them.
- 4 b
- 5 1 c Active transport and diffusion respectively.  
2 b 3 b (Y).

## Answers of Chapter 1 Lesson Two

- 1 1 (1) a (X).  
(2) c (Z). (3) a (X).  
2 a Mg  
3 c  $C_{55}H_{70}O_6N_4Mg$
- 2 1 c Palisade layer.  
2 c The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.
- 3 1 b Sulphur / Glucose. 2 d  
3 b Glucose and water.
- 4 1 b During dark reactions.  
2 c  $CO_2$  gas isn't fixed up.  
3 d 4
- 5 c light and dark reactions respectively.

## Answers of Chapter 1 Lesson Three

- 1 b (1) and (3).
- 2 1 b The concentration of disaccharides at point (b) is more than that at point (a).  
2 c voluntary, then involuntary process.  
3 d Its digestion to the substances found in rice, bread and potatoes by the same mechanism.

Answers of

- 3 1 b The action of ptyalin enzyme continues.  
2 a A disturbance in the muscle that controls the cardiac sphincter.  
3 b neutralizing the pH value.
- 4 1 d The digestion of fats. 2 d Fats.  
3 d Peptidase. 4 d Amylase.
- 5 1 d  
2 a Thin and rich in blood capillaries.  
3 a Fatty acids.
- 6 b The presence of mucus.

## Answers of Chapter 2 Lesson One

- 1 1 a The two statements are correct.  
2 b Leaves and phloem tissues.
- 2 1 b Transport. 2 c
- 3 1 d It vanishes. 2 c *Pinus*.  
3 c Its presence is limited on the walls of xylem vessels.  
4 a faster at noon and slower at night.  
5 c Water hyacinth.
- 4 a The rate is higher.

## Answers of Chapter 2 Lesson Two

- 1 1 a AB  
2 c The mitral valve regurgitation (backward flow).
- 2 a Aorta.
- 3 1 b 46%  
2 d The resistance of diseases.  
3 c 4 months.
- 4 1 d The absence of one of the blood clotting factors from blood.  
2 d Heparin.
- 5 1 a contracting the left atrium.  
2 b



## Answers of Chapter 2 Lesson Three

① (b) the opening of the mitral valve.

② ① (c) Pulmonary vein.

② (b) (3) → (1) → (4) → (2).

③ ① (d) Small intestine → Hepatic portal vein → Liver → Hepatic vein → Inferior vena cava.

② (b) liver.

④ ① (c) Prothrombin. ② (a) Right atrium.

## Answers of Chapter 3 Lesson One

① (d) By forming a bond between two phosphate groups in the presence of energy.

② (c) 360 kcal/mol.

③ (a) 2 molecules of ATP

④ (a) Citric acid.

⑤ ① (c) Occurrence of complete oxidative phosphorylation process.

② (b) 4 ATP molecules.

⑥ (b) Oxygen.

## Answers of Chapter 3 Lesson Two

① (c) (1) → (2) / Deoxygenated / Oxygenated

② (c) Photosynthesis and respiration processes respectively.

# ASK FOR



## EL-MOASSER

in

- Pure Mathematics
- Mathematics Applications
- New Hello English
- En Français

for **2<sup>nd</sup>**  
Sec.





## Answers of General Exam 1

- 1 (c) (Y), (Z).  
 2 (d) Lactic acid from pyruvic acid.  
 3 (a) 4.5  
 4 (b) Vascular bundle / Pericycle / Cortex / Epidermis.  
 5 (c) Limewater is clear.  
 6 (b) 2  
 7 (c) Peptidase.  
 8 (d) (1) and (4).

As part (1) represents the xylem tissue in the leaf section that is present outward in the vascular bundle and part (4) represents also the xylem tissue in the stem section that is present inward in the vascular bundle, the xylem tissue is responsible for the transport of water and salts in plant. So, the two parts (1) and (4) are stained by the coloured water.

- 9 (d) Fibrinogen.  
 10 (c) Respiratory enzymes.  
 11 (a) Meat.  
 12 (b) Sugar and amino acids transfer together by active transport in the same sieve tube of phloem.

As from the important vital processes that is performed by the sieve tube in phloem is the active transport of sugar and amino acids against the concentration gradient and this process requires energy that is given to the sieve tube in the form of ATP molecules from the mitochondria of the companion cell through the plasmodesmata.

- 13 (b) 70 mm Hg  
 14 (d) Yeast fungus.

As the graph starts with (6C) compound (glucose) that is passed by more than one stage till its splitting (during glycolysis) into (3C) compound (pyruvic acid) to reach (2C) compound (ethyl alcohol) in addition to a molecule of (1C) compound (carbon dioxide) that indicates the occurrence of alcoholic fermentation which is a type of respiration that is used by yeast fungus.

- 15 (a)  
 16 (c) The flow rate of solutes during transmission.  
 17 (d) Oxyhaemoglobin.  
 18 (a) Active transport and diffusion.

19 (a) 150

As each molecule after the electron transport chain gives 15 ATP molecules (from 4 NADH molecules, 1  $\text{FADH}_2$  molecule and one ATP molecule directly), i.e. the result for 10 pyruvic acid molecules =  $15 \times 10 = 150$  ATP molecules.

- 20 (b) It will shrink, due to  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  exit from its sap vacuole.  
 21 (b) Pyruvic acid oxidation and completing two Krebs cycles.

22 As the leaves in which the high-energy organic food substances (carbohydrates, fats and proteins) are manufactured and they will be transported through the sieve tubes of the phloem to the different plant parts for storage and consumption.

23 When the RBCs become old, they are broken down and the body restores their proteins to use them in the formation of the bile juice that converts fats into emulsified fats to facilitate their digestion.

- 24 (a) HCl acid of the gastric juice.  
 (b) Sodium bicarbonate of the pancreatic juice.

25 Absence of coenzymes or cytochromes.

26 The lung gets  $\text{O}_2$  from the inhaled air then the blood capillaries surrounding the alveolar air receives  $\text{O}_2$  and transfers it to the body parts through the oxygenated blood and another amount of  $\text{O}_2$  lost from the two lungs as water vapour in the exhaled air, while  $\text{CO}_2$  enters the lungs from the deoxygenated blood then gases exchange takes place between the alveolar air and the surrounding blood in the blood capillaries to supply the body with  $\text{O}_2$  and get rid of  $\text{CO}_2$  through the exhaled air.

- 27 • (X) : doesn't change.  
 • (Y) : changes into dark blue colour.

## Answers of General Exam 2

1 (b) (2).

2 (a) Glycolysis.



- 3 (d) The concentration of maltose in the fourth minute is higher than the concentration of starch.

As amylase enzyme acts on the hydrolysis of starch into maltose sugar, where the action of this enzyme continues, leading to increasing the concentration of maltose gradually and decreasing the concentration of starch gradually till hydrolyzing all the starch molecules into maltose.

- 4 (c) The percentage of  $N_2$  in the inhaled air with its percentage in the exhaled air.

As nitrogen enters with the inhaled air and comes out with the exhaled air without spreading in blood.

- 5 (c) P

- 6 (c) The first statement is correct and the second statement is wrong.

- 7 (b) 10

As the entry of one molecule of pyruvic acid to complete one Krebs cycle results in 3 NADH molecules, therefore the number of pyruvic acid molecules that give 30 NADH molecules  $= \frac{30}{3} = 10$  molecules.

- 8 (b) Fatty acids.

- 9 (a) Plasma and white blood corpuscles.

As the enucleated cells are the red blood corpuscles that are found in the blood fluid (Y) that shares with lymph (X) in the presence of plasma and white blood corpuscles that are expressed by (Z).

- 10 (c) The type of chlorophyll and the source of hydrogen required to reduce  $CO_2$  in each one of them.

- 11 (d)  $H_2O$  splitting in the photosynthesis process.

- 12 (d) Exit of water from the lips' cells that leads to their shrinkage.

- 13 (c) 8

- 14 (a) Superior vena cava.

- 15 (b) Lactic acid / Glucose.

- 16 (b) Left ventricle.

- 18 (d) Sap transfer.

- 20 (c) *Elodea*.

- 22 The solution in tube (X) remains clear, as the boiling kills the protoplasm. So, seeds can't respire.

- 23 Because of the high rate of transpiration at noon and its lower rate at night.

- 24 The plant will wilt and die.

- 25 (a) Because point (A) "atrio-ventricular node" is stimulated when the electrical nerve impulse reaches it from the sino-atrial node.

- (b) The contraction of (B) "ventricles" is important in pushing all the oxygenated blood of the left ventricle through the aorta and all the deoxygenated blood of the right ventricle through the pulmonary artery.

- 26 The statement is correct / As when the  $O_2$  is available the cell performs aerobic respiration to produce the energy "38 ATP" required for the vital processes of the cell.

- 27 (a) (2) Pancreas.

- (b) (1) Stomach.

### Answers of General Exam 3

- 1 (b) Hepatic portal vein.

- 2 (a)

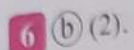
As the plant absorbs water through the xylem vessels that are present inward in the vascular bundle of plant stem. So, it appears coloured in the transverse section.

- 3 (d) The iron and haemoglobin level decreases in blood.

- 4 (c) The absorption of macro-nutrients only.  
As the diffusion of elements against the concentration gradient requires the occurrence of active transport that takes place in the presence of energy stored in ATP molecules that contain a macro-nutrient element which is phosphorus element, where these molecules are supplied through the cellular respiration of plant at the presence of respiratory enzymes which some of them need the activation by some micro-nutrients.

- 5 (d) Opening of aortic valve.

As during the relaxation of the two atria, the two ventricles are in case of contraction, where the atrio-ventricular valves (tricuspid and mitral valves) are closed, and the pulmonary and aortic valves are opened.



- 10** (d) Oxygen.

- 11 (c) The enzymes that are present in them become inactive by heating and cooking.

- 12 (d) 8

- 13 (b) (B).

- 14** (a) Epithelial layer.

- 15 (b) Bacteria.

As the graph starts with glucose molecule (6C) that is passed by more than one stage before its splitting into pyruvic acid (3C) which is converted into lactic acid (3C), where this type of respiration (acidic fermentation) occurs in most of bacteria.

- 16 (d) Spleen.

- 17 (a)

- 18** (c) The release of  $O_2$

As the presence of ATP molecules in a greater number than ADP molecules is occurred in the light reactions where ADP is converted into ATP through which the splitting of water molecules takes place to release  $O_2$  gas, while the oxidation of  $NADPH_2$  and the reduction of  $CO_2$  gas are two processes occurred in the dark reactions.

- 19** (a) oxidizing lactic acid.

- 20 ©

- 21 (b)  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$

- 22** Both of them can take place in the absence of oxygen accompanied by coenzymes reduction and produce ATP molecules.

- 23** Answer by yourself.

- 24 L

- 25** As the stomata of the herbaceous plant stem help in exchanging the respiratory gases between the stem cells and air, where  $O_2$  diffuses into the stem and goes to all the cells of the plant, while the woody stem contains lenticels instead of stomata and they allow the exchange of respiratory gases between air and the cells of woody stem.

- 26 The statement is wrong** / Because there is a group of respiratory enzymes which help in the aerobic and anaerobic cellular respiration processes.

- 27** The cell is in an active state, because it consumes ATP molecules and converting them into ADP molecules to use the ATP released energy.

## Answers of General Exam 4

- 1 ©

- 2** (d) 3-carbon compound is formed in each one of them.

- 3 (c) Pulmonary vein.

- 4 ④ 8

To obtain the energy from a molecule of maltose, it is hydrolyzed first into two glucose molecules, where the oxidation of one glucose molecule gives 4 molecules of  $\text{CO}_2$ . So, when Krebs cycle occurs twice, therefore maltose molecule gives 8 molecules of  $\text{CO}_2$ .

- 5(b)

- 6** (d)  $\text{NADPH}_2$  and ATP

- 7** (b) Carbo-aminohaemoglobin.

- 8 (c) One Krebs cycle.

As one Krebs cycle produces one ATP molecule directly.

- 9** (d) A bronchiole.

- 10** © Pancreas.

- 11 (a) Water.

- 12 (a) 1:3

- 13 (d) Amino acids.

(d) Amino acids.

As the decrease in the amount of food substance in stomach into its half (50 g) indicates its digestion, i.e. it is formed of protein and the continuity of decreasing its amount in the small intestine where the digestion of protein into amino acids is completed.



14 (b) Increases / Decreases

15 (a) Opening the valve when the muscles contract.

16 (c) Diffusion.

17 (c)

18 (d) Lipase enzyme.

19 (b) 150 KJ

20 (d) Glycine and fat droplets.

21 (c) Active transport and permeability.

22 Xylem vessels and tracheids.

23  $\text{FADH}_2$

24 As the glucose molecule needs ATP molecule to be converted into glucose 6-phosphate, as well as fructose 6-phosphate needs ATP molecule to be converted into fructose 1,6-diphosphate.

25 The RBCs will shrink when the saline concentration is 1%, as they lose water, while they burst when the saline concentration is 0.5% and this happens due to the transfer of water molecules by osmosis from the highly-concentrated medium (low salts concentration) to the lower concentrated medium (high salts concentration) to inside the cells, which make them swell then burst, due to the absence of the cell wall in their structure.

26 **The statement is correct** / Because the blood flow in arteries occurs under high pressure, due to the thick pulsating muscular walls of arteries middle layer that contract and relax under the control of nerve fibers and they have endothelium topped with elastic fibers which provide the arteries with the required elasticity to pump the blood during ventricles contraction. But veins carry the blood under low pressure as they have thin muscular walls of their middle layer that can't pulsate and also their endothelium has rare elastic fibers and some of them have valves to prevent the backflow of blood, allowing its passage in one direction (to the heart), as the veins of the limbs that are present near the skin surface.

- 27 • Enzyme (1) : pepsin enzyme.  
• Enzyme (2) : trypsin enzyme.

## Answers of General Exam

5

1 (d) (4).

As cell (4) receives water from the two cells (2) and (3) which receive water from cell (1). So, cell (4) has the least concentration of water, therefore it has the highest concentration of salts before water transferring.

2 (d) The storage of the raw materials that are required to perform the photosynthesis process.

3 (c) The production of a large amount of NADH molecules.

4 (d) The closure of semi-lunar valves.

5 (c) The highest flow of water in the stem is delayed than the highest transpiration rate.

As the highest rate of transpiration is nearly at 8 o'clock am, then followed by the highest rate of water flow in the stem after nearly 10 o'clock am, because the water flow in the stem depends on the occurrence of the transpiration process.

6 (a) (1).

7 (b) They work at the same pH value.

8 (c) The rate of ATP molecules production will be affected.

9 (c) (2) & (3).

As the oxygenated blood is transported from the two lungs to the heart by vessels (2) "pulmonary veins", then coming out from the heart to the rest of the body parts through vessel (3) "aorta".

10 (c) The carbohydrates digestion continues.

11 (c) Specific enzymes.

12 (d) When it becomes equal to the pressure of water column in xylem vessels.

13 (a) Difficulty in the light passage.

14 (d) Youth - Elderhood - Childhood.

15 (c) Cells' membranes.

16 (c) Oxidative phosphorylation.

17 (b) Hepatic portal vein.

18 (b)  $W/X/Z/Y/Y \rightarrow Z$

As the semi-permeable membrane allows water to pass and as a result of high concentration of the solution in structure (Y), water is transferred to it by osmosis. So, the pressure in this structure increases, leading to the transfer of the sugar solution through the path (W) till reaching the structure (Z) and under this pressure, water comes out from the structure (Z), therefore this process continues until the sugar solution becomes in equilibrium state in (Y) and (Z), where adding an excess of sugar to structure (Y) and removing the excess amount of water in structure (Z) make the process continue in this pathway, in the light of this, (Y) can represent the leaves, because they manufacture the sugar, (W) represents the phloem as it is considered the path of sugar transport and (Z) represents the roots that transfer water through xylem vessels (X).

19 (b) The concentration of salts in the solution is more than their concentration in the blood cells.

20 (d) (L).

As the complete oxidation of one glucose molecule results in 6  $\text{CO}_2$  molecules, therefore cell (L) that contains 18  $\text{CO}_2$  molecules is the cell in which the oxidation of three glucose molecules takes place.

21 (b) Two macro-nutrients.

22 As "ptyalin" amylase enzyme works on the hydrolysis of starch into disaccharide (maltose), therefore it doesn't affect the mouth lining. While pepsin enzyme is secreted in an inactive form of pepsinogen from the stomach cells as it works on the hydrolysis of protein into chains of polypeptides, therefore if it is secreted in the active form, it will digest the cells lining the stomach which are made of protein.

23 The plant won't absorb water and mineral salts, therefore a great amount of nutrients won't be available. So, the plant will die.

24 380 ATP

25 The statement is correct / As the phloem translocates the manufactured food from the leaf to all the plant parts on the basis of "cytoplasmic streaming theory" which is affected by temperature and  $\text{O}_2$ , so that if the temperature decreases or in case of  $\text{O}_2$  deficiency the cytoplasm movement and its streaming in the sieve tubes are delayed, leading to the delay of active transport process in the phloem.

26 The production of 2 molecules of  $\text{NAD}^+$  again to allow glycolysis process to continue and produce more ATP molecules.

27 • (X) : pulmonary artery.  
• (Y) : vena cava.

## Answers of General Exam 6

1 (d) Calcium.

2 (d) Each of them has an immunization function.

3 (d) Cambium.

4 (a) (1) is hydrolysis and (2) is catabolism.

As the presence of 38 ATP molecules in the products indicates the occurrence of aerobic respiration, i.e. (B) expresses glucose molecule that is broken in process (2) and this molecule is resulted from the hydrolysis (1) of disaccharide (A) which contains double the number of carbon atoms.

5 (c) A source for hydrogen that is required for the reduction process.

6 (b) Intercellular spaces  $\rightarrow$  Cell wall  $\rightarrow$   
Plasma membrane  $\rightarrow$  Cytoplasm  $\rightarrow$   
Plastid's membrane.

7 (d)  $\text{O}_2$  from (B) to (A)

8 (a) The two statements are correct.

As the villi of the small intestine act on absorbing the digested food to pass into blood or lymph, while the convolutions of the large intestine act on absorbing water and some salts.

9 (d) The opening of semi-lunar valves.

As the number (110) represents the upper number when measuring the blood pressure which expresses the contraction of ventricles. So, the closure of the valves with flaps and opening of the semi-lunar valves happen.



10 (a) (1).

As the aorta contains oxygenated blood with the highest level of  $O_2$  and the lowest level of  $CO_2$

11 (d) Peptidase in small intestine.

12 (c) Starch.

13 (b) Both of them contain deoxygenated blood.

14 (b) Glucose / 3

15 (b) Diffusion and active transport.

16 (b) Energy consumption.

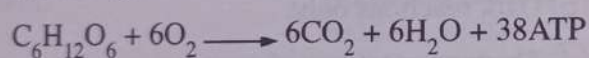
17 (b) Stopping the light and dark reactions.

As the transport of water to outside the vessel is stopped. So, it doesn't reach out to the leaf cells which leads to stopping the light reactions, therefore the dark reactions are also stopped.

18 (d) Artery / Vein / Blood capillaries.

19 (c)

To produce energy only, the aerobic respiration is occurred in which the fetus cells need one glucose molecule and 6 molecules of  $O_2$  according to the following equation :



20 (b) Lack of  $O_2$  in the soil.

21 (a)

As graph (a) illustrates obtaining energy from a glucose molecule in two stages, the first one is (glycolysis) the conversion of glucose to pyruvic acid in which the number of carbon atoms decreases into its half (3 carbon atoms) and the second one is the fermentation of pyruvic acid to lactic acid (3C).

22 To keep the greatest amount of water inside the plant cells by increasing the concentration of solutes in the solution. So, it can adapt to the surrounding environment.

23 Arrow no. (4) / Aorta artery.

24 Answer by yourself.

25 The statement is wrong / Because the vascular bundle of the stem contains cambium (not found in the leaf), in addition to xylem and phloem which are found in both stem and leaf.

26 (a) 38 molecules of ATP

(b) (3) / (2) / (1).

27 • (1) "Lacteal vessel"  $\longrightarrow$  Lymphatic system  
 $\longrightarrow$  Superior vena cava  $\longrightarrow$  Heart.  
• (2) "Vein"  $\longrightarrow$  Blood capillaries in villi  $\longrightarrow$  Hepatic portal vein  $\longrightarrow$  Liver  $\longrightarrow$  Hepatic vein  $\longrightarrow$  Inferior vena cava  $\longrightarrow$  Heart.

## Answers of General Exam

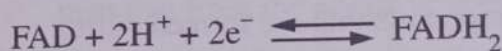
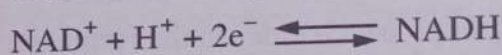
7

1 (b) (B).

2 (c) A higher percentage of  $CO_2$  and a lower percentage of  $O_2$

3 (b) 24

As the aerobic respiration reactions of one glucose molecule result in 10 NADH molecules and 2  $FADH_2$  molecules, where each of them carries 2 electrons according to the two following equations :



So, the number of the removed electrons from one glucose molecule in the electron transport chain =  $2 \times 12 = 24$  electrons.

4 (b) (2).

5 (b) Bicuspid valve and aortic valve.

6 (d) Left ventricle contraction. 7 (c) Cellulose.

8 (d)

As in tube (d), there are snail and plant, where each one consumes the oxygen in the respiration process without the presence of a source of oxygen, due to the inability of plant to perform the photosynthesis process, because the tube is present inside black box that preventing light.

9 (d) Converting organic compounds into inorganic compounds.

10 (d) *Pinus*.

11 (d) It loses electrons.

12 (d) (X) & (Z).

13 (d) Each of them produces  $CO_2$  14 (c)

15 (a) Water and salts absorption completely stops.

16 (a) An increase in the transport rate.



17 (d) (2) only.

18 (d) (C)  $\longrightarrow$  (A) and (B)  $\longrightarrow$  (A).

19 (b) Spongy tissue.

20 (c) 4

21 (a) ✓ / ✓ / ✓ / X

22 As vitamin (K) which plays an important role in the clot formation dissolves in fats that are transported through lymph.

23 The absence of sap vacuole (Y) from the root hair (X) affects the absorption of  $H_2O$  and salts by the plant root, as the vacuole is responsible for the regulation of water concentration inside the cell, therefore its absence causes a disturbance in the osmotic pressure inside the plant root cells. So, the root cells may rupture and the root become non-functioning, therefore the plant will wilt and die.

24 The conversions of ATP into ADP produce phosphate groups which enter in the formation of some compounds that are formed during glycolysis such as, glucose 6-phosphate and fructose 1,6-diphosphate.

25 Lactic acid / Because the blood clot which blocks the artery causes a deficiency in the muscle  $O_2$  supply, therefore the muscle tissue performs anaerobic cellular respiration "acidic fermentation" leading to the accumulation of lactic acid in the muscular tissue.

26 • Dark reactions of photosynthesis process : it is used in building glucose, starch, proteins and lipids.  
• Glycolysis process : it is used in cellular respiration as a high-energy compound.

27 Structure no. (1) / As the glucose molecules diffuse through the villi that are found in the small intestine to the solution in the container, while the glucose molecules can't pass through structure no. (2) "semi-permeable membrane", as it prevents the passage of sugar molecules.

## Answers of General Exam 8

1 (c)  $CO_2$  that is required to perform photosynthesis process.

2 (c) A decrease in the number of red blood corpuscles.

As the decrease in the number of red blood corpuscles is followed by a decrease in the haemoglobin level (suffering from anemia) and therefore a decrease in the oxygen level in blood. So, the body needs excess oxygen to increase the respiration rate that is accompanied by an increase in the heartbeats for pumping oxygenated blood in appropriate rate by the heart.

3 (d) The number of coenzymes (A).

As one coenzyme (A) can enter the Krebs cycle more than one time, while each acetyl CoA joins the Krebs cycle once. So, the released energy increases by increasing the number of acetyl groups and also by increasing the number of carbon atoms, where the breaking down of a large number of bonds among these atoms happens and by completing the electron transport chain, the stored energy in NADH and  $FADH_2$  molecules is released completely.

4 (b) C ↓

5 (b) Dark reactions only.

6 (d) The innermost row of cortex.

7 (b) Vein.

As the blood passes in the vessel (3) with a low blood pressure which distinguishes veins.

8 (a) 1 : 5

9 (b) He can eat fats in small amounts.

10 (b) Imbibition.

11 (d)

As glycolysis process requires the presence of two ATP molecules. So, the storage decreases to 8 molecules, where the total produced energy of the glucose aerobic oxidation is 38 ATP molecules. Therefore, the total number of ATP molecules in the cell increases after the complete oxidation of glucose to reach 46 molecules.

12 (d) Cell (3) & Cell (5) / Cell (2) & Cell (4)

13 (c) 7 g

14 (b) (B).

As the glycolysis occurs in the cytoplasm that results in two NADH molecules and two ATP molecules.



15 (d) Meat. 16 (b) Hepatic portal vein.

17 (c) The dark reactions in both of them.

18 (c) Meat & juices. 19 (b)

20 (b) The concentration of cell sap of root cells.

21 (d) Opening of aortic valve.

22 Water is considered the source of hydrogen which is required for  $\text{CO}_2$  fixation during the dark reactions of photosynthesis process.

23 Due to their large size.

24 • 2 NADH molecules. • 2  $\text{CO}_2$  molecules.  
• 2 Acetyl coenzyme (A) molecules.

25

Blood capillaries in villi	Blood capillaries in alveoli
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A network of venous and arterial blood capillaries surrounding the lacteal vessel.</li> <li>• They are responsible for absorption of the digested food through the blood route.</li> <li>• They transport <math>\text{H}_2\text{O}</math>, mineral salts, monosaccharides, amino acids and water soluble vitamins through the blood capillaries to the hepatic portal vein then to liver and from it to the hepatic vein to be emptied into the inferior vena cava, then to the heart.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A network of venous and arterial blood capillaries surrounding the alveoli.</li> <li>• They are responsible for gas exchange between the alveolar air and the surrounding blood in the blood capillaries.</li> <li>• They receive <math>\text{O}_2</math> from the alveolar air and the bronchioles of the lungs forming oxyhaemoglobin "arterial blood" that transports <math>\text{O}_2</math> to all the body parts.</li> <li>• They receive <math>\text{CO}_2</math> from the body cells forming carbo-aminohaemoglobin "venous blood" that transports <math>\text{CO}_2</math> to lungs to excrete it out of the body.</li> </ul>

26 (a) To inside the tube.

(b) To absorb  $\text{CO}_2$  that evolved from the plant respiration, therefore the volume of air inside the tube decreases. So, we can determine the rate of respiration by measuring the distance moved by the ink drop.

27 The statement is correct / As the stomach secretes the gastric juice which contains HCl that creates an acidic medium which helps in killing the harmful bacteria that may enter with food.

## Answers of General Exam 9

1 (b) In gastric juice. 2 (d) One Krebs cycle.

3 (b) 4 molecules.

As the produced energy is the total number of the resulted ATP molecules directly which are 2 molecules during glycolysis and 2 molecules from the Krebs cycle (when occurred twice).

4 (b) A blood vessel buried among muscles.

As the oxygenated blood with light red colour is found in arteries which are the blood vessels buried among muscles, i.e. the blood sample was taken from the artery.

5 (a) The water pressure decreases inside the leaf cells with increasing the transpiration process.

6 (d) The production of ADP from ATP in the stroma.

7 (a) Bile juice.

8 (a) From the alcoholic fermentation is greater than that from the acidic fermentation.

9 (a) Most of the released water from the leaf gets out through the stomata.

10 (c) The need for energy.

11 (b) Renal artery.

As the blood enters the two kidneys in the form of oxygenated blood through the renal artery and comes out in the form of deoxygenated blood through the renal vein, while the opposite occurs in the pulmonary artery, but in the hepatic vein and vena cava the blood enters the heart in the form of deoxygenated blood and comes out in the same form.

12 (a) Cambium.

13 (d) Active transport to the venules (venous capillaries).

As the starch is digested into monosaccharaides that pass in the blood route that are absorbed by active transport to reach the venules then pour into the hepatic portal vein.

14 (d) Plenty of  $\text{O}_2$  inside the root cells.

15 (c) Circulatory system is closed, while lymphatic system is opened.

16 (a) Amylase and maltase.

17 (a) more than

18 (c)

✓

19 (a) NADH molecules give their electrons to the cytochrome at higher energy levels. To release energy from the coenzymes (NADH & FADH<sub>2</sub>), their electrons must be given to the cytochromes, where the more giving the coenzyme's electrons at higher energy level, the more increasing in the resulted energy.

20 (d) Plasma membranes and cellulose walls.

21 (c) 0.45%

22 Because the heartbeats rate changes according to the physical and psychological states of the body, since the sino-atrial node is connected to the nerve which increases the rate of heartbeats during performing a vigorous physical exercise to supply the muscles with enough O<sub>2</sub> to perform aerobic respiration to do their physical exercise.

23 The plant will wilt and die, due to the deficiency in the absorbed water and salts through the xylem vessels, as a result of decreasing the adhesion force between the xylem vessels and H<sub>2</sub>O molecules.

24 If element (X) "<sup>14</sup>CO<sub>2</sub>" is supplied intermittently, dark reactions would take long time or wouldn't happen, because CO<sub>2</sub> is needed for the formation of glucose which is formed through several intermediate reactions, whereas the phosphoglyceraldehyde (PGAL) which is formed quickly "after 2 seconds" in the main experiment is used in building glucose. So, the nature of dark reactions can't be detected or revealed.

25 The statement is correct / Because the root gets O<sub>2</sub> dissolved in water which is absorbed from the soil by the root hairs during the absorption of mineral salts which need O<sub>2</sub> to be absorbed by active transport. So, the respiration rate increases.

26 • Because the medicine may be affected by the stomach acidity or it's difficult to be absorbed through the intestine.  
• To reach the blood faster, as it enters the systemic circulation directly.

27 • (A) : Water level rises up, due to the evolution of CO<sub>2</sub> from the seeds respiration and absorbing O<sub>2</sub> gas, and soda lime absorbs CO<sub>2</sub>  
• (B) : Water level remains constant, because the dead seeds don't respire.

## Answers of General Exam 10

1 (a) Stomach and small intestine.

2 (a) The oxidation of phosphoglyceraldehyde aerobically.

3 (c) Heparin.

4 (b) (Y).

As the concentration of element (Y) in the soil is less than that in the plant cells. So, the plant absorbs it by active transport which requires an energy that the plant needs in the form of ATP molecules that are resulted from the oxidation of glucose during the cellular respiration.

5 (d) Cambium.

6 (b) Increasing the surface area of the alveoli.

7 (d) Tricuspid valve and pulmonary valve.

8 (a) Artery.

As the blood passes in the blood vessel (1) with high blood pressure that distinguishes the arteries.

9 (b) It occurs inside the mitochondria.

10 (b) Diffusion.

11 (a)

12 (d) RBCs

As the living RBCs carry the oxygen on the haemoglobin that is present in them and transfer it from the two lungs to all the body parts, where after the breaking down of old red blood corpuscles, the body restores the proteins that are found in them to use them in the formation of bile juice which plays an important role in the digestion of fats.

13 (b) Oxidation.

14 (a) Pancreas.

15 (b) Sucrose moves by active transport from the mesophyll tissue of the leaves then to the phloem.

As it is obvious from the study of the curves, the concentration of sucrose in the mesophyll tissue is less than that in the phloem tissue, i.e. its transfer from the mesophyll tissue to the phloem tissue is against the concentration gradient and it is occurred by the active transport phenomenon.

16 (a) The presence of DNA molecules.



17 (d) The breaking down of chemical bonds among lactose molecules results in monosaccharides with high rate.

18 (b) (1) & (4).

As the vessels (1) carry deoxygenated blood that is pumped to the two lungs (i.e. they represent the pulmonary artery and its branches) and the vessels (4) carry oxygenated blood that is pumped to the different body parts (i.e. they represent the aorta and its branches). Therefore, the arteries carry the blood at high pressures.

19 (b) Water and salts transfer by capillarity phenomenon.

20 (d)

21 (b) Movement of chlorophyll molecule electrons.

22 Because the root hairs secrete viscous substance which helps them to find their way easily among the soil particles and also it helps them to stick to the soil particles, and so they can fix the plant into the soil.

23  $2\text{NADH} = 3\text{FADH}_2 = 6\text{ATP}$

24 Liver.

25 The statement is wrong / As some glycerol and fatty acids may recombine again forming fats inside the villi, these fats pass into the lacteal vessels inside the villi, then to the lymphatic system which carries them slowly and empties them into the superior vena cava, then to the heart.

26 (1) The nature of dark reactions in photosynthesis.

(2) The role of sieve tubes in transporting the ready-made food substances to all the plant parts.

27 (a) Stages (1) and (3) represent the darkness.

(b) Curve (B) represent ( $^{16}\text{O}$ ).

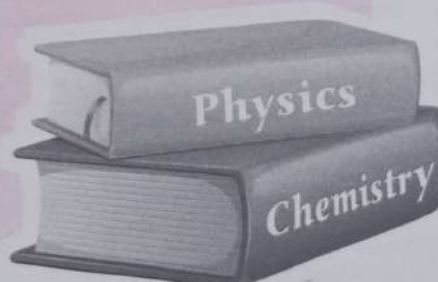
Ask for



EL-MONASSER

in

- Physics
- Chemistry



For

2<sup>nd</sup> Sec.